



Ministry
of Defence

Ministry of Defence

Main Building

Whitehall

London

SW1A 2HB

Ref: FOI2018/03287

Reply to: [REDACTED]

23 March 2018

Dear [REDACTED],

Thank you for your email of 3 March 2018 requesting the following information:

"I would like to request information on Protocol, Rules and Regulations for Officer's Messes in the Royal Army And Royal Marines and for Stateroom and Wardroom Regulations for Royal Naval Officer's. Along with Queen's regulations for the household division including the Guards.

Also I would like Barracks and ceremonial duties regulations for all Three branches Royal Navy, Marines and Army foreign and London Duties with the Drill and ceremonial manual for the Army (all ranks)."

I am treating your correspondence as a request for information under the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (FOI Act).

The Ministry of Defence (MOD) holds some information within the scope of your request.

The information requested at the first part of the request is exempt under Section 21 of the FOI Act (information reasonably accessible to the applicant), because the information relating to Officers Messes is covered in Queen's regulations (QRs). The QRs for each Service are in the public domain, available from the Government internet sites as below:

Queen's Regulations for Royal Navy:

<https://www.royalnavy.mod.uk/~media/royal%20navy%20responsive/documents/reference%20library/br%202/20150520-brd2-home.pdf>

Please note that some of the PDFs at these links may no longer work in the Google Chrome browser. Further advice is available here:

<https://helpx.adobe.com/acrobat/using/display-pdf-in-browser.html>

Queen's Regulations for Army:

https://www.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/440632/20150529-QR_Army_Amdt_31_Jul_2013.pdf

Regarding the second part of this request, copies of the ceremonial dress for the Army and the Drill Manual are attached as the following PDF documents:

Ceremonial for The Army (2017)
Drill Manual 2017

If you have any queries regarding the content of this letter, please contact this office in the first instance.

If you wish to complain about the handling of your request, or the content of this response, you can request an independent internal review by contacting the Information Rights Compliance team, Ground Floor, MOD Main Building, Whitehall, SW1A 2HB (e-mail CIO-FOI-IR@mod.gov.uk). Please note that any request for an internal review should be made within 40 working days of the date of this response.

If you remain dissatisfied following an internal review, you may raise your complaint directly to the Information Commissioner under the provisions of Section 50 of the Freedom of Information Act. Please note that the Information Commissioner will not normally investigate your case until the MOD internal review process has been completed. The Information Commissioner can be contacted at: Information Commissioner's Office, Wycliffe House, Water Lane, Wilmslow, Cheshire, SK9 5AF. Further details of the role and powers of the Information Commissioner can be found on the Commissioner's website at <https://ico.org.uk/>.

Yours sincerely,

Defence People Secretariat FOI

CEREMONIAL FOR THE ARMY

This publication supersedes Ceremonial for The Army 2008.
Crown Copyright Reserved

*Prepared under the direction of
the Chief of the General Staff*

MINISTRY OF DEFENCE
Cer Pol & Plans (PS12)
Nov 2017

Army Code No. 64332

AMENDMENTS

Amdt No.	Date	Signature

FOREWORD

CEREMONIAL FOR THE ARMY 2017

'The finest edge is made with the blunt whetstone.'

(John Lyly: Euphues 1579)

"A Ceremonial parade, impeccably performed, can never fail to be a source of inspiration to those who watch it or take part in it. It is the noblest and proudest form of drill. Based on the 'blunt whetstone' of drill instruction to recruits it was for many hundreds of years the foundation of battle discipline in all Armies. Vegetius, in AD 378, wrote, 'troops who march in an irregular and disorderly manner are always in great danger of being defeated'.

Today, once the elements of discipline have been instilled through drill on the parade square, it develops, naturally, into various forms of crew drill, gun drill and battle drill, but the aim of discipline remains unchanged. This aim is the conquest of fear. Drill helps to achieve this because when it is carried out men tend to lose their individuality and are unified into a group under obedience to orders.

If men are to give of their best in war they must be united. Discipline seeks through drill to instil into all ranks this sense of unity, by requiring them to obey orders as one man. A Ceremonial parade, moreover, provides an occasion for men to express pride in their performance, pride in their Regiment or Corps and pride in the profession of Arms."

(Signed) Alexander of Tunis, F.M.

CEREMONIAL FOR THE ARMY

INDEX

FOREWORD

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

SECTION 1 – SCOPE OF THE PAMPHLET

Aim

**The Household Division and King's Troop Royal Horse Artillery
Light Division and Rifle Regiments
Funerals
Bands**

SECTION 2 – WORDS OF COMMAND

Delivery of Words of Command

CHAPTER 2

STANDARDS, GUIDONS AND COLOURS

SECTION 1 - A SHORT HISTORY OF COLOURS

Origin of Colours

Standards and Guidons - Cavalry, Tanks, and Air Corps

Royal Artillery

Infantry

Rifle Regiments

Symbolism

SECTION 2 – INFANTRY COLOURS

Occasions When Carried
Composition of the Colour Party
Compliments
Position on Parade

CHAPTER 3

THE BATTALION PARADE

SECTION 1 – GENERAL

Preparations

SECTION 2 - PRELIMINARIES

Adjutant

Second-in-Command

Commanding Officer

SECTION 3 – THE INSPECTION

General Salute

Inspection Procedure

SECTION 4 – THE MARCH PAST

Formations

March Past in Columns of Route/Threes

Marching Past in Column/Close Column of Companies

Saluting

SECTION 5 – ADVANCE IN REVIEW ORDER

Procedure

Conclusion of the Parade

Infantry Battalion Mounted in Armoured Vehicles

SECTION 6 – PRESENTATION OF MEDALS

Timing
Carrying Arms

CHAPTER 4

AFV MOUNTED PARADES, ROYAL ARMOURED CORPS ARMOURED REGIMENTAL PARADES

SECTION 1 – GENERAL

Scope
Form of Parade
Special Points

SECTION 2 – MOUNTED REGIMENTAL PARADE WITH STANDARD

Preliminaries
The Fall In
Marching on of the Standard/Guidon
The Inspection
Advance in Review Order
The March Past

SECTION 3 - REGIMENTAL TROOPING OF THE STANDARD/GUIDON

General
Preliminaries
Marching on the Standard/Guidon
Inspection
The Troop
The March Past

CHAPTER 5

ARTILLERY REGIMENTAL PARADES

INTRODUCTION

SECTION 1 – MOUNTED

Layout

Fall In
The Inspection
The March Past

SECTION 2 - DISMOUNTED

Variations from the Battalion Parade
Compliments

CHAPTER 6

FORMATION PARADES

SECTION 1 – GENERAL

Occasions when held

Procedure

SECTION 2 – ARRANGEMENTS

Arrangements before the Ceremony

Arrangements for the Ceremony

Arrangements for Dispersal

Rifle Regiments on Formation Parades

SECTION 3 - A REVIEW OF AN ARMoured BRIGADE

Outline

Preparation

The Parade

The March Past

The Advance in Review Order

CHAPTER 7

GUARDS OF HONOUR

SECTION 1 – ORGANISATION

Strength

Posts for Guard of Honour

SECTION 2 – PROCEDURE

Preliminaries

The Paying of Compliments

The Inspection

The March Past

SECTION 3 - SPECIAL POINTS ON GUARDS OF HONOUR FOR ROYALTY

Reception

Inspection

Paying of further Compliments

CHAPTER 8

GUN SALUTES

SECTION 1 – GENERAL

Occasions when fired

Number of Guns

Intervals

SECTION 2 – PROCEDURE

Introduction

Personnel

Preparations

Firing

Misfires

Action on Completion

CHAPTER 9

LINING THE STREETS

SECTION 1 – POSITIONS

Officers

The Colours

Ranks

Bands and Drums

SECTION 2 – DUTIES

Crowd Control

Compliments

SECTION 3 - DETAILS OF PROCEDURE

Taking up Position

Action on Completion of Ceremony

CHAPTER 10

TROOPING THE COLOUR

SECTION 1 – GENERAL

Origins

Occasions when carried out

Strengths

SECTION 2 - GETTING ON PARADE

On Outside Parade Ground

On Own Parade Ground

Warrant Officers/Staff Sergeants

Escort for the Colour

Markers

Arrival at the Ground

Dressing

The Colour Party

Sentries to The Colour

The Band and Drums

Escort for The Colour

Position of Officers

SECTION 3 - THE TROOP

Band and Drums

Drummer's Call

The Escort for the Colour receives the Colour

The Colour is Trooped

The Escort resumes its original position

SECTION 4 - THE MARCH PAST

Preparation

The Guards March Past

Final Procedure

CHAPTER 11

PARADE TO CELEBRATE THE BIRTHDAY OF THE QUEEN, WHEN HER MAJESTY IS NOT PRESENT

SECTION 1 - THE GOVERNOR OR OTHER PERSONAGE RECEIVED ON PARADE

Forming Up

Inspection and March Past

SECTION 2 - THE SYMBOLIC ROYAL PRESENCE

The Royal Salute

Advance in Review Order

Feu-de-Joie

Three Cheers for Her Majesty The Queen

The Symbolic Departure

CHAPTER 12

PRESENTATION OF COLOURS

SECTION 1 – PRELIMINARIES

Formations

Positions of Officers and Colours

SECTION 2 - TROOPING THE OLD COLOURS

Royal Salute

The Troop

Trooping The Colours

Marching off the old Colours

SECTION 3 - CONSECRATION OF THE NEW COLOURS

Preparation

The Consecration

SECTION 4 - THE PRESENTATION

Preliminaries

Presentation

The Address

Compliments to the new Colours

SECTION 5 - MARCH PAST AND ADVANCE IN REVIEW ORDER

The March Past

The Advance in Review Order

CHAPTER 13 - LAYING UP OF OLD COLOURS

SECTION 1 - GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

Scope

Senior Officer

The Colour Party

The Bidding

Handing over The Colours

The Colour Party withdraws

Laid Up Colours

CHAPTER 14

FUNERALS

SECTION 1 – GENERAL

Provision

Form of Service

Honours Accorded

Drill

Dress

Union Jack

Accoutrements and Wreaths

Mounted Officers and Soldiers

Funerals of Senior Officers

Escort

Firing Party
Bearer Party
Special Party
Compliments to be paid
Flags

SECTION 2 – PROCEDURE

Order of Forming Up
The Procession
The Band and Drums
Procedure on arrival at the place of Interment
Procedure at the Graveside
Procedure during the Service
Procedure at a Crematorium
Procedure for firing the Volleys
Procedure for Dispersal
Procedure for carrying the coffin

CHAPTER 15

OTHER PARADES

SECTION 1 - PARADES OF OTHER REGIMENTS AND CORPS

Forms of Parade
Parade Ground
Salutes without Arms
Drawing of Swords
Infantry battalion mounted in APCs

SECTION 2 – GUARDS

Guard Mounting

SECTION 3 - DRUMHEAD AND REMEMBRANCE SERVICES

Introduction
Preparations for a Drumhead Service
Procedure
Remembrance Ceremonies

SECTION 4 - FORMATION, AMALGAMATION, VESTING DAY, REORGANISATION AND DISBANDMENT PARADES

General

Formation or Amalgamation Parades

Vesting Day Parade

Reorganisation Parades

Disbandment Parades

CHAPTER 16

MISCELLANEOUS CEREMONIAL MATTERS

SECTION 1 - HONOURS AND SALUTES OTHER THAN ARTILLERY SALUTES

Visiting Personages

National Anthems

Salutes in Boats

SECTION 2 - ROYAL REVIEW - ORDER OF MARCH

SECTION 3 - HONOURS ACCORDED TO THE LORD LIEUTENANT OF A COUNTY

SECTION 4 - PRECEDENCE ON PARADE

SECTION 5 - DISTINGUISHING FLAGS AND STAR PLATES ON MOTOR CARS

SECTION 6 - HALF-MASTING OF FLAGS

SECTION 7 - PROCEDURE FOR ORDERLIES TO AN INSPECTING OFFICER

SECTION 8 - CEREMONIAL CUSTOMS PARTICULAR TO THE ROYAL NAVY

Visits to HM Ships

SECTION 9 - JOINT SERVICE CEREMONIAL

SECTION 10 - UNOFFICIAL CEREMONIAL - WEDDINGS

SECTION 11 - INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE WEARING OF THE INSIGNIA OF ORDERS, DECORATIONS AND MEDALS

SECTION 12 - REPATRIATION

SECTION 13 - FREEDOM AND WELCOME HOME PARADES

SECTION 14 - GENERAL COMPLIMENTS

GLOSSARY - DEFINITIONS

KEY TO SYMBOLS USED IN ANNEXES

ANNEX A - COLOURS IN COLOUR STANDS AND PILED DRUMS WITH COLOURS - ALL VIEWED FROM THE FRONT AS SEEN BY THE TROOPS ON PARADE

ANNEX B - THE INSPECTION OR REVIEW PARADE GROUND

ANNEX C - A BATTALION IN LINE

ANNEX D - A BATTALION IN CLOSE COLUMN

ANNEX E - A BATTALION IN MASS

ANNEX F - ARMOURED REGIMENT FORMED UP ON PARADE WITH STANDARD/GUIDON IN POSITION

ANNEX G - ARMOURED RECONNISANCE REGIMENT FORMED UP ON PARADE WITH STANDARD/GUIDON IN POSITION

ANNEX H - A ROYAL ARTILLERY REGIMENT ON CEREMONIAL PARADE (MOUNTED)

ANNEX I - A ROYAL ARTILLERY REGIMENT ON CEREMONIAL PARADE (DISMOUNTED)

ANNEX J - REVIEW OF AN ARMOURED BRIGADE

ANNEX K - LAYOUT FOR PRESENTATION OF NEW COLOURS

ANNEX L - AN INFANTRY BATTALION MOUNTED IN APCS

CHAPTER 1 - GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

SECTION 1 - SCOPE OF THE PAMPHLET

Aim

1.01. Ceremonial for the Army is a continuation of The Drill Manual and compliments Queen's Regulations and Standing Orders for the Household Division. It is appreciated that the procedures laid down for parades may not be carried out in their entirety and in some instances not at all, since the form of a battalion ceremonial parade today, such as an annual inspection, is entirely governed by the wishes of the Inspecting Officer. However, since these procedures form the basis for other ceremonial parades, they have been laid down in some detail.

1.02. The chapters in the Pamphlet deal with the drill, formations and procedures for all normal ceremonial occasions and, also, aim to provide for Regiments parading mounted in AFVs. Details of drill, already laid down in The Drill Manual have not been included; reference, however, has been made to this publication where necessary. The procedure for Trooping the Colour has been described in detail.

The Household Division and King's Troop Royal Horse Artillery

1.03. The ceremonial procedures for The Household Division and King's Troop Royal Horse Artillery are not dealt with in the Pamphlet as the more intimate details are contained within their respective Standing Orders. However, elements of the Household Division's Standing Orders have been incorporated into this Pamphlet where appropriate.

Light Division and Rifle Regiments

1.04. Light Division drill for Rifle regiments (RIFLES and RGR) is not detailed in this book nor in The Drill Manual. Routines and words of command for exclusively Light Division parades should be advised by RHQ RIFLES. On joint parades the tempo is set by the Parade Commander.

Funerals

1.05. Procedures for funerals are covered in Chapter 14, and in greater detail in The Drill Manual.

Bands

1.06. Drill for Military Bands, Pipe Bands and Corps of Drums/Bugles has also been omitted from this publication. Training for musicians, drummers, Drum and Pipe Majors is carried out at special establishments and within units; the Royal Military School of Music, the Army School of Ceremonial and the Army School of Bag-Piping and Highland Drumming. Further details on musical support to the Army can be found in Instructions for Service Bands and Military Musicians - JSP 813.

SECTION 2 - WORDS OF COMMAND

Delivery of Words of Command

1.07. The Parade Commander will give the executive words of command for all movements intended to be simultaneous, unless the size or formation of the parade does not allow him to make himself heard by all concerned. In order to ensure that

units do work simultaneously to his command, the following procedures may be adopted.

- a. A public address system may be used to relay the command.
- b. Orders may be given by radio.
- c. Visual signals may be used.
- d. The Parade Commander may have a 'G' sounded on the trumpet/bugle.

1.08. Should the size or formation of the parade, with or without any of the above aids, still be such that the words of command given by the parade commander will not reach units taking part sufficiently quickly or clearly for the required movement to be executed simultaneously, his commands will be repeated by unit commanders who will give the cautionary and executive words of command to their own units. These will be given in succession from the right or simultaneously according to the nature of the movement to be performed.

1.09. Commands given during a parade are referred to in the text as appropriate. (Where the word of command is 'Attention' the executive word of command is "shun".) Executive words of command are printed in italics.

CHAPTER 2 - STANDARDS, GUIDONS AND COLOURS

SECTION 1 - A SHORT HISTORY OF COLOURS

Origin of Colours

2.01. 'Colours', displaying regimental symbols and battle honours, are the embodiment of the soul, history and ethos of the Regiment. 'Colours' (which includes Standards and Guidons) have their origins in early societies, as a mark of distinction for the group/tribe/band and as a conspicuous rallying point in battle. In the ancient armies, notably that of the Romans, the unit's emblems, the 'Eagle' standard and the other standards, were embodiments of the unit's corporate spirit; hence the fact that the loss of an 'Eagle' was such a disgrace. The use of a standard or emblem as a rallying point was a continuing feature in warfare, particularly in the period before 'uniforms', which readily distinguished friend from foe. In the *melee* of medieval battle, apart from the Lord and his retainers who might wear clothing with his personal insignia, the lesser-born troops merely 'rally to the standard'.

2.02. The term 'Colours' appears to come into regular usage in the late 16th Century. The Restoration of the Monarchy in 1660 saw the creation of the British Standing Army and a Royal Warrant of February 1661 set out the details of the 'Colours & Ensigns' to be provided for his Foot Guards. Subsequent warrants did the same for the rest of the Army. British military history is full of instances of gallantry involving the Colours and their defence, reflecting the military traditions mentioned earlier. Among the last notable actions was in the Zulu War of 1879 when two officers gave their lives trying to save The Queen's Colour of the 24th Foot: the Colour was swept away in the river, but was later recovered. It was brought reverently back to the UK where Queen Victoria, who was so taken by the officers' act of selfless gallantry, placed a wreath of Immortelles on its pike: the two men were eventually awarded VCs for this act, whilst the Colour itself is reverently preserved in Brecon Cathedral. The practice of carrying the Colours in action ended soon after, in

1881, reflecting the realities of more modern combat, weapons etc., which required an end to the formed mass of men who had utilised the Colours in battle as their focus.

2.03. The addition to Colours of 'Battle Honours' dates from the late 18th century with the title 'Emsdorff' on the Guidon of the 15th Light Dragoons being recorded in the 1768 Royal Warrant. Subsequently the 1844 Regulation standardized this process with devices, distinctions and battle honours being now placed only on the Second (later called the 'Regimental') Colour. This tradition continues to this day.

2.04. Today, Colours are not granted in recognition of wartime or other service. They are a formalised continuation of the ancient battlefield practice mentioned above, being the ceremonial evidence of the spirit and of the regiment, a moral rallying point recording their illustrious history. As a reflection of their roles, to close with the enemy, Colours were borne by the combat arms (cavalry, infantry and more recently tanks and helicopters). The guns of the Royal Artillery are to them their equivalent to Colours. Rifle regiments, owing to their role, would not have Colours and have no similar physical symbol. The only exception is the Royal Gurkha Regiment which has a Truncheon.

Standards and Guidons - Cavalry, Tanks, and Air Corps

2.05. These Standards and Guidons have evolved from the banners of the knights of the Middle Ages. The Standard (a square banner) was then carried by a Knight; the Guidon (an ensign or standard ending with a tail or point, now swallow tailed) being carried by a Banneret. When a Banneret was created a Knight the point of his Guidon was cut off, thus transforming it into a Standard.

2.06. In the Cavalry, skirmishing and reconnaissance were the roles of Lancers and Hussars and these gave up their Guidons when made Light Cavalry. However, with the passing of the horse and changing circumstances, there is now little difference in the roles of Heavy or Light Cavalry. Guidons are now carried by Hussar and Lancer regiments and also Air Corps regiments, whilst the Household Cavalry, Dragoon Guards and the Royal Tank Regiment carry Standards. It is customary in the Cavalry for the Standard or Guidon to be carried by a Warrant Officer or SNCO, and flanked by 2 NCOs or above.

Royal Artillery

2.07. The Colours of the Royal Regiment of Artillery are its weapons, which are its guns, rockets and missiles (including man-portable weapons) when these are mounted on or in a launcher. When on parade on ceremonial occasions, these weapons are accorded the same compliments as the Standards, Guidons and Colours of the Household Cavalry, Royal Armoured Corps and Infantry in that the 'Lead Gun' of an Artillery Regiment is to be paid compliments as for Colours marching at the head of an Infantry battalion. (It is therefore not necessary to salute all a unit's guns passing on a parade.) It is impracticable in modern times to consider the weapons of the Royal Artillery as Colours on non-ceremonial occasions but they are always to be treated with dignity and respect.

Infantry

2.08. In 1751 infantry regiments were allowed two Colours (King's and Regimental), and this arrangement has continued to the present day. The practice of carrying Colours into action continued until the beginning of 1881 during the first Boer War in

South Africa, when the custom was discontinued because of the altered form of attack and the increased range of musketry.

2.09. Certain regiments have the right to carry three Colours on parade but this right is only exercised by The Royal Highland Fusiliers, 2nd Battalion The Royal Regiment of Scotland, who carry the Assaye Colour, the original of which was presented by the East India Company to commemorate the brave conduct of the Regiment at the Battle of Assaye. Two other British Regiments also continue to carry a 3rd Colour, The Queen's Royal Regiment (West Surrey) now the Princess of Wales's Royal Regiment and The Duke of Wellington's Regiment (West Riding), now 3rd Battalion The Yorkshire Regiment (Duke of Wellington's).

Rifle Regiments

2.10. These, with one exception, did not carry Colours since their original duty was to skirmish ahead of the main body, where speed and concealment were essential to success. The exception was the 2nd King Edward VII's Own Gurkha Rifles (Sirmoor Rifles), who were granted a Truncheon by Queen Victoria for distinguished services at Delhi in 1857. This Truncheon, which is now carried by The Royal Gurkha Rifles on ceremonial parades, represents in all respects a Colour.

Symbolism

2.11. Colours have become the symbol of the spirit of a regiment for they bear the battle honours and badges granted to the regiment in commemoration of the gallant deeds performed by its members from the time it was raised. This association of Colours with heroic deeds has caused them to be regarded with veneration. The fact that Colours are consecrated before being taken into use, and after service are laid up in sacred or public buildings, helps to maintain the atmosphere of veneration with which they are surrounded.

SECTION 2 - INFANTRY COLOURS

Occasions When Carried

2.12. Regimental Colours are carried on all ceremonial parades by all Regiments who have been granted Colours.

2.13. The Queen's Colour is carried only when a guard is mounted over:

- a. Her Majesty The Queen, His Royal Highness Prince Philip Duke of Edinburgh, or a member of the Royal Family.
- b. A governor-general, governor, high commissioner, lieutenant-governor or office administering the government in his capacity as Her Majesty's representative within the area of his jurisdiction.
- c. A foreign sovereign, the president of a republican state or member of a reigning foreign Imperial or Royal Family.

2.14. The Queen's Colour will not be trooped except in the case of:

- a. A Guard mounted over Her Majesty The Queen, His Royal Highness Prince Philip Duke of Edinburgh and members of the Royal Family.
- b. A guard mounted over Her Majesty's chief representative in British Dependent Territories.
- c. A ceremonial parade held in honour of The Queen's Birthday.

d. The occasion of Presentation of Colours.

2.15. Many examples of drill for Colour Parties given in this pamphlet show the more complicated situations where both Colours are on parade. These are not to be taken as an authority to parade both Colours as normally the only occasions when The Queen's Colour only may be carried are shown in the two paragraphs above (QR 1975 PJ8.035). However, the following are occasions when both Colours (if in possession) will normally be on parade:

- a. Freedom Parades.
- b. Street Lining.
- c. Colours to Chapel/Drumhead Services.
- d. Parades at the Royal Military Academy Sandhurst.

Composition of the Colour Party

2.16. This will be as follows:

- a. Each Colour will be carried by a Subaltern/Ensign, The Queen's Colour, when carried, will be on the right and carried by the senior, who will command the Colour Party.
- b. Warrant Officers Class II and Non-Commissioned Officers not below the rank of Colour Sergeant have the honourable distinction of escorting the Colours. This Escort will consist of three. The senior will be posted between the colours, the other two covering them two paces in the rear. On occasions when Warrant Officers and Non-Commissioned Officers of these ranks are not available, this honourable distinction may be allowed to Non-Commissioned Officers of lower rank and selected Private Soldiers. If only one colour is carried, the two junior escorts will be posted either side of the Colour, the senior covering it two paces in rear.
- c. This colour Escort should not be confused with an Escort to the Colour which will consist of a formed body of troops (usually a company) under the command of an officer.

Compliments

2.17. When Colours are uncased:

- a. The Colour Party will not pay compliments except to persons entitled to a salute under Queen's Regulations 1975 PJ8.035, in which case the Ensigns only pay compliments; other members of the Colour Party do not.
- b. Colours will be saluted by all ranks.
- c. On ceremonial parades, spectators will pay compliments to the Colours, by standing up and saluting if in uniform, or doffing their hat if wearing one in plain clothes:
 - (1) When the Colours are marched on and off parade.
 - (2) When the Colours pass by at the nearest point.

2.18. When Colours are cased, Colour Parties will pay such compliments as would be appropriate if no Colours were present.

Position on Parade

2.19. The position of the Colour Party when the Battalion is in line will be between the two centre Companies, the Subalterns/Ensigns being in line with the front rank, the two Non-Commissioned Officers covering them, in line with the rear rank. If the line is ordered to retire, the Colour Party will turn about, but will remain steady in its original alignment.

CHAPTER 3 - THE BATTALION PARADE

SECTION 1 - GENERAL

Preparations

3.01. The chapter covers the basic dismounted battalion parade. All regimental and corps parades evolve from this.

3.02. The inspection or review ground is to be marked as shown in Annex B.

3.03. The Battalion to be inspected is to be drawn up in one of the following formations:

- a. Line.
- b. Close column.
- c. Mass formation.

All commands and movements prior to adopting these formations are contained in The Drill Manual Army Code No 70166. Diagrams, showing the above Battalion formations with the position of the Colour Party, are at Annexes C, D and E.

3.04. Battalions are to parade with four companies, sized and of equal strength, and further divided into not more than three platoons. The parade will be in the three ranks. Officers will be posted as laid down in The Drill Manual. Warrant Officers, Staff Sergeants and Sergeants, not required as guides, will normally parade at equal intervals in the supernumerary rank. NCOs below the rank of Sergeant will normally parade in the ranks.

3.05. Colours will be paraded as applicable.

3.06. A Band may be on parade and will either form up eight paces in rear of the centre of the Battalion or, if this is impracticable, on the right flank of the Battalion.

3.07. Detachments or individual personnel of other arms permanently attached to a unit (e.g. light aid detachment REME) may parade with the unit to which they are attached. They may form an individual troop/platoon in the headquarters of that unit.

3.08. The Inspecting Officer will be met by an officer who is not included on the Parade. The Assistant Adjutant may be used for this task.

SECTION 2 - PRELIMINARIES

Adjutant

3.09. The Adjutant waits with sword drawn until the RSM has established the Parade he then normally takes over the Parade from the RSM. He then moves the Battalion into open order and orders the Battalion to fix bayonets. He then hands

over to the Battalion Second-in-Command and takes up his position on the right of the line of Officers.

Adjutant: *In Open Order, Right Dress. Eyes Front. Battalion will Fix Bayonets, Fix, Bayonets. Attention.*

3.10. The Officers will have formed up in line behind the Second-in-Command. They will be facing the Parade and covering off their position on the Parade.

Second-in-Command

3.11. The Second-in-Command will draw his sword then order the Officers to fall in.

Battalion Second-in-Command: *Fall in - The Officers.*

3.12. The Officers will come to attention, draw swords and step off. Having taken up their position on the Parade, they will face the front.

3.13. The Second-in-Command will bring the Battalion to the Slope. He will then hand over the Parade to the Commanding Officer and take up his position on parade.

Battalion Second-in-Command: *Slope Arms.*

Commanding Officer

3.14. The Commanding Officer will draw his sword and will then give the order for the Colours to march on followed by 'Battalion Present Arms'. Immediately the Battalion has presented arms the Colour Party will step off onto the Parade Ground and move to its position on the Parade. The Band will play 'Point of War' or the Regimental March according to Regimental custom. The Escort to the Colour Party, having arrived in position, will present arms.

Commanding Officer: *March on the Colours. Battalion, Present Arms.*

Senior Ensign: *Colour Party, By the Centre, Quick March. Colour Party, Halt. Colour Party, Present Arms.*

3.15. If the Battalion is formed up in line the Commanding Officer will give the orders shown below. The Parade is now ready to receive the Inspecting Officer.

Commanding Officer: *Battalion Slope Arms, Shoulder Arms, Stand at Ease, Stand Easy.*

3.16. If the Battalion is formed up in close column or mass, the Commanding Officer, after having shouldered arms, will order the Officers and Colours to take post in review order.

Commanding Officer: *Battalion Shoulder Arms.*

- a. On the word 'Shoulder' the Colours will be brought to the 'Carry'.
- b. On the word 'Post' the Officers of Nos 1 and 3 Companies will turn to the right, the Officers of Nos 2 and 4 Companies to the left.

Officers and Colours will take Post in Review Order. Take Post, Quick March.

- c. On the command 'Quick March' the Officers will step off and place themselves five paces in front of the front rank of the leading Company with the Colours in the centre. Colours and Officers of Nos 1 and 3 Companies will move out by the right flank, Officers of Nos 2 and 4 Companies by the left flank, sizing themselves on the right and left of the Colours respectively with the tallest Officers on the flanks. The Second-in-Command will be on the right and the Adjutant on the left of the line of Officers.

Commanding Officer: Officers, Right Dress. Second-in-Command: Steady.

d. The line of Officers will be dressed by the Second-in-Command of the Battalion. The Officers will bring their swords to the 'recover' on the command 'Right-Dress' and return to the carry on the command 'Steady'. The Commanding Officer will then stand the Battalion at ease and stand easy as in paragraph 3.15 above.

SECTION 3 - THE INSPECTION

General Salute

3.17. When the Inspecting Officer approaches the parade ground the Battalion will be called to attention and arms brought to the slope.

Commanding Officer: Battalion, Attention, Slope, Arms.

3.18. When the Inspecting Officer arrives at the dais of the Saluting Base, he or she will be received with a General Salute or Royal Salute.

Commanding Officer: Royal/General Salute, Present Arms.

3.19. The Colours will remain at the 'Carry' except on the occasion as laid down in QRs (A) paragraph J8.042. The Band will play the first part of a slow march with drums beating.

Commanding Officer: Battalion Slope Arms.

3.20. On completion of the General Salute or Royal Salute, the Commanding Officer will report to the Inspecting Officer. This having been done if the Battalion is in close column or mass formation, the Officers and Colours will be ordered to take post in close column.

Commanding Officer: Officers and Colours will take post in close column, Take Post.

a. Whereupon, on the word 'Post' Officers will turn outwards from the centre, the Colour Party turning to the right.

b. On the command 'Quick March' the whole will move to their places.

3.21. The Battalion will be stood at ease with the exception of No 1 Company, who will remain at attention.

Commanding Officer: Shoulder Arms. Stand Fast No 1 Company Remainder, Stand at Ease.

Inspection Procedure

3.22. The Inspecting Officer, accompanied by the Commanding Officer and such other Officers and Regimental Orderlies etc. as may be in attendance, will then pass down the front rank of the Company from right to left; down the centre rank from left to right, and the rear rank from right to left.

NOTES: (1) He/She will pass along the supernumerary ranks at his/her discretion.
(2) All persons accompanying the Inspecting Officer during the inspection will position themselves behind him/her (the Inspecting Officer) or on the side furthest from the rank being inspected at the time.
(3) The Inspecting Party will pay a compliment to the Colour(s) when they pass by at the nearest point.

3.23. The Company Commanders will call their Companies to attention as the Inspecting Officer moves towards the left of the rear rank of the preceding Company.

They will accompany the Inspecting Officer during his inspection of their Companies. When the Inspecting Officer has moved to begin his inspection of the next Company, the Company just inspected will be ordered by its Commander to stand at ease.

Company Commander: No ... Company Attention.

Company Commander: No ... Company Stand at Ease

3.24. The Band will play throughout the inspection.

SECTION 4 - THE MARCH PAST

Formations

3.25. The Battalion may march past in any of the following formations:

- a. Column of Route - Quick time only.
- b. Column of Threes - Quick time only.
- c. Column of Companies - Slow or Quick time.
- d. Close column of Companies - Slow or Quick time.

3.26. The positions of Officers and the Regimental Sergeant-Major in the above formations during the march past are shown in the table within this chapter. The position of the Colour Party in these formations is shown in the latest edition of the Drill Manual.

3.27. The Band will be formed up in mass opposite the Inspecting Officer, allowing sufficient space for the Battalion to march past in any of the above formations. The Band will move under the Command of the Director of Music/Bandmaster or Drum-Major. They will not play during this movement.

Position of officers and the Regimental Sergeant-Major during the March Past

Formation	Battalion Commander	Battalion Second-in-Command	Adjutant	Company Commander	Company Second-in-Command	Platoon Commander	Regimental Sergeant-Major
Column of Route	10 paces in front of the centre of the leading rank	16 paces in rear of the centre file of the rear platoon of the rear company	2 paces to the right rear of the battalion commander	4 paces in front of the centre file of his company	3 paces in rear of the centre file of the rear platoon of his company	Each 1 pace in front of the centre file of their platoons	3 paces in rear of and covering off the Commanding Officer.
Column of Threes	9 paces from the directing flank in the centre of the battalion	6 paces from the directing flank in line with the leading man of the leading company	6 paces from the directing flank in line with the rear man of the rear company	6 paces from the directing flank in the centre of his company	3 paces from the directing flank in line with the company commander	3 paces from the directing flank equally distributed along the company	3 paces from non-directing flank between No 2 and 3 Companies in line with the battalion commander
By Companies and Close Column of Companies	15 paces in front of the centre of the leading company	6 paces in front of the right-hand man of the leading company	6 paces in front of the left-hand man of the leading company	6 paces in front of the centre of his company	3 paces in front of the right-hand man of the company	3 paces in front of and equally distributed along the company frontage in line with the company second-in-command	Immediately in rear of the Colour Party

NOTE: *The Regimental Sergeant-Major, during the march past, will carry his cane/pace stick under the left arm with the left hand on the side of the cane/pace stick, fingers extended, gripped from beneath between the thumb and forefinger.*

March Past in Columns of Route/Threes

3.28. The Battalion will slope arms, take close order and right turn:

a. If the Battalion is in line or close column of Companies and the march past is to be in column of route/threes, on the command. 'Right Turn' Officers and NCOs in the supernumerary ranks will step off and take up their positions for the march past. Officers will move round the front of their Companies and supernumeraries round the back.

b. On the command 'Quick March' the Band will play and the Battalion will move off. The leading Company will left wheel opposite point A (see Annex B) and again on arriving at the passing line, the remainder of the Battalion conforming.

Commanding Officer: Battalion. Attention. Slope Arms.

In close order, Right Dress. Eyes front.

Move to the right in column of threes.

Right Turn. Battalion will march past in column of route/threes.

By the left Quick March.

Marching Past in Column/Close Column of Companies

3.29. If the Battalion is formed up in line and the march past is by column of Companies or close column of Companies, the orders and movements will be the same as in Paragraph 3.28 except that Officers (with the exception of the Adjutant) and supernumerary ranks, being already in their position for the march past, will not move. The Commanding Officer and the Adjutant will move to their positions, for the march past after the right turn. The former will wait for the latter to reach his position before starting the march past. When the leading Company has wheeled and reached the passing line, it will turn to its left into line on the command of its Company Commander. The remaining Companies will conform on reaching the same position.

Commanding Officer: Battalion will march past in slow and quick time. By the left Slow March.

Company Commanders: No ... Company will advance. Left Turn.

3.30. If the Battalion is marching past in slow time, Company Commanders will give the command to open order on reaching point B and close order on reaching point E (see Annex B).

Company Commanders: Open Order.

Company Commanders: Close Order.

3.31. On arrival at point F (see Annex B) either of the following movements may be carried out in order to bring the Battalion to its former position on the Inspection line or to continue along the Inspection line for the march past in quick time.

a. Right turn at point F (see Annex B) and thereafter move by a series of left wheels executed automatically by the leading Company.

b. Left form at point E (see Annex B) and thereafter move by a series of left forms, Companies acting on the orders of the Company Commander:

Company Commander: No ... Company Left Form, Forward.

3.32. When the last Company has cleared point F, the Band will cease playing (all except the bass drummer who will continue to beat time) and the Battalion will break into quick time by order of the Battalion Commander.

Commanding Officer: *(Over 4 bass drum beats) Break, into, quick, time, - four further bass drum beats then - Quick March.*

3.33. The Battalion will then march past in quick time. Ranks will remain at close order throughout.

3.34. On completion of the march past in quick time and if the Battalion is to advance in review order, it will return to the Inspection line and will normally form up in the same formation in which it received the Inspecting Officer. The Band and Drums will be in the rear of the centre.

3.35. The Battalion will take open order and if in close column or mass formations, Officers and Colours will be given the order to take post in review order. Movements will be the same as in Paragraph 3.16.

Commanding Officer: *In open order, Right Dress, Officers and Colours Take Post. Quick March.*

3.36. The Commanding Officer, after he has marched past in slow time and saluted, will move out and place himself on the right of the Inspecting Officer. He will remain there until the Battalion has passed. He will return to the parade after the Battalion has marched past in slow time and repeat this action after he was marched past in quick time. His sword will remain at the 'Carry' when at the saluting base.

Saluting

3.37. During the march past, each Company Commander will give the order 'Eyes Right' and 'Eyes Front' at points C and D respectively as shown in Annex B.

Company Commander: *No ... Company Eyes Right. No ... Company Eyes Front.*

3.38. In quick time, if swords are worn, Officers will remain at the carry, turning their heads and eyes to the right. In slow time all Officers will salute with the sword.

3.39. If swords are not worn all Officers will salute with the hand.

3.40. The Commanding Officer and other Officers not within Companies will take their timing from the nearest Company.

3.41. For action of the Colour Party see Chapter 2.

SECTION 5 - ADVANCE IN REVIEW ORDER

Procedure

3.42. The Battalion is now formed up in the same formation as when it received the Inspecting Officer. The Commanding Officer, having resumed his position on the parade, will give the order to advance in review order. The whole will advance for 15 paces, the Band and Drums playing a 5 pace-roll. At the conclusion of the eighth bar of music, the Band and Drums will cease playing and the whole parade will halt without any further word of command.

Commanding Officer: *Battalion will advance in review order. By the centre, Quick March.*

3.43. The parade will then be ordered to salute in the same manner as when it received the Inspecting Officer.

Commanding Officer: Royal/General Salute, Present Arms. Battalion, Slope Arms Shoulder Arms

Conclusion of the Parade

3.44. The Parade is now concluded and after the Inspecting Officer has left the parade ground the Commanding Officer will order the Colours to March off.

Commanding Officer: Battalion, Slope Arms. March off the Colours. Battalion, Present Arms. Battalion, Slope Arms, Shoulder Arms. Battalion will unfix bayonets. Unfix bayonets. Stand at Ease.

3.45. The Commanding Officer may then fall out the Officers and dismiss the Parade himself or in many Battalions it is customary for him to hand over to the Battalion Second-in-Command, (before the battalion unfix bayonets), who does so.

Commanding Officer/Second-in-Command: Fall out the Officers. Battalion, Attention. Dismiss/ March off by Companies.

Infantry Battalion Mounted in Armoured Vehicles

3.46. See Chapter 4 and Chapter 15, Paragraph 15.06.

SECTION 6 - PRESENTATION OF MEDALS

Timing

3.47. When it is decided to incorporate a presentation of medals with a ceremony or parade such as an inspection or review, this may take place as early as possible during the parade and the most practical moment is immediately after the Inspection. Alternatively medals may be presented after the Advance in Review Order.

Carrying Arms

3.48. When the recipients present themselves in front of the Inspecting Officer they should be without rifles or other small arms which are likely to interfere with the pinning on of the medal and their ability to shake hands in the customary manner with the personage making the award. If for Active Service reasons arms must be carried, then they should be at the 'Shoulder' and transferred to the left side before the presentation is made. Alternatively the Parade/recipients may 'ground arms' before medals are presented.

CHAPTER 4 - AFV MOUNTED PARADES, ROYAL ARMOURED CORPS ARMOURED REGIMENTAL PARADES

SECTION 1 - GENERAL

Scope

4.01. Armoured Regiments may carry out ceremonial parades either mounted or dismounted. This chapter primarily concerns itself with mounted parades for Armoured and Armoured Reconnaissance Regiments and refers to dismounted parades only where movements vary from the procedure laid down in other chapters of this Manual. The mounted parade described below forms the basis for mounted parades of all other Regiments and Corps. The form and shape of a mounted parade is dependent on the amount of space, surface conditions etc. of the selected parade ground. There must therefore be variations in the form to suit local conditions, and this chapter is only intended as a guide.

Form of Parade

4.02. The Inspection or Review parade ground will be laid out as shown at Annex B. The saluting dais should be at least as high as the turret of the AFV.

4.03. It is the responsibility of the Commanding Officer of the Regiment to decide how the main movements of the parade are to be controlled, which vehicles should be used as keepers of the ground and the formation for the march past. This chapter envisages a march past by three AFVs abreast. The following forms of parade are covered in this chapter:

- a. Mounted Regimental Parade with Standard/Guidon.
- b. Mounted Regimental Trooping of the Standard/Guidon.

4.04. Control may be by word of command, trumpet, visual signal or radio, or a combination of these. Obviously the first two are inappropriate when engines are running. Examples are given of each method.

Special Points

4.05. Small arms will not normally be carried on ceremonial parades where troops are required to mount/dismount from the AFVs during the course of the parade. SA 80 or SA 80 Carbines will however be carried by escort parties to Guidons/Standards when these are dismounted. The drill for this is laid down in The Drill Manual Army Code No 70166 Chapter 3.

4.06. Dependent on the surface and location of the ground, AFVs may be either pre-positioned on the parade ground prior to the 'Fall in' with the crews dismounted off the parade ground or, if the surface conditions preclude this, the Regiment may march on and form up on the inspection line with crews mounted throughout. The former situation is incorporated into the mounted regimental parade with the Standard/Guidon, and the latter into the mounted regimental trooping of the Standard/Guidon in order to illustrate the drill in both instances.

4.07. 'B' vehicles may be present on a regimental parade but are not normally present on a parade for 'Trooping the Standard/Guidon'.

4.08. If present, the Band should normally be positioned behind or beside the saluting base throughout the mounted parade, as it is unlikely, except when the parade takes place on concrete hard standing, that dismounted movements will be possible after rehearsals with AFVs.

4.09. Should the Inspecting/Reviewing Officer wish to address the Regiment, this will take place at a suitable moment during the parade. On such an occasion the Regiment will dismount and form three sides of a square in front of the AFVs.

4.10. The advance in review order, if included in the parade, will normally take place prior to the march past, in order to avoid more damage than necessary to the ground selected for the parade. The ideal is for this to be carried out with the minimum interval between AFVs and at a slow speed. The actual advance should not be more than 30-50 yards so that the guiding markers or pegs are clearly visible to the drivers throughout.

4.11. All AFV/vehicle Commanders will salute in the normal manner. The AFV gun will be traversed 45 degrees and dipped. The Standard/Guidon AFV will not traverse or dip except to Her Majesty The Queen or her nominated representative.

SECTION 2 - MOUNTED REGIMENTAL PARADE WITH STANDARD

Preliminaries

4.12. The Regiment should be formed up on the parade ground as shown in Annexes F and G as applicable, with crews off the parade ground.

- a. The intervals should be:
 - (1) One AFV width between AFVs.
 - (2) No intervals between troops.
 - (3) Three AFV widths between Squadrons.
 - (4) Commanding Officers' AFV advanced by approx. 15 yards.
- b. Depending on the size of the parade ground, the Commanding Officer will decide in what multiples abreast the AFVs will march past.

The Fall In

4.13. This will take place as follows:

- a. Either:
 - (1) The Band, accompanied by the Saluting Base Markers, will march on and take up their positions.
 - (2) The crews will form up on each flank of the parade ground facing inwards. Officers will parade with the crews.
 - (3) The Commanding Officer's Trumpeter will sound 'Advance' and a 'g' and the Band will play the Regimental Double March. Crews will double on parade and mark time in front of their vehicles. When the Director of Music/Bandmaster sees that all are in position, he will beat to a halt followed by a further beat upon which the crews will turn to the front and stand at ease.
- b. Or: In the manner described in Chapter 3, Paragraphs 3.11-13.

Marching on of the Standard/Guidon

4.14. The Standard/Guidon may be received by the Regiment either mounted or dismounted. The former is preferable as the crews will not normally be carrying personal weapons.

- a. *Mounted* (Orders by Trumpet):
 - (1) On completion of the 'Fall In' the Commanding Officer's Trumpeter will sound 'Mount'.
 - (2) Crews will mount and remain at attention.
 - (3) When all are ready he will sound one 'g' as an indication to the Standard/Guidon vehicle to come on to the parade ground.
 - (4) As it does so, he will sound the 'Present Arms' and the Band will play the 'General Salute'.
 - (5) The Standard/Guidon AFV/AFVs will come on parade at an appropriate speed and take up their position centrally behind the Commanding Officer's

AFV. The crew will not dismount from their vehicle when on parade. Having arrived in position it/they will switch off.

(6) The Commanding Officer's Trumpeter will then sound 'Shoulder Arms'. The parade is now ready to receive the Inspecting/Reviewing Officer.

b. *Dismounted*: The proceedings are the same, but without the 'Present Arms', Officers only saluting. In either case commands may equally well be given by word of mouth if distance permits. The crews are then ready to be inspected.

The Inspection

4.15. The procedure is as follows:

a. If the Inspecting/Reviewing Officer is received mounted, the procedure will be the same as for receiving the Standard/Guidon, except that the crews are already mounted. On completion of the 'General Salute' the 'Dismount' will be ordered and the crews will fall in the crewfront. If the Inspecting/ Reviewing Officer is received dismounted, there will be no change in the procedure.

b. The Inspection will take place either mounted in a quarter ton vehicle or dismounted, depending on how far the regimental line is set back from the saluting base and the condition of the ground.

c. The Commanding Officer will report to the Inspecting/Reviewing Officer and having obtained permission to stand the parade at ease, will indicate that fact to the Director of Music/Bandmaster, who in turn will start the inspection music with a beat of the drum. On this beat of the drum, 'A' Squadron will stand fast and the remainder will stand at ease.

d. The Commanding Officer will then convey the Inspecting/Reviewing Officer to the right flank of the Regiment where the actual inspection will take place in the normal manner.

e. On completion of the Inspection, the Commanding Officer will deliver the Inspecting/Reviewing Officer back to the saluting base and will resume his position in his AFV. The quarter ton vehicle, if used to convey the Inspecting/Reviewing Officer, will then move off parade.

Advance in Review Order

4.16. The normal procedure is as follows:

a. Either:

(1) The order will be given to mount. Crews having mounted, will carry out preliminary starting drills and when ready the Commanders will raise their right arms. When all are ready the order will be given to 'Start up'. Commanders will drop the arm when his vehicle has started. When all are started the Commanding Officer will order the 'Advance' by visual signal or radio.

or

(2) On the command to 'Start up', the driver only will mount, the remainder will turn about. When the engine of a vehicle is started, the crew will turn about to the face the front. The Commanding Officer will give the signal to mount when all have started and then order the 'Advance'.

- b. The Regiment will then advance 30-50 yards and the band will play. On halting, the Commanding Officer will order the 'General Salute' and the band will play.
- c. The Advance in Review Order will only be carried out if the circumstances and ground permit.
- d. The Regiment will then move off to take up its position ready for the march past.

The March Past

4.17. The normal march past will be by Squadrons in column of Troops (i.e. three AFVs abreast).

- a. The order of the march past should be:
 - (1) Regimental Headquarters
 - (2) The Standard/Guidon Party.
 - (3) Reconnaissance Troop (if applicable).
 - (4) A Squadron.
 - (5) B Squadron.
 - (6) C Squadron.
 - (7) A1 Echelons, 'A' Squadron, 'B' Squadron, 'C' Squadron.
 - (8) A2 Echelon, Headquarters Squadron.
- b. As the Commanding Officer will be unable to dismount, having marched past, the Second-in-Command will be in attendance on the Inspecting/Reviewing Officer throughout the parade.
- c. The speed of the march past must depend on the surface, dust conditions etc: 10-12 mph is the ideal.
- d. *The Salute:*
 - (1) The AFVs' guns will be traversed right and dipped to maximum depression between points B and C (Annex B refers), the movement being completed on arrival at point C. As gunners will be unable to see marker flags, commanders will signal gunners to traverse, dip etc.
 - (2) At point C the Commander will salute.
 - (3) At point D the Commander will come down from the salute and the guns will commence elevating to 10 degrees elevation and traverse front.
 - (4) In all other vehicles the Commander will salute to the right at point C, and come down from the salute at point D.
- e. The March Past having been completed, the Regiment will move off the parade ground followed by the Band.

SECTION 3 - REGIMENTAL TROOPING OF THE STANDARD/GUIDON

General

4.18. The Ground should be kept by such armoured vehicles as are available including those of attached units and/or dismounted personnel.

4.19. All actions prior to and during the parade will be carried out mounted.

Preliminaries

4.20. The parade will form up as follows:

- a. The Band, followed by the Keepers of the Ground, will march on and take up their positions.
- b. The Commanding Officer will order the 'Advance' and the Regiment will move onto the parade ground and take up its position as shown in Annexes F and G as applicable.

NOTE: B vehicles are not to be included on the Parade.

Marching on the Standard/Guidon

4.21. The procedure will be the same as for a mounted regimental parade.

4.22. On arrival of the Inspecting/Reviewing Officer on the dais, the Commanding Officer's Trumpeter will sound 'Present Arms' and the Band will play the appropriate Salute.

Inspection

4.33. If the Reviewing Officer intends to inspect the parade, this will take place prior to the Troop.

4.34. The Commanding Officer, after the 'Shoulder Arms' has been sounded, will dismount from his AFV and mount the inspection vehicle. He will convey the Inspecting/Reviewing Officer on the inspection of the parade and, having delivered him back to the saluting base, will remount his AFV. The inspection vehicle will then move off the parade.

The Troop

4.35. The Commanding Officer's Trumpeter will then sound the Regimental Call and:

- a. The Director of Music/Bandmaster will then play a suitable fanfare to indicate that the Troop should begin.
- b. The Standard/Guidon Party will move off to the left of the regimental line at about 5 mph.
- c. The Commanding Officer's Trumpeter will sound the 'Present Arms' with the Standard/Guidon Party reaches the left of the line.
- d. The Standard/Guidon vehicle will pass down the regimental line with its escort vehicles (if applicable) in rear. On arrival at the right of the line the Standard/Guidon Party will wheel back into its position on the parade.
- e. When the Standard/Guidon Party has cleared the regimental line the Commanding Officer's Trumpeter will sound the 'Order Arms'.

The March Past

4.36. As soon as the Standard/Guidon Party has returned to its original position, the Commanding Officer will order 'Start up'. The procedure thereafter will be the same as on a mounted regimental parade.

CHAPTER 5 - ARTILLERY REGIMENTAL PARADES

Introduction

5.01. Artillery regimental parades may be held either mounted or dismounted.

SECTION 1 - MOUNTED (ANNEX H)

Layout

5.02. The regiment will be drawn up in line as shown at Annex H. The number of firing batteries will vary with the establishment and Headquarters Battery and other non-firing batteries may parade at the discretion of the Commanding Officer. The formation is the same for regiments with self propelled and towed equipment. The precedence of batteries will be that given in Royal Artillery Standing Orders.

Fall In

5.03. The regiment may fall in, in a manner similar to that for a Royal Armoured Corps parade or a battalion parade.

The Inspection

5.04. For the inspection the detachments and crews may be mounted but will normally be at "Detachments Front":

- a. The detachments will be in two ranks with the rear rank two paces in front of the line of vehicles.
- b. Drivers will be positioned in an appropriate place to mount their vehicles.
- c. On the open order, the front rank will take one pace forward; the rear rank will stand fast.

Commanding Officer: In open Order, Right Dress.

The March Past

5.05. The march past will be conducted by batteries in column of sections:

- a. On the command "Mount", front ranks will turn to their right and rear ranks to their left before doubling to their appropriate mounting positions and mounting. When mounted, vehicle commanders will stand with the left hand resting on the vehicle.

Commanding Officer: Mount.

- b. On the command "Forward", each battery will wheel to the right and drive off, simultaneously or successively as space permits.

Commanding Officer: Drive past by batteries. Right wheel - forward.

- c. Between points C and D vehicle commanders will salute.
- d. With self-propelled guns the turrets are never traversed and barrels dipped.

SECTION 2 - DISMOUNTED (ANNEX I)

Variations from the Battalion Parade

5.06. The procedure for a dismounted parade is in nearly all respects the same as for an Infantry battalion parade. There are the following significant variations:

- a. Bayonets will be carried but not fixed except on special occasions approved by RHQ RA.
- b. The regiment will be drawn up in line as show at Annex I. The number of batteries will vary with the establishment and precedence given in Royal Artillery Standing Orders.
- c. The Adjutant will, after taking over the parade from the Regimental Sergeant Major, draw his sword then give the command for the officers to draw swords and fall in. He will then hand over the parade to either the Second-in-Command, or to the Commanding Officer if the Second-in-Command is not on parade.
- d. The march past will be conducted in column of batteries or in column of route.

5.07. Annex C shows the differences in layout between the Infantry Battalion drawn up in line and the Artillery Regiment when dismounted.

Compliments

5.08. On a mounted March Past only the 'Lead Gun' (representing a Colour Party) is saluted.

CHAPTER 6 - FORMATION PARADES

SECTION 1 - GENERAL

Occasions when held

6.01. Parades of formations of a Brigade or larger are seldom held now. They normally take place only on The Queen's Birthday or on the occasion of a special review by the Sovereign, a member of the Royal Family, or a Senior Officer.

Procedure

6.02. This is basically the same as for a Regiment/Battalion but no hard and fast rules can be laid down. The formations to be adopted on the inspection line and for the march past, and the presence of Staff Officers on the parade, are largely dictated by the size of the ground and local conditions. This chapter therefore lays out in broad terms the general arrangements necessary prior to and during the ceremony and suggests how a parade, with mixed Arms either mounted, dismounted or a combination of both, should be carried out.

SECTION 2 - ARRANGEMENTS

6.03. All arrangements in connection with formation parades require careful preparation under the following headings:

- a. Arrangements before the ceremony.
- b. Arrangements for the ceremony.
- c. Arrangements for dispersal.

Arrangements before the Ceremony

6.04. These should normally include instructions on the following:

- a. Instructions regarding dress including the wearing of swords, side arms and medals.
- b. Instructions regarding uniformity of arms within units.
- c. The formation in which units are to form up on the review line and in which they are to march past, including directions regarding distances and intervals.
- d. Position of Officers on the review line and during the march past.
- e. Massing of Bands for the review and for the march past. When Bands are to play.
- f. Preparation of vehicles and provision of spare vehicles.
- g. Action to be taken in the event of engine or mechanical failures.
- h. Method of communicating warning of executive action and relaying of words of command.
- j. General administrative arrangements, e.g. the preparation of the ground, enclosures for spectators and representatives of the press, traffic control, medical etc.

NOTE: If aircraft are taking part, they should be kept well away from the parade ground during the time when the troops are forming up

Arrangements for the Ceremony

6.05. These should include the following:

- a. An outline of the various phases of the parade.
- b. Any special instructions regarding massed Bands.
- c. Instructions regarding the flying of pennants and flags on vehicles.
- d. Detail of movements to be carried out after the review prior to the march past and after the march past.
- e. Speeds of vehicles.
- f. Equipment to be carried on vehicles.
- g. Instructions regarding saluting in AFVs during the march past.
- h. Instructions regarding cancellation due to inclement weather.

NOTE: If aircraft are taking part, sufficient time should be allowed, after they have flown past, for them to be clear of the parade ground so that words of command may be heard distinctly.

Arrangements for Dispersal

6.06. These should include:

- a. Instructions for movement from the parade ground to the embussing area.
- b. Special instructions regarding traffic control.

Rifle Regiments on Formation Parades

6.07. When The Rifles or Royal Gurkha Rifles are attending a formation parade, complications may arise because of the variations in their drill movements and rate of march. These can be overcome in the following way:

a. *Foot and Arms Drill:* Whilst the execution of arms drill and foot drill may differ from other arms, the finished movement is almost always similar, either:

(1) They should execute their own drill movements working on the Parade Commander's orders to the parade.

or

(2) Their own Commander may give orders to his own troops if this proves quite impracticable.

or

(3) They must conform to the rest of the parade by adopting the position of attention. This solution should be avoided wherever possible.

b. *The March Past:*

(1) As far as possible these Regiments should be placed in the march past in their normal order of seniority. A gap should be left after the unit in front to allow them to march past at their own time.

(2) If this is not possible, they must either move at the head of the troops or follow up the rear, a gap having been left.

(3) The length of the gap will depend on the distance of the saluting base from the forming up point, but the march should be timed to leave the smallest possible gap at the saluting base.

(4) Having passed the saluting base they should, where possible, proceed by a separate route.

(5) However, in a long procession (e.g. Coronation Procession) they must conform to the timings of the rest of the parade.

SECTION 3 - A REVIEW OF AN ARMoured BRIGADE

Outline

6.08. The form of parade for a review of mixed Arms is, as already stated, flexible; however, the following is a practical form of parade for an Armoured Brigade with a review of the parade dismounted and the march past, followed by the advance in review order, mounted.

Preparation

6.09. Vehicles will have been pre-positioned with units in columns of Squadrons/Batteries/Companies on the review line with Officers and Crews formed up on either side of and off the parade ground.

6.10. The preparation of the parade ground should include the following:

a. Review line as close as practicable to the Saluting Point.

b. A line approx. 200 yards in rear of a. from which the parade advances in review order.

c. A base line approx. 350 yards in rear of a. from which the parade starts the march past.

The term 'Squadron' is used to mean 'Squadron/Battery/Company' as appropriate and likewise 'Troop' to denote 'Troop/Platoon'.

The Parade

6.11. Officers and Crews march on and form up in threes by Squadrons in line in front of the vehicles. Units should be sized and be in vehicle crews. Squadron Leaders will be in line three paces in front of the Troops and Commanding Officers in line three paces in front of them. A layout for this dismounted portion of the parade is shown at Annex J.

6.12. The Reviewing Personage or Senior Officer will be received with the appropriate Salute. A review will then take place of the parade drawn up as shown in Annex J.

6.13. On completion of the review, units double march to a position in front of their vehicles, mount, and the whole parade retires in reverse to a base line about 350 yards in rear. The parade will then advance from the right in columns of Troops by Squadrons to form up for the march past.

6.14. During this manoeuvre a Band may play and counter march in front of the dais until units start the march past, when it will take up its original position, and play the units past the saluting base.

The March Past

6.15. The march past should be carried out at a speed of approx. 10 mph with a distance of 50 yards between units, 30 yards between Squadrons, and 10 yards between Troops. On clearing the saluting base, Squadrons will wheel behind the base line and halt individually on the line as described in paragraph 6.10b, preparatory to the advance in review order. Brigade Headquarters will halt in front and in the centre of the parade.

The Advance in Review Order

6.16. The parade will advance in line for 100 yards at a speed of 5 mph, on completion of which it will halt, engines will be switched off and the appropriate salute given to the Reviewing Personage or Senior Officer.

CHAPTER 7 - GUARDS OF HONOUR

SECTION 1 - ORGANISATION

Strength

7.01. The provision of Guards of Honour is authorised in QRs (A) paragraphs J8.035 and J8.036, and the strength will be as stated below unless local circumstances preclude the provision of a Guard of this strength.

7.02. A Guard of Honour not exceeding 96 rank and file, with a captain in command, a subaltern officer, an Ensign carrying the Queen's/Regimental Colour, WO1/WO2(SSGT), two company sergeant-majors or colour sergeants, two sergeants, may be mounted, with the regimental band in attendance.

- a. For The Queen and members of the British Royal Family, foreign sovereigns, presidents of republican states and members of reigning foreign imperial and royal families.
- b. For governors-general, governors, high commissioners, lieutenant-governors, officers administering the government or special royal commissioners of any British Commonwealth, Crown Colony, state, mandated territory or possession on such occasions as are customary within their sphere of jurisdiction. (Except as stated in QRs (A) paragraph J8.035d).
- c. At state ceremonials.

The Guard will be formed into two divisions, each of 16 files, 3 ranks. In position each division will sub-divide into two ranks.

7.03. A Guard of Honour not exceeding 48 rank and file, with a Captain and an Ensign (carrying the Queen's/Regimental Colour as operational commitments may dictate), one WO1 and two company sergeant-majors, three colour sergeants or sergeants may be mounted, with the regimental band in attendance:

- a. When it is deemed expedient to receive the Chief of Defence Staff, First Sea Lord, Chief of the General Staff or the Chief of the Air Staff on an official visit to any part of the three services, at home or overseas.
- b. To receive a C-in-C or GOC-in-C on his arrival and departure when carrying out an official inspection within his command.
- c. When a C-in-C or GOC-in-C abroad first takes up and finally quits his command.
- d. When a Naval officer of flag rank, C-in-C, lands for the first time at a post or station, within his command, which is in the vicinity of a military station.
- e. When an Air Officer Commanding an independent command abroad first takes up or finally quits his command or for the first time makes an official visit to a station, within his command, which is in the vicinity of a military station.
- f. When a Commonwealth or foreign general, flag or air officer lands at a military station within a territory subject to Her Majesty's authority to visit the civil governor or officer in command.
- g. If it is considered expedient to receive distinguished personages other than those mentioned in this paragraph in accordance with QRs (A) paragraph J8.036

A Guard provided under this paragraph will be formed into two divisions but will not be sub-divided into two ranks.

Posts for Guard of Honour

7.04. *Officers for Large GOH* (paragraph 7.02):

- a. In line:
 - (1) The commander - 3 paces in front of the centre of the first division.
 - (2) The lieutenant/Subaltern - 3 paces in front of the centre of the second division.
 - (3) The Ensign (with the Colour) - three paces in front of the centre.
- b. In column of divisions:

- (1) The commander - 6 paces in front of the centre of the first division.
- (2) The lieutenant - 3 paces in front of the centre of the second division.
- (3) The ensign (with the Colour) - 3 paces in front of the centre of the first division.

c. In column of threes:

- (1) The commander - 3 paces in front of the centre of the leading file of threes.
- (2) The lieutenant/Subaltern - 3 paces from and in the centre of the flank (proper front) of the second division.
- (3) The ensign (with the Colour) between the two divisions and centred on the leading Division.

7.05. Officers for Small GOH (paragraph 7.03):

a. In line:

- (1) The commander - 3 paces in front of the second soldier (not including the Right Guide (WO2)).
- (2) There is no Lieutenant (Subaltern) on parade.
- (3) The Ensign (with the Colour) - three paces in front of the centre.

b. In column of divisions:

- (1) The commander - 6 paces in front of the centre of the first division.
- (2) There is no Lieutenant (Subaltern) on parade.
- (3) The Ensign (with the Colour) - 3 paces in front of the centre of the first division.

c. In column of threes:

- (1) The commander - 3 paces in front of the centre of the leading file of threes.
- (2) The ensign (with the Colour) between the two divisions.

7.06. Regimental Sergeant-Major or Company Sergeant-Major for Large or Small GOH: He will always be at the rear of the centre of the Guard.

7.07. Warrant Officers and Non-Commissioned Officers:

a. In line or in column of divisions:

- (1) Senior - right guide of first division, WO2/CSgt.
- (2) Second senior - left guide of second division, WO2/CSgt.
- (3) Third senior - right guide of second division, WO2/CSgt Escort.
- (4) Junior - left guide of first division CSgt/Sgt, Escort.

b. In column of threes:

- (1) Senior on the offside of the leading file of threes of the first division.
- (2) Second senior same position as in line but turning in the required direction.

- (3) Third senior on the offside of the leading file of threes of the second division.
- (4) Junior same position as in line but turning in the required direction.

SECTION 2 - PROCEDURE

Preliminaries

7.08. The Guard of Honour will be formed into two divisions (sized tallest on the flanks, shortest in the centre within each Division and of equal strength), with bayonets fixed and the Colour will be marched on. It will march to its destination, halt, advance, form two ranks, shoulder arms, and dress in open order by the centre.

Commander of Guard of Honour: *Guard of Honour. Halt. Guard of Honour will advance, Left/Right Turn, Form two ranks. In Open Order Inwards Dress.*

7.09. The Senior Warrant Officer will dress the Guard. The Guard will, where possible, be facing the direction from which the personage, for whom it is mounted, will approach. The Band and Drums will be in the rear of the Guard if space permits; otherwise they will be on a flank.

Senior Warrant Officer: *Eyes Front.*

The Paying of Compliments

7.10. Compliments will be paid by Guards of Honour as laid down in QRs (A) 1975 para J8.042.

Guard Commander: *Guard of Honour. Attention. Slope Arms, Royal Salute/General Salute, Present Arms.*

7.11. After paying the compliment to the personage for whom it is mounted, the Guard will shoulder arms, the Colour remaining at the 'Carry'. The Guard Commander will march up to the dais and, after having saluted, will report the Guard ready for inspection. It is customary for this to be in English for those from the Commonwealth or in their own tongue for others.

Guard Commander: *Guard of Honour, Slope Arms. Shoulder Arms*

The Inspection

7.12. When the Guard is inspected it will stand at the 'shoulder' and the Guard Commander will invariably accompany the personage, walking next to him/her, on the side further from the rank being inspected. Only the Commander of the troops and the Guard Commander will accompany the personage during the inspection and the chief host will also accompany but will follow in the rear.

The March Past

7.13. If the Guard of Honour is ordered to march past it will do so in column of divisions, if space permits, otherwise it will march past in column of threes. Words of command will be given by the Commander. For all movements that are carried out by divisions, words of command to the first division will be given by the Commander, to the second division by the Lieutenant. Prior to marching past, the Guard of Honour will reform into three ranks, in close order.

Guard Commander *Guard of Honour, Close Order March. Form three ranks, Move to the right/left in column of divisions, right/left turn. By the right/left Quick March*

7.14. If there is to be no march past, the Guard Commander will salute on completion of the inspection and resume his position on parade. If there is to be no second Royal Salute (see paragraph 7.23) he will then march off the Guard when the personage has departed.

SECTION 3 - SPECIAL POINTS ON GUARDS OF HONOUR FOR ROYALTY

7.15. The following procedure will be observed when Guards of Honour are mounted for The Queen or any other member of the Royal Family.

Reception

7.16. On the approach of Her Majesty or other Royal Personage, the Guard will be called to attention and will slope arms. The order 'Royal Salute, Present Arms' should not be given until The Queen is on the saluting base or dais.

7.17. After the playing of the National Anthem, the Guard Commander will give the orders to slope arms and shoulder arms and will then report to The Queen that the Guard is ready for inspection by Her Majesty. The Ensign should keep the Colour at the carry for the inspection and not at the order when the GOH shoulder arms.

Inspection

7.18. The Queen, escorted by the Guard Commander, will then inspect both ranks of the Guard of Honour. The Guard Commander should walk with The Queen, taking care that he does not move between Her Majesty and the troops being inspected.

7.19. The Inspecting Officer should acknowledge the Colour when passing along the front rank by saluting if in uniform or bowing the head if in civilian clothes. The Guard Commander should also salute at this point. The Colour need not be saluted whilst inspecting the second or rear rank.

7.19. A senior officer, as specified below, will be in attendance during the inspection unless specifically excused, and will walk with the Equerry in Waiting behind The Queen and the Guard Commander:

- a. At a place which is the Headquarter station of a Command, the GOC-in-C.
- b. At a place which is the Headquarter station of a Division or District, the GOC.
- c. At places other than a. and b. the Officer Commanding the Unit finding the Guard of Honour.

This Officer should be presented to The Queen before escorting Her Majesty to the saluting base.

7.20. If The Duke of Edinburgh is accompanying The Queen, he will not normally go round with Her Majesty, unless the unit finding the Guard of Honour is one with which His Royal Highness has a personal connection. If The Duke of Edinburgh does go round, he should be accompanied, by the senior officer mentioned in paragraph 7.18. In this event, the Equerry in Waiting will walk alone at the rear of the inspecting party.

7.21. Normally The Queen will not inspect the Band.

7.22. Her Majesty's Lieutenants, Lord Mayors, Mayors and other civil authorities will not normally accompany Her Majesty during an inspection.

Paying of further Compliments

7.23. A second Royal Salute should not be given after the completion of the inspection, unless The Queen leaves the parade ground in a motor car. In such circumstances it should be given as the car begins to move and not before.

CHAPTER 8 - GUN SALUTES

SECTION 1 - GENERAL

Occasions when fired

8.01. Gun Salutes will be fired in accordance with QRs (A) paragraphs J8.062 to 8.079 and 8.124 to 8.126.

Number of Guns

8.02. Not less than three guns will normally be used for firing a salute. In exceptional circumstances two guns may be used. If guns of the Royal Artillery are not available the salute may be fired by AFVs of the Royal Armoured Corps.

Intervals

8.03. The normal interval between rounds for salutes will be 10 seconds. At Royal and military funerals Minute guns are fired as the funeral processions are on the move, thereby denoting intervals of one minute, to the burial ground. When firing salutes in conjunction with the Royal Navy the interval between rounds will conform to the interval used by the Royal Navy.

8.04. When a salute of 21 guns is fired in conjunction with a feu-de-joie (see Ch 11.16) seven guns will be fired at 10 seconds intervals before each series of the feu-de-joie. The infantry feu-de-joie is three series of ripple fire down the front rank and up the back rank.

SECTION 2 - PROCEDURE

Introduction

8.05. The following is the normal drill for firing a salute with a troop of three guns. This drill may be varied according to the artillery equipment used, or the location of the saluting station, provided that the necessary requirements regarding safety, accuracy and precise timing are observed.

Personnel

8.06. Numbers required are the Troop Commander, Troop Leader, Timekeeper, Recorder and three gun detachments. All personnel will be dressed as for a ceremonial parade. The Troop Commander will carry a sword.

Preparations

8.07. Preparations for gun salutes are as follows:

- a. Before the salute the Troop leader will bring the guns into action and ensure that they are parallel and laid at 20 degrees or 400 mils tangent elevation.
- b. He will inspect the ammunition and stores and ensure that the cartridges are chamber-tested. He will then report 'Troop Ready' to the Troop Commander.

- c. The Troop Commander will obtain the correct time, and at precisely five minutes before the time ordered for the salute he will start the stop-watch.
- d. At two minutes before the time for the salute the Troop Commander will order 'Take Post' and will give out initial orders, using the 'At my Command' procedure.

Firing

8.08. The firing of gun salutes:

- a. At ten seconds before the time for the salute the Timekeeper will start a count-down. At the count of three seconds the Troop Commander will order 'No 1 Fire'. The salute will then proceed, each gun being fired in turn on the order of the Troop Commander with a count-down after each round.
- b. The Recorder will record each round as it is fired. He will report the number of rounds fired to the Troop Commander when there are three more rounds to go and again when all the rounds ordered for the salute have been fired.

Misfires

8.09. In the event of a misfire, action will be taken in accordance with the safety rules for blank ammunition laid down in the handbook of the gun concerned. If more than one misfire occurs and the correct interval between rounds cannot be maintained, the Troop Commander will increase the interval accordingly.

Action on Completion

8.10. When the salute has been completed the Troop Commander will order 'Unload', 'Report guns empty'. When all guns are reported empty he will order 'Detachments Rear' and hand over the parade to the Troop Leader. The Troop Leader will inspect the guns and ammunition to ensure that all is safe and will bring the Troop out of action.

CHAPTER 9 - LINING THE STREETS

SECTION 1 - POSITIONS

Officers

9.01. When a Battalion or any part of it lines the streets the Commanding Officer and his Adjutant will be on the flank of the Battalion which the procession approaches first, and the senior Major on the other flank. All officers will be on the offside of the road looking in the direction in which the procession is moving, i.e. to the right as seen by the procession.

9.02. Half-Company Commanders will be on the flank and to the right of their Half-Companies, which the procession approaches first, one pace from the ranks towards the centre of the road between the first and second soldier.

The Colours

9.03. The Colours will also be on the offside of the road, (on the right as seen by the procession) unless they are required for a Guard of Honour elsewhere. The Ensigns will be six paces apart in line with the other officers. The Escort, also at six paces interval, will be in line with the men and in rear of the Colours. (This means that on

certain occasions the Street liners will only have the Regimental Colour with them because the Queen's Colour is elsewhere with a GOH furnished by that regiment.

Ranks

9.04. Warrant Officers, Staff Sergeants and Sergeants will be in the ranks on the near side of the road at the left and opposite end of the Half Company from the officer. Ranks will usually be one pace from the kerbstone. Warrant Officers and Sergeants will fix bayonets and carry out all drill movements with the men.

9.05. If the procession for which the streets are lined is to return by the same route, Officers, Warrant Officers, Sergeants, Colours and Drums will change over after the procession passes on the first occasion.

Bands and Drums

9.06. These will be posted at suitable places along the route, usually at road junctions or similar places where there is adequate room and opposite the Colour Party where circumstances admit. The leading rank will be in line with other troops lining the route. They will not be placed, however, where traffic is likely to be required to pass. Each band will be in mass formation unless space is limited, when they may be in two ranks. They will not move across the road if the procession returns. If the Band is not opposite the Colours, Drummers may be formed into two ranks along the route opposite them; they will not play unless specially ordered. The Drummers may on the other hand parade with the Band.

9.07. Markers will be sent forward by the Battalion before the arrival of the troops, to show the frontage to be occupied by each Half-Company, after the extension is completed. Half-Companies will be marched to their places in threes in close order and formed into two ranks and extended on the ground.

9.08. Allowance must be made in calculating the extensions of Companies for the presence of all Warrant Officers and Sergeants in the ranks and for spaces where Cavalry, Mounted Officers and Bands or Drums, may be positioned on the route, as no-one will be allowed to stand in front of them. Allowance must also be made for large curves, which make a considerable difference to troop numbers and spacing.

SECTION 2 - DUTIES

Crowd Control

9.09. While it is primarily the task of the police to control the crowds, it should be understood by all officers and other ranks lining the streets that they, no less than the police, are responsible for keeping the route clear.

9.10. In the event, therefore, of the police cordons being broken by the press of people, or through any other cause, it is the duty of the troops to prevent their ranks from being broken, and to assist the police in restoring the integrity of the cordon with the least possible delay.

9.11. Persons who break through the ranks, however, will not be pursued by troops on foot, but officers and men will concentrate their efforts on preventing further breaches of the line. In carrying out these duties troops are to exercise every possible civility.

Compliments

9.12. The Half-Company Commander on the flank which the procession first approaches will receive orders from the Battalion Commander as to when the compliment is to be paid. Compliments will be paid on the executive word of Half-Company Commanders in succession as the procession approaches their flank. As a guide these commands may be given when the motor vehicle is 50 paces or lead horses of the coach or carriage of the personage to be saluted are 20 paces from the nearest flank of the unit paying the compliment. Officers will give commands to troops on both sides of the road.

9.13. The Band will play the National Anthem or other Anthem as required, beginning to play at an appropriate time as the personage approaches. As a rough guide this may be when the outriders concerned are 20 paces away of 50 paces in the case of cars. If necessary the National Anthem will be played over twice, but not more often. When two Anthems are required to be played, the foreign Anthem will be played first. Bands will play selections of music during any interval or waiting there may be, except when streets are being lined for a funeral.

9.14. Half-Companies which are in the immediate vicinity of a Guard of Honour will in addition play compliments at the same time as the Guard of Honour, acting on the words of command of Officers-in-Charge of Half-Companies.

SECTION 3 - DETAILS OF PROCEDURE

Taking up Position

9.15. The Battalion will be formed up in Half-Companies which will be designated 'Numbers 1, 2, 3 etc Half-Companies'. Bayonets should be fixed in assembly areas. The Battalion will march off in threes and each Half-Company will be halted on its marker beginning with the rear of the Battalion, in accordance with the following sequence.

a. Just before reaching his own Half-Company marker the Officer-in-Charge will file off to his right and halt in the centre of the roadway (facing his Half-Company), allowing his Half-Company to continue marching until its right flank is one pace past the marker. He will then halt his Half-Company and turn it to the right.

Half-Company Commander: No ... Half-Company, Halt. Half-Company will advance. Right turn.

b. The Half-Company will be formed into two ranks and right dressed.

Half-Company Commander: Form Two Ranks. Right Dress.

c. The front-rank will then be marched across the road where they will be halted and turned about.

Supernumerary NCO: Eyes Front.

d. The ranks will then proceed outwards, each man halting when at the required number of paces from the man to his rear, then turning inwards and remaining at the slope.

Half-Company Commander: No ... Half-Company. Front Rank, by the Right, Quick March. Front Rank, halt. Front Rank, about turn.

Half-Company Commander: Ranks, outwards turn, to...paces extend. Quick march.

Half-Company Commander: No ... Half-Company, shoulder arms. Stand at ease, stand easy.

e. The Half-Company will then shoulder arms, stand at ease and stand easy.

Action on Completion of Ceremony

9.16. The reverse procedure will be carried out on the completion of the day's ceremony.

Half-Company Commander: No ...Half-Company. Attention. Slope Arms. Ranks inwards turn. Quick March (individuals Halt and Inwards turn). Front Rank, by the left, quick march. Front rank, halt. Front Rank, about turn. Half-Company, form three ranks. Right dress.

Supernumerary NCO: Eyes front.

Half-Company Commander: No ... half-Company move to the right in threes, right turn. By the left, quick march.

CHAPTER 10 - TROOPING THE COLOUR

SECTION 1 - GENERAL

Origins

10.01. The practice of Trooping the Colour originated in an old Guard Mounting Ceremony at which The Queen's Colour was the symbol of the Sovereign and of the Country; the Regimental Colour, the emblem of the soldiers of the Regiment. During Trooping, every man has a close view of the Colour whilst paying the highest possible honour by presenting arms in salute. The whole ceremony is one of symbolic trust and reverence.

10.02. Colours are not usually carried except by an officer. This Ceremony, however, starts with them in charge of a sergeant and two sentries guarding them from harm, a token of confidence in the men. Later a subaltern assumes command of the Right Guard, formerly the Grenadier Company, a tribute to youth and a symbol of the responsibility which youth is expected to assume.

10.03. The Regimental Sergeant-Major draws his sword during the ceremony, the only occasion on which he does so. This is in order that he may pay full honour when saluting the Colours, before returning them to the custody of an officer.

10.04. Only before the presentation of new Colours are The Queen's and Regimental Colours trooped together.

Occasions when carried out

10.05. This Ceremony normally takes place in London once a year and is held on a day in June selected by the Sovereign. The day is known as the Sovereign's Official Birthday.

10.06. The Regiments taking part will normally be from the Guards Division with an Escort of Household Cavalry, and King's Troop Royal Horse Artillery in attendance (London only).

10.07. Additionally, Regiments other than those of the Household Division may Troop the Colour on the Sovereign's Birthday or at any time that the Commanding Officer considers it opportune (in or out of London). Colours will be trooped on the occasion of the Presentation of New Colours.

Strengths

10.08. Ideally, Four Guards will be found from the Battalion, the strength of each, when possible, being:

- a. 1 Major: Captain of the Guard.
- b. 1 Lieutenant: Subaltern of the Guard.
- c. 1 Second Lieutenant/Ensign.
- d. 2 Guides (Warrant Officers or Staff Sergeants).
- e. 2 Markers (Sergeants or Corporals).
- f. 66 Men.

The Commanding Officer, Second-in Command and Adjutant may be mounted.

SECTION 2 - GETTING ON PARADE

On Outside Parade Ground

10.09. When the Ceremony is to take place on a parade ground, which is not the unit's parade ground, the Guards will be formed up in barracks and marched to the place of parade. The Adjutant will be in overall command, each Guard being commanded by a Subaltern. The Colour Party consisting of a Colour Sergeant/Sergeant (carrying the Colour cased) and an Escort (detailed from the right of No 1 Guard), will march behind No 3 Guard.

On Own Parade Ground

10.10. If the Ceremony is to be on the unit's own parade ground, Guards will be marched on by the RSM and commanded by Warrant Officers. The organisation and procedures are similar to those given in the following paragraphs, but officers will not come on parade until after the Assembly.

Warrant Officers/Staff Sergeants

10.11. The Warrant Officers/Staff Sergeants (right and left guides) will be positioned on the right and left of the front rank of each Guard. The Sergeants/Corporals (right and left markers) will take post, except where otherwise stated, in the supernumerary ranks three paces in rear of the second file from the flank.

Escort for the Colour

10.12. The leading or right flank Guard is referred to as the Escort for the Colour. This Guard will have a supernumerary sergeant who subsequently becomes part of the Colour Party, and will take post three paces in rear of the centre of the Escort until he moves as detailed in paragraph 10.09.

Markers

10.13. The Left Markers of each Guard together with the Colour Points will be placed in position before the arrival of the Battalion.

10.14. The Guards will march off in three ranks in the following order: No 5 Guard - left leading, No 6 Guard - left leading, No 4 Guard - left leading, No 3 Guard - left leading, No 2 Guard - left leading, Colour Party, Escort for The Colour - left leading. The Guards will march with bayonets unfixed except the Colour Party, but the Officers (other than the Adjutant) will draw swords.

Arrival at the Ground

10.15. On arrival at the parade ground, the Guards will be wheeled into position in column, halted and turned to the right to face point H on the line of Guards except for No 6 Guard and any numbered guards above. They will halt and turn to face point G. The Band will play softly during the command to right/left wheel on markers. The Officer (Subaltern) Commanding each Guard will march on at the head of his Guard and move to a position three paces in front of the centre of his Guard when the Adjutant orders right/left turn.

Subaltern: Guards, right/left wheel. Guards, halt. Guards will advance. Right Turn. Form two ranks, left dress.

Dressing

10.16. The Left Guides will step off on the command 'Dress' and march out seven paces, halt, about turn, and dress their Guards. 'Eyes Front' will be given in succession from the Escort. Immediately 'Eyes Front' has been given to No 4 Guard, the Left Guides will step off together, march in seven paces, halt, and turn to the left. On this command the Left Marker will turn about and place himself three paces in rear and two files in from the left of his Guard.

Adjutant: Guards on markers, left form. Guards in open order, left dress.

Left Guide: Eyes Front:

10.17. The Adjutant will then give the orders shown in the margin.

Adjutant: Guards, Shoulder Arms. Stand at Ease. The Subaltern will fall out independently from his Guard and report to the Adjutant. This is done before the Adjutant comes onto the Parade. Guards Stand Easy.

10.18. The senior Warrant Officers/Non-Commissioned Officers will now take command of their respective Guards, taking post on the right of the front rank.

The Colour Party

10.19. On arrival at the parade ground, the Colour Party will disengage and proceed via point G to its position, two Guards' distance in front of the left to No 4 Guard, facing right. The Colour will be carried by a sergeant and there will be two sentries. On arrival, the Colour will be uncased by a drummer detailed for the purpose. During the uncasing the Sentries will present arms, but no one else will pay compliments to the Colour on this occasion. The Sergeant will hold the Colour in his right hand and his rifle in the left. *The rifle is brought onto parade separately for the Colour Sergeant/sergeant.*

Sentries to The Colour

10.20. The two Sentries will stand one on either side of the Colour and three paces from it, their beat being at right angles to the line and their front inwards. They will patrol seven paces (from three paces to ten paces from the Colour). All their movements must correspond. They will cease to patrol when the Adjutant has given the WOC 'Left Dress' for the Guards as in 10.16 above.

The Band and Drums

10.21. The Band and Drums having marched on to the parade ground will form up in mass centred on the Colour and in line with the right of the line of Guards.

Escort for The Colour

10.22. There should be a Major or Captain as the captain of the Guard, a Lieutenant/Subaltern, and a Second Lieutenant/Ensign (to carry the Colour) with the Escort. If there are insufficient officers, the Major or Captain and Second Lieutenant will be with the Escort and the Lieutenant commanding No 2 Guard will take command of the Escort when it goes for the Colour, moving in front of its centre. The change of position will be effected on the Drummer's Call.

Position of Officers

10.23. The positions of the Officers when with their Guards will be as follows:

a. When the troops are in open order and when marching past the saluting base in slow time:

- (1) Captain of the Guard - 3 paces in front of the second file from the right.
- (2) Lieutenant - 3 paces in front of the second file from the left.
- (3) Second Lieutenant - 3 paces in front of the centre of the Guard.

b. At other times:

- (1) Captain of the Guard - 6 paces in front of the centre of the Guard.
- (2) Lieutenant - in line with the supernumerary ranks and in rear of the centre of the right half of the Guard.
- (3) Second Lieutenant - in line with the supernumerary rank and in rear of the centre of the left half of the Guard.
- (4) Second Lieutenant (with the Colour) - in rear of the fourth file from the left of the Guard.

10.24. In the case of the Escort for the Colour, the Lieutenant and the Second Lieutenant will change flanks while marching past the saluting base in quick time as described at paragraph 10.55.

10.25. The position of the Adjutant while the troops are in line will be on the left of the line, five paces from the Left Guide. When in column, he will be ten paces to the rear of the rear Guard.

10.26. The commanding officer will give "fix bayonets before his commences the bands and cod to troop

SECTION 3 - THE TROOP

Band and Drums

10.27. On the command, 'Troop' the Band and Drums acting on the order of the Drum Major will proceed in slow time from the right to the left of the line, the Band playing a slow march.

Commanding Officer: Guards, Shoulder Arms. "Troop" Drum Major: Band and Drums by the Centre Slow March.

10.28. On arriving 10 paces from the Colour they will counter-march, halt and cease playing. The Band and Drums will then proceed in quick time from the left to the right of the line, the Band playing a quick march.

Drum Major: Band and Drums, by the Centre Quick March.

10.29. As the Band and Drums approach the right of the line, before counter-marching, a drummer will fall out and place himself two paces from the right of the Escort in line with the front rank.

Drummer's Call

10.30. Immediately the Band ceases to play this drummer will beat the 'Drummer's Call'.

- a. On the first tap of the call, the Major/Captain and Lieutenant of the Escort for the Colour will turn inwards, recover swords and move across in quick time, passing right arm to right arm.
- b. The Major/Captain, passing in rear of the Second Lieutenant, will place himself three paces in front of the right file of the Second Guard.
- c. The Lieutenant will place himself three paces in front of the Ensign for the Colour.
- d. Having halted and turned to their front they will bring their swords to the carry.
- e. The Regimental Sergeant-Major will fall in three paces in rear of the centre of the Escort and will draw his sword.
- f. The Supernumerary Sergeant will place himself in rear of the right file of No 2 Guard.
- g. The Drummer having beaten the call will step straight off and take post with the Drums again, moving in quick time.

The Escort for the Colour receives the Colour

10.31. While the Drummer makes his way to re-join the Drums, the Commanding Officer will bring the Escort for the Colour to the slope and stand the remainder at ease. The Sentries on the Colour will remain at attention with shouldered arms.

Commanding Officer: Escort for the Colour, Slope Arms. Remainder, Change Arms, Stand at Ease.

10.32. The Lieutenant/Subaltern will then order the Escort to take close order. The Markers will come up on the right and left of the rear rank.

NOTE: Ranks to look to their front in succession from left to right.

Lieutenant of the Escort/Subaltern: Escort for the Colour. In Close Order, Left Dress.

10.33. The Escort preceded by the Band and Drums playing 'The British Grenadier' will move out the distance of a Guard and a half from the line, left form and move forward with the centre directed on the Colour.

10.34. The Band and Drums when nearing the Colour will wheel to the left, clear the front of the Escort, halt and cease playing.

10.35. The Escort will be halted by the Lieutenant when 20 paces from the Colour, and will take open order, Markers remaining on the flanks of the rear rank. On the command 'Right Dress' the men will get their own dressing (the Guide standing fast) and on completion will turn their heads and eyes to the front in succession from right to left. The Band and Drums will be turned about while the Escort is getting its dressing.

Lieutenant of the Escort: By the left Quick March. Change direction left, Left Form. Forward by the Centre. Escort for the Colour, Halt. In Open Order, Right Dress.

10.36. After the men of the Escort are dressed, the Commanding Officer will order the Guards to come to attention and slope arms. The Sentries on the Colour will also slope arms.

Commanding Officer: *Guards, Attention Slope Arms.*

10.37. On completion of this movement, the Regimental Sergeant-Major will march out in quick time by the left flank and halt opposite the Colour. The Ensign for the Colour will march out as he is passed by the Regimental Sergeant-Major, and place himself four paces in front of the Lieutenant, passing by his right, and halting at the same time as the Regimental Sergeant-Major.

10.38. Having saluted the Colour, the Regimental Sergeant-Major will take a pace forward and receive the Colour into his left hand from the Sergeant, the latter then changing his rifle to his right hand and sloping arms. The Regimental Sergeant-Major will turn about and take sufficient paces forward to enable him to hand the Colour to the Ensign.

10.39. The Ensign will salute the Colour after the Regimental Sergeant-Major has halted in front of him, return his sword, receive the Colour from the Regimental Sergeant-Major, place it in his colour belt and turnabout.

10.40. The Escort will then be ordered to present arms. The Warrant Officers and Sergeants on the flanks of the front rank will make a half turn outwards, those on the flanks of the rear rank making a three-quarter turn outwards; all four will come to the high port. The Sergeant and the Sentries will present arms with the remainder of the Escort. The Band and Drums will play six bars of the National Anthem if The Queen's Colour is being trooped or the first eight bars of the Regimental Slow March if the Regimental Colour is being trooped.

Lieutenant of the Escort: *Escort for the Colour, Present Arms.*

NOTE: When the Escort presents arms, Officers and Other Ranks watching the Parade will act in accordance with Queen's Regulations whether or not the National Anthem is played.

10.41. The Escort (including Guides and Markers) will slope arms and:

Lieutenant of the Escort: *Escort for the Colour, Slope Arms.*

- a. The Ensign with the Colour will resume his post in rear of the Lieutenant, passing by his left flank.
- b. The Sergeant who formerly held the Colour, after passing by the right flank will place himself in rear of the third file from the right.
- c. The Right Guide and the Right Marker will close two paces to the right.
- d. The Sentries formerly on the Colour will take their places as the right file of the Escort, halting and turning about together.
- e. The Band and Drums will turn about.

The Colour is Trooped

10.42. As soon as the Regimental Sergeant-Major and other ranks mentioned above are in their places, the Lieutenant will order the Escort to change arms, form the Escort to the left, and march off in slow time, preceded by the Band and Drums playing the 'Grenadier March'.

Lieutenant of the Escort: Escort to the Colour, Change Arms, change direction left, Left Form. Slow March. Slow March. Forward, by the Centre.

10.43. The Band and Drums will wheel to the left as soon as they step off and will move down the line in front of the line of Officers. When clear of the left flank of the Escort the Band and Drums will halt by signal. The Commanding Officer will move forward sufficiently far in front of the line to allow the Band and Drums to pass in rear of him.

10.44. When the Lieutenant reaches a distance of four paces from the line of Officers he will turn the Escort to the right, and when the leading file of the Escort is clear of the Left Guide of No 4 Guard he will wheel the Escort to the left. The Adjutant will make way sufficiently to allow the Escort to pass between him and the Left Guide of No 4 Guard.

Lieutenant of the Escort: Escort to the Colour, Move to the Right in file, Right Turn. Left Wheel.

10.45. As soon as the leading file of the Escort is just past the Left Guide of No 4 Guard, the Lieutenant will again give the order to left wheel. The Officers of the Escort will pass three paces in front of the line of Officers (the Lieutenant marching abreast of the second file of the Escort and the Second Lieutenant marching abreast of the centre of the Escort). The front rank of the Escort will pass between the front and rear rank of the Guards and the rear rank of the Escort will pass between the rear rank and the supernumerary rank of the Guards. The Band will stop playing as soon as the Lieutenant has given the second command to left wheel.

Lieutenant of the Escort: Left Wheel.

10.46. As soon as the Band has stopped playing and the Lieutenant has given the second command to left wheel, the Commanding Officer will order the Guards to present arms. After the Guards have presented arms the Band will again begin to play, at the same time stepping off in time with the Escort. The Battalion Commander will resume his correct position as soon as the Band is clear.

Commanding Officer: Guards, Present Arms.

10.47. When the head of the Escort arrives at the right of the remainder of the line, the Major/Captain of the Escort (who has been standing in front of the right file of No 2 Guard) will bring his sword to the carry, turn to his right and step off in time with the Escort; when the second file is abreast of him, taking the place of the Lieutenant who will mark time when at his original post. The Ensign with the Colour will pass the Lieutenant on his left side.

10.48. Meanwhile the Band will have ceased playing as the Escort approaches its original position, and when near its own original position, will wheel to the left about on the command of the Drum Major.

The Escort resumes its original position

10.49. When the Escort has cleared the remainder of the line the Lieutenant will halt it and turn to the left. The Officers will halt and turn with the Escort. The Lieutenant will order the change arms, ready for the present.

Lieutenant of the Escort: Escort to the Colour, Halt. Escort to Colour will advance. Left Turn. Change Arms.

10.50. The Major/Captain will then order the Escort to present arms. The Guards will then slope arms on the order of the Commanding Officer.

Major/Captain of the Escort: Escort to the Colour. Present Arms. Commanding Officer: Guards, Slope Arms.

SECTION 4 - THE MARCH PAST

Preparation

10.51. The Commanding Officer will now face the Guards and order the Officers to take post. On ordering the Guards to retire the whole parade will turn about except the Left Guides. They will turn to their left and recover arms and be covered from the rear by the Adjutant, who will give the command shown, upon which the Guides will slope arms.

Commanding Officer: Officers take post Guards will retire about turn.

Adjutant: Guides-Steady

10.52. As soon as the Adjutant has given the order 'Steady', the Commanding Officer will form the Guards back into column. On the command 'Quick March' each Left Guide will take three paces forward and his Guard will form on him. On the command 'About Turn', the Left Guide will act as ordered and take three paces forward into his original position on the left of the front rank of his Guard.

Commanding Officer: Guards At the Halt, Right Form. Quick March. Guards will advance. About Turn.

10.53. While the Guards are taking their dressing, the Band and Drums will step off in quick time by command of the Drum Major and will wheel into position directly facing the saluting point and at a distance of a Guard and a half from it.

The Guards March Past

10.54. As soon as the Band is in position, the Commanding Officer will give the commands shown below. The column will step off, each Guard forming to the left at the corner points marked on the ground. The Band will begin to play as soon as the Parade moves forward.

Commanding Officer: Guards will march past in slow and quick time. By the left, Slow March.

10.55. If no officer senior to him is present on the saluting base, the Commanding Officer will take the Salute during the march past. He will return his sword while at the Saluting Base. If a more senior officer is present and is taking the Salute he will place himself on the right of this officer after marching past, and remain at the carry. He will return to the Parade after the last Guard has formed opposite point E in order to give the command to break into quick time.

Commanding Officer: (Over 4 paces), Break, into, Quick, Time, (4 beats on the bass drum), Quick March.

10.56. The Colour Party at the formation opposite points B and E will change flanks. During the formation at point B the Officers of each Guard will place themselves three paces in front of the front rank as at open order, moving where necessary round the left flank of their respective Guards. Guides will remain on the flanks of the front ranks of Guards, but Markers will move up to the flanks of the rear ranks.

Commanders of the Guards: Escort to the Colour (or No ...Guard), Change direction left, Left Form. Forward by the Left (or Right).

10.57. When his Guard has formed at point B each Major/Captain will give the command 'Forward by the Right' and when halfway between points B and C will give the command 'Open Order', on which the rear and supernumerary ranks will mark

time one pace and then move forward. On the command 'Eyes Right' all except the Right Guide and the Right Marker will turn their heads and eyes to the right, and the Officers, except the Second Lieutenant with the Colour, will salute in four paces. This movement must be completed by the time the Officers are abreast of point C.

Commanders of all Guards: Escort to the Colour (or No ...Guard) Open Order. Captains of all Guards: Escort to the Colour (or No ... Guard) Eyes Right.

NOTE: At each forming point, when the preceding Guard is given 'Forward', the men of the next Guard, who are already marking time, will advance seven paces and then continue marking time. This will automatically make way for the following Guard. This procedure will not be adopted by the Escort which will instead advance a sufficient distance before starting to mark time, nor by the last Guard which has no need to make way for anyone behind.

10.58. The Ensign with Colour will let the Colour fly while the other Officers are at the Salute, and will lower the Colour to Royalty.

10.59. When the supernumerary rank of each Guard is clear of point D, the Major/Captain will give the command 'Eyes Front'. When the Guards are halfway between points D and E, each Major/Captain will give the command 'Close Order'. Just before reaching point E, each Captain will give the order 'By the Left'. On reaching point E, each Major/Captain will give the command 'Left Form', 'Forward, By the Left'. The Officers and Colour and Markers will resume the places filled by them prior to forming at point B, passing by the left flank of the respective Guards where necessary.

Commanders of all Guards: Escort to the Colour (or No ...Guard) Eyes Front.

Commanders of all Guards: Escort to the Colour (or No ... Guard) Close Order By the Left,

Commanders of all Guards: Escort to the Colour (or No ... Guard) Left Form. Forward by the Left.

10.60. As soon as the Guard has formed at point E, the Band will cease playing and the troops will break into quick time by order of the Commanding Officer. If he is the Senior Officer on parade, he will draw his sword to give the command and then return to the saluting base and return his sword. If he is not the Senior Officer he will march past in quick time and again return to the saluting base. The Guards will march past in quick time following the same procedure as in slow time except that:

- a. The ranks will be at close order.
- b. Officers, with the exception of the Ensign with the Colour, will not change their position on reaching point B.
- c. The Colour Party and the Lieutenant of the Escort will change flank during the formation at points B and E.
- d. Markers will remain in the supernumerary rank.

NOTE: The detail given in Note to paragraph 285 will apply.

Final Procedure

10.61. As the left of each Guard reaches the point where it rested in line, each Major/Captain will order it to mark time.

Commanders of all Guards: Escort to the Colour (or No ... Guard) Mark Time

10.62. The Commanding Officer will move to his original position in line, will face the Guards and will form them into line and halt them. When the Guards have formed into line, and are marking time, the Band will stop playing.

Commanding Officer: *Guards, Left Form. Forward, Guards Halt.*

10.63. At this point the mounted troops might march past at the walk and trot prior to talking post for the departure.

10.64. If Trooping the Colour is to be followed by guard mounting:

Commanding Officer: *Shoulder Arms. Stand at Easy. Officers for duty. Fall Out. Stand Easy.*

- a. The Officers for duty will fall out, salute the Commanding Officer and return their swords.
- b. The Regimental Sergeant-Major will also return his sword.
- c. The Ensign will fall out with the remainder of the Officers, carrying the Colour at the slope, but he will not salute, neither will he give the Colour into anyone else's charge unless another officer is to carry the Colour on guard.
- d. Guard mounting will then be performed in accordance with the orders in force locally.

10.64. If the Ceremony is not to be followed by guard mounting and the Parade has been held on the unit's own parade ground, the Colour will be marched off to the Officers' Mess as laid down in paragraph 55.

Commanding Officer: *March off the Colour. Guards Present Arms.*

10.65. When the Ceremony takes place on a parade ground other than the unit parade ground and Guards are not being furnished, the Battalion will march back to barracks with bayonets fixed. The Colour will march at the head of the Escort to the Colour. On arrival in barracks the Battalion will be formed up and the Colour marched off, the Battalion presenting arms as above.

CHAPTER 11 - PARADE TO CELEBRATE THE BIRTHDAY OF THE QUEEN, WHEN HER MAJESTY IS NOT PRESENT

SECTION 1 - THE GOVERNOR OR OTHER PERSONAGE RECEIVED ON PARADE

Forming Up

11.01. The following procedure is to be adopted, where practicable, for a parade held in honour of HM The Queen's Birthday, when She is not present. It is appreciated that, dependent on local conditions, certain parts may have to be omitted.

11.02. The Parade will be formed up in the same manner as for the Trooping the Colour ceremony (see Chapter 10) except that the Colour Party will be between No 2 and No 3 Guards as for the Battalion Parade (see Annex C).

11.03. The Left Markers and Colour Points will have taken up their position prior to the arrival of the troops.

Inspection and March Past

11.04. The Governor or other personage holding precedence as the Officer Commanding the Parade will be received with the appropriate honours, as laid down in QRs (A) paragraph J8.042.

11.05. An inspection may take place dependent upon local conditions.

11.06. The Parade will then march past in slow and quick time.

SECTION 2 - THE SYMBOLIC ROYAL PRESENCE

The Royal Salute

11.07. On completion of the march past, the Governor or the personage holding precedence as the Officer Commanding the Parade will, unless he is a General or other military officer on the active list, then leave the saluting base. He will move to a suitable position to the flank or rear, so that he will be facing the Royal Standard when it is hoisted. If the salute has been taken by a General or other military officer on the active list, he will move to a position 30 paces in front of the saluting base and will assume command of the Parade, taking post with his staff as laid down for the review of a unit or formation.

11.08. The flag flown during the march past will now be hauled down and the Royal Standard (furred) or Union flag if no Royal Standard is available, will be run up to the mast-head.

11.09. The Parade Commander will call the parade to attention and slope arms. The Royal Salute will then be given. On the third movement of the present the Royal Standard/Union Flag will be broken at the mast-head representing the arrival of Her Majesty. The National Anthem will be played in full.

Parade Commander: Parade, Attention, Slope Arms. Royal Salute, Present Arms.

Advance in Review Order

11.10. The Parade will now advance in Review Order, the procedure for which will be the same as laid down in paragraph 3.42.

Feu-de-Joie

11.11. Exceptionally a Feu-de-Joie may be fired when the Sovereign is on parade. If it is desired to fire a Feu-de-Joie the Parade Commander will order the Parade to slope arms, shoulder arms and unfix bayonets.

Parade Commander: Parade, Slope Arms, Shoulder Arms. Parade will unfix Bayonets. Unfix Bayonets, Attention.

11.12. The Parade will then be warned that a Feu-de-Joie will be fired. On the Command for Officers and Colours to take post:

Parade Commander: The Parade will fire a feu-de-joie. Officers and Colours take post.

- a. Dismounted officers will step forward three paces.
- b. The rear rank and supernumeraries will step back two paces.
- c. The Standards/Guidons/Colours (the former if dismounted) will advance six paces on command of the Senior Ensign. Standards/ Guidons/Colours will not be lowered during the firing of a Feu-de-Joie; neither will the Escort to the Colours take part in the Feu-de-Joie.

d. Mounted Officers of units firing will take post 15 paces in rear of the line passing by the flanks.

11.13. The Guides and all Non-Commissioned Officers and men in the ranks will act on the command 'Load'. The muzzles of the rifles will be inclined upwards, so as to clear the heads of the men in front. The supernumerary rank will remain at the 'Shoulder'.

Parade Commander: Standing, Load,

11.14. Rifles will be brought to the position for firing at an angle of 135 degrees. Heads will be kept perfectly still and no attempt will be made to aim.

Parade Commander: Present.

11.15. On the word of command to Commence, the right-hand man of the front rank will commence the fire, which will run down the front and up the rear rank as quickly as possible.

Parade Commander: Commence.

11.16. The Feu-de-Joie will be fired in three series. If Artillery/AFVs are present and a 21 gun salute is ordered, this will be carried out as laid down in Chapter 8. The order 'Load' will be given immediately the Artillery commence firing. The command 'Present' will be given when the seventh round has been fired. The Order to commence will follow immediately after the 'Present'.

11.17. When the right-hand man of the rear rank has fired, this completes the first series and the Band will play the first part of the National Anthem, the troops remaining at the 'present', Officers at the 'Carry'. On the last note of the Band, the Artillery/AFVs will again fire seven rounds, and the other troops will act as above. On completion of the second series, the Band will play the second part of the National Anthem. The same procedure will be followed for the third series, on completion of which the whole of the National Anthem will be played.

11.18. On conclusion of the National Anthem, the command to unload will be given. The men will come to the loading position and will unload, holding their rifles at an angle of 135 degrees.

Parade Commander: Unload.

11.19. The Parade Commander will then give the commands shown below. The Colour Party will resume its position in line and shoulder arms on the command of the Senior Officer, the Colours being brought to the order. The Officers will move to their original positions in line, the rear rank and supernumeraries stepping forward two paces.

Parade Commander: Shoulder Arms. Officers and Colours Take Post.

Three Cheers for Her Majesty The Queen

11.20. The Parade will fix bayonets and remove head-dress. (Less the Colour Party.) Three cheers will then be given for The Queen, led by the Parade Commander.

Parade Commander: Parade will fix bayonets, Fix Bayonets. Attention. Remove Head-dress.

Parade Commander: Parade will give three cheers for Her Majesty The Queen.

11.21. Head-Dress. The following guidance is given:

- a. The head-dress will be removed by the left hand and held at chest height, being raised to the full extent of the arm above the head as the signal for each cheer is given. Rifles will be at the 'Shoulder'.
- b. In Highland and Lowland Regiments the head-dress will be held with the right hand, swords and rifles being passed to the left hand.
- c. Women on parade with or without male troops will not remove head-dress, but will carry out the movement with the arm as the signal for each cheer is given.

The Symbolic Departure

11.22. On conclusion of the three cheers the troops will replace head-dress, slope arms and a Royal Salute will be given. The Band will play the National Anthem, the Royal Standard being hauled down to signify Her Majesty's departure. This will be timed to be completed on the last note of the National Anthem.

Parade Commander: Replace Head-dress. Attention. Slope Arms. Royal Salute, Present Arms Slope Arms.

11.23. The Governor or other personage will now resume his place on the dais and the appropriate honours will be given prior to his departure from the parade.

CHAPTER 12 - PRESENTATION OF COLOURS

SECTION 1 - PRELIMINARIES

Formations

12.01. The Battalion will be formed up in line, each company being in two ranks. The Colour Party position (the new Colours) will be reserved in the rear centre (15 paces) of the Battalion (if four Guards are on parade between the left of No 2 and the right of No 3). Officers' positions will be as laid down in Chapter 10, except as stated below.

Positions of Officers and Colours

12.02. Position of officers and Colours are as follows:

- a. The old Colours, with two sergeant escorts of the Colour Party and double sentries, will be in front of the left of the line, at right-angles to it, and the Band and Drums placed as for trooping.
- b. The Ensigns for the Colour Party (Old Colours) will be with the Escort (the right-hand Guard) which may be commanded by a Captain.
- c. The officers required on the Escort will be:
 - (1) One Major or Captain.
 - (2) Two Lieutenants (one will carry the Queen's Colour).
 - (3) One Second Lieutenant (will carry the Regimental Colour).
- d. The new Colours, cased, will be 15 paces in rear of the centre, carried by two Colour Sergeants, in the charge of the Quartermaster, who will be 3 paces to the rear of them. The Warrant Officer of the new Colour Party will be between them.
- e. The Subalterns for the Colour Party (new Colours) will be in the centre of the Battalion in line with the other officers.

12.03. The Chaplain-General (if present) and the chaplains taking part in the parade ceremony will take post behind the saluting base, a few paces on the right of the staff attending the personage presenting the Colours. The Chaplain-General will be in line with the staff, the other chaplains behind him in line, in order of seniority from right to left.

SECTION 2 - TROOPING THE OLD COLOURS

Royal Salute

12.04. After the Royal or other personage presenting the Colours has been received with the Royal or General Salute, arms will be shouldered and the order to 'Troop' will be given.

Battalion Commander: Royal/General Salute Present Arms.

Slope Arms. Shoulder Arms. Troop.

The Troop

12.05. The Band and Drums will then move across the parade ground from right to left playing a slow troop. They will counter-march ten paces from the old Colours and will halt when the Drum Major is in the centre of the parade ground. They will then play a quick troop, counter-march, and halt again when the Drum Major is in the centre of the parade ground.

12.06. The procedure for the Drummers Call etc will take place as laid down for Trooping the Colour at paragraph 10.29.

12.07. As soon as the two Ensigns for the old Colours are in position the Battalion Commander will give the commands shown below.

Battalion Commander: Escort for the Colour-Slope Arms. Remainder Stand at Ease.

Trooping The Colours

12.08. The Lieutenant will then give the orders shown below. The Markers will come up on the right and left of the rear rank.

Lieutenant of the Escort: Escort for the Colours, In Close Order Left Dress. By the Left, Quick March.

12.09. The procedure for Trooping the Colour will be followed as laid down in paragraph 10.41 - 10.43.

12.10. After the old Colours have been trooped and the Escort have reformed line, the Major/Captain will order the Escort to present arms. The Battalion Commander will then order the Guards to slope arms and order the old Colours to march off.

Major/Captain of the Escort: Escort to the Colours, Present Arms.

Battalion Commander: Guards, Slope Arms, March off the Old Colours.

Marching off the old Colours

12.11. The Ensign to The Queen's Colour will give the orders shown in the margin. The Band will play 'Auld Lang Syne'.

Ensign to The Queen's Colour: Colour Party, by the Left, Change Direction Left, Left Form Slow March.

12.12. The Colours will pass from right to left across and ten paces in front of the battalion. If a Royal personage or her representative is on parade the Colours will be

lowered for 20 paces on passing the dais and then returned to the carry. When opposite the left of the battalion, the Ensign to The Queen's Colour will order the Colour Party to change direction right.

Ensign to The Queen's Colour: Colour Party, Change Direction Right, Right Form Forward

12.13. The three Warrant Officers and Sergeants detailed to escort the old Colours will be formed up on the left of the battalion and when the Colour Party forms to its right the senior will order 'By the centre, slow march'. They will join the Colour Party which will be marking time, and when the Colour Party is complete with its escort, the senior Ensign will give the order 'Forward by the centre'.

Senior Warrant Officer/NCO: Escort, By the Centre, Slow March. Mark Time.

Ensign to The Queen's Colour: Forward by the Centre.

12.14. As soon as the Colour Party receives the command 'Forward' the Battalion Commander will order the Guards to present arms.

Battalion Commander: Guards Present Arms.

12.15. The Band will continue to play 'Auld Lang Syne', until the Colours have left the parade ground. The Colours will proceed to a convenient place where they will be cased.

12.16. As soon as the Colours have disappeared from sight the Band will cease to play and the Battalion Commander will slope arms and be prepared to carry on with the consecration of the new Colours.

Battalion Commander: Slope Arms Shoulder Arms.

SECTION 3 - CONSECRATION OF THE NEW COLOURS

Preparation

12.17. The Battalion may now form three sides of a square, the right-and left-hand Companies being formed inwards. However, if circumstances dictate the battalion may remain in line.

Battalion Commander: Right and Left Guards inwards Form Quick March.

12.18. As soon as this has been carried out, the following actions will take place, as far as possible simultaneously.

a. The Drum Major will march one Bass Drummer, one Tenor Drummer and six Side Drummers to a point 35 paces in front of the centre of the Battalion, where he will order the drums to be piled (see Annex A). On completion of this, the Drummers will take up position 14 paces on the right of the drums facing inwards, the Drum Major being on the flank nearest to the Battalion.

b. The two Subalterns who will receive the New Colours will have been positioned up to this time in the centre of the Battalion when formed into line. They will return their swords and step off on command of the senior, halting three paces in rear of the Commanding Officer, with the senior on the right.

c. The Senior Major (Second-in-Command) and the Junior Major will return their swords and step off from their positions on the parade, halting either side of the two subalterns, senior on the right.

d. Two soldiers will bring forward two kneelers and place them in position two paces in front of the drums and three paces on the right and left respectively.

- e. Microphones, if required, will be brought forward and placed in position for the Personage, the Chaplains and the Commanding Officer.
- f. Two drummers will move from the Band and Drums, to the rear of the Battalion, and place themselves behind the Colour Sergeants carrying the new Colours, under command of the Quartermaster.
- g. The Quartermaster will march the new Colours forward, halting them in rear of the piled drums. The two drummers will uncase the Colours and the Quartermaster will take them from the Colour Sergeants and lay them on the drums, with the Queen's Colour on top (see Annex A).
- h. The Colours should be placed down Queen's Colour first followed by the Regimental Colour. The Colours should be placed onto the Drum Pile facing the Battalion, not the Inspecting Officer or Guest. When removing the Colours from the Drum Pile, the Regimental should be lifted first and the Queen's Colour last off the Drum Pile.
- i. The Quartermaster will then about turn the Colour Sergeants and Drummers and march them back to the rear of the Battalion, where the Drummers will hand over the Colour cases and return to the Band.
- j. The Chaplains will move on to the parade (junior leading) and take up position on the left of the drums, opposite the drummers. See diagram at Annex K.

The Consecration

12.19. The Battalion will then be stood at ease. When the command 'Stand Easy' has been given, the Personage presenting the Colours will move forward to a position in front of the piled drums, facing the parade. At the same time the Chaplain-General will move to a position in rear of the drums, facing the Personage making the presentation, and will remain in this position during the Consecration Service. The other chaplains will accompany the Chaplain-General and will take post behind him in line as before. The Consecration Service will then proceed. For the form of service to be used see QRs (A) paragraphs J8.026 - J8.028.

Battalion Commander: *Stand as Ease. Stand Easy.*

SECTION 4 - THE PRESENTATION

Preliminaries

12.20. On the completion of the Consecration Service, the Battalion will come to attention. The Chaplain-General and the other chaplains will then move to their left front and take post on the left of and facing the drums, where they will remain during the Presentation and until the 'Royal Salute' or 'General Salute' has been given.

Battalion Commander: *Battalion, Attention.*

12.21. The Senior Major will march the Officers for the Colours forward with the Junior Major. They will take up the following positions:

Senior Major: *Officers for the Colours, Quick March, Halt*

- a. The two Ensigns will pass either side of the drums, halt by their kneelers and kneel with the right knee on the kneeler.
- b. The two Majors will halt by the drums. They will take up the Colours; the Regimental Colour being removed from the Drum Pile first followed by the

Queen's Colour. They then move to their respective positions forward of the kneeling Ensigns, on the outer flanks facing inwards. See Annex K.

Presentation

12.22. The Senior Major will hand The Queen's Colour to the personage presenting the Colours, from whom the Lieutenant will receive it. The Regimental Colour will then similarly be handed by the Junior Major and received by the Second Lieutenant. As soon as the Regimental Colour has been received both Subalterns will rise. The two Majors will take a pace to the rear, draw their swords, salute and return to the carry. The Battalion will be stood at ease.

Battalion Commander: Battalion, Stand at Ease

The Address

12.23. Any address to be made by the Personage presenting the Colour will now follow.

12.24. On completion of the address and reply by the Commanding Officer, the Battalion will be brought to attention.

Battalion Commander: Battalion, Attention. Slope Arms.

12.25. The Personage will return to the saluting base and the following actions will be taken:

- a. The Drummers will be marched to the front, ordered to un-pile drums and marched back to the Band and Drums.
- b. The Chaplains will retire.
- c. The two Majors will return to their positions.
- d. The microphones and kneelers will be removed.
- e. The Warrant Officer and two Colour Sergeants of the new Colour Party take up position in the supernumerary rank three paces from the centre rear of the Battalion with the Quarter-master.

The Battalion will then re-form line.

Battalion Commander: Right and Left Guards, About Turn. Outwards Form. Quick March. Right and Left Guards, About Turn.

Compliments to the new Colours

12.26. When line has been reformed, the Ensigns will turn about to face the parade. A 'Royal Salute' or 'General Salute' will then be given. On completion of the third movement of the 'Present' the Ensigns will step off in slow time. The Band will play the National Anthem. The Ensigns, on arrival at their place in the centre of the Battalion, will mark time until the completion of the National Anthem, when they will halt and turn about.

Ensign to The Queen's Colour: Ensigns, About Turn.

Battalion Commander: General Salute, Present Arms. Ensign to The Queen's Colour: Colour Party Halt, About turn.

SECTION 5 - MARCH PAST AND ADVANCE IN REVIEW ORDER

The March Past

12.27. As soon as the Escort has presented arms, the commands and movements, prior to the 'March Past' in column of companies, will be as laid down in paragraphs 3.28 - 3.36 and 10.50 - 10.52.

12.28. As soon as the Band is in position, the Battalion Commander will give the commands shown below. The march past in slow and quick time will be carried out as laid out in paragraphs 10.53 - 10.59.

Battalion Commander: Guards will march past in Slow and Quick Time. By the Left, Slow March.

The Advance in Review Order

12.29. The Battalion having formed up again into line will advance in Review Order, the procedure being the same as laid out in paragraphs 3.42 - 3.45.

CHAPTER 13 - LAYING UP OF OLD COLOURS

SECTION 1 - GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

Scope

13.01. The military procedure for the laying up of old Colours in sacred buildings is laid down in this chapter. This should be adhered to as closely as possible by all units.

Senior Officer

13.02. The Senior Officer will be seated at the inside of the right-hand front pew. He may be the Colonel of the Regiment or the Commanding Officer, or both may take part.

The Colour Party

13.03. The Colour Party should remain at the back of the church during the service preceding the ceremony.

13.04. At the beginning of the last verse of the hymn preceding the ceremony, the Colour Party, under arms and wearing head-dress, will form up with the old Colours at the west end of the church.

13.05. At the conclusion of the hymn the Regimental slow march will be played and the Colour Party, the Colours at the carry, will move forward in slow time, halting two paces from the chancel steps. The senior officer, without head-dress, will take post at the foot of the chancel steps, facing the Colour Party.

Ensign to the Queen's Colour: Colour Party by the Centre, Slow March, Halt.

The Bidding

13.06. On conclusion of the slow march, the Senior Chaplain will come to the chancel steps and will say,

"We are gathered together in this Church to lay up these Colours of No more fitting place could be found wherein to deposit these emblems of duty and service than the House of God where praise and prayer are wont to be made."

Handing over The Colours

13.07. The Senior Officer will then take the Colour or Colours, one in each hand (Queen's Colour in the right hand, Regimental Colour in the left), will move to the top of the steps and halt. (If there are two officers, each may carry one Colour.) The Colour Party will 'Present Arms', officers first having drawn swords, with which they will salute.

Senior Ensign: Present Arms.

13.08. The Senior Officer, preceded by the Senior Chaplain and the Chaplain of the unit, will advance in slow time to the altar rails, and halt.

13.09. The Senior Officer will then say:

"These consecrated Colours, formerly carried in the service of the Queen and Commonwealth, I now deliver into your hands for safe custody within these walls."

13.10. The Senior Officer will hand over the Colours to the Chaplain (Queen's Colour first, then Regimental Colour), and the Chaplain will reply:

"I receive these Colours for safe custody within this"

13.11. The Chaplain will place the Colours on the altar (see paragraph 2.67).

13.12. The Senior Officer will turn about and will resume his seat. As he turns about the Colour Party will 'Slope Arms' and remain at the slope while the prayers are said and the Benediction given.

The Colour Party withdraws

13.13. After the Benediction the National Anthem will be played, the Colour Party will 'Present' and 'Slope Arms' on the first and last notes of the Anthem respectively.

Senior Ensign: Present Arms Slope Arms. Move to the Left/Right in file, Left/Right Turn. Quick March.

13.14. The Colour Party will move to a side aisle before the choir and clergy leave the chancel.

Laid Up Colours

13.15. The transfer of the Colours from the altar to the place they are to occupy will be made by the Church Authority at some time subsequent to the conclusion of the service and without military ceremony.

13.16. After having been laid up, Colours can never, under any circumstances, again be carried on parade.

CHAPTER 14 - FUNERALS

SECTION 1 - GENERAL

Provision

14.01. The provision of a funeral with military honours is subject to the conditions laid down in QRs (A) paragraphs J8.112 - 8.136, which should be read in conjunction with any local standing orders.

Form of Service

14.02. If the deceased is to be cremated, ceremonial may have to be on a reduced scale. In any case there should be prior consultation with the Crematorium authority. Chaplains or, where necessary, local clergy are to be consulted about the form of religious service.

Honours Accorded

14.03. At the funeral of an officer or soldier where the conditions laid down in QRs (A), Chapter 8: Part 5, have been fulfilled, military honours are provided as follows:

- a. Escort (in accordance with QRs (A) paragraph J8.124).
- b. Firing party (see paragraph 14.12) in the case of the funeral of officers below the rank of Major-General and soldiers (see QRs (A) paragraph J8.124 for the details of minute guns and volleys).
- c. Bands and Drums.
- d. Gun-carriage or hearse.
- e. Pall bearers (see QRs (A) paragraph J8.121).
- f. Bearers for the coffin (see QRs (A) paragraph J8.120).
- g. Insignia bearers (normally Service officers nominated by the family of the deceased).
- h. Special Party (see paragraph 14.15).

Drill

14.04. The detail of drill movements required at funerals, with sword, rifle or pistol, is laid down in the latest edition of the Drill Manual.

Dress

14.05. All ranks on the active list are to wear uniform. Officers not on the active list who are in possession of uniform may wear it when taking part in the procession on occasions when military honours are accorded at the funeral of an officer or soldier.

Union Jack

14.06. The Union Jack should be placed over the coffin as though the pike was at the head of the coffin.

Accoutrements and Wreaths

14.07. The head-dress, belt and sword or side arms of the deceased will be placed upon the coffin in addition to wreaths. The Commander of the Bearer Party must ensure that these and the flag are securely fixed to prevent them from falling. Wreaths not on the coffin will be carried immediately in rear if it. Any which can not be carried on foot will follow the rear escort in a vehicle.

Mounted Officers and Soldiers

14.08. In the case of the funeral of a mounted officer or soldier, a charger or suitable horse will be led by a soldier immediately behind the gun-carriage or hearse if the former is not available. The jack boots of the deceased will be placed in the stirrups, but secured reversed, i.e. left boot in the right stirrup and heels to the front.

Funerals of Senior Officers

14.09. At the funeral of a Field-Marshal his baton should normally be placed on the coffin together with sword and head-dress.

14.10. At funerals of senior officers the arrangements will be made under the supervision of the GOC-in-C.

Escort

14.11. The Escort will march by Companies in threes at the head of the procession in front of the Band and Drums and at the rear of the procession. The disposal of the Escort on arrival at the cemetery will be under local arrangements. Further troops will be detailed to line the route.

Firing Party

14.12. A firing party consisting of one Sergeant, one Corporal and 12 Privates will attend to fire volleys at the funeral of all officers below the rank of Major-General and soldiers. This party should not be confused with the Escort and the Special Party as mentioned in paragraphs 14.11 and 14.15. On the occasion of the funerals of officers of and above the rank of Major-General the Firing Party's task will be taken by a leading detachment from the Escort, of the same strength.

14.13. In marching in slow and quick time arms will be carried at the 'Reverse'. During the march, arms may be changed, but the party will not march at ease.

Bearer Party

14.14. This consists of an Officer, Warrant Officer or Non-Commissioned Officer in charge, and six to eight bearers, depending upon circumstances; the rank of the bearers will depend upon the rank of the deceased. In the case of funerals of senior officers, the coffin should be carried by senior Warrant Officers or Non-Commissioned Officers.

Special Party

14.15. Officers attending funerals as mourners will not draw swords, and with other ranks (except the Firing Party) will march in order of seniority from front to rear. Officers wearing swords on duty with troops will draw swords, but will return swords before reaching the actual place of burial.

Compliments to be paid

14.16. The Standards, Guidons or Colours of units forming part of the Escort or lining the route will be carried. No compliments will however be paid to them by any units, parties or individuals, whether military or civil, parading on account of the military funeral until such units, parties or individuals shall have ceased to be in charge of, or in attendance upon the coffin or urn containing the remains of the deceased, to which alone the usual compliments will be paid.

14.17. At funerals where troops are detailed to line the route, they will originally be in the 'at ease' position. As the head of the procession approaches, they will rest on their arms reversed, being brought to the 'Present' as the coffin passes, and then again resting on their arms reversed.

14.18. During the playing of Last Post at a funeral or remembrance service all ranks should stand to attention and officers should salute. They should return to the position of attention at the conclusion of Last Post and remain at this position

throughout the silence and the playing of Reveille. Clear instructions should be given to all to ensure uniformity. **It should be noted that**, at a military funeral, because no words of command can be given after the start of the Last Post, officers should remain in the salute and the firing party and bearer party commander will remain at the present throughout any silence and reveille following the playing of Last Post. See also Para 16.37.

Flags

14.19. After the end of the burial service flags will be full-masted to denote the end of military mourning. Mourning bands will be removed by personnel after return to barracks.

SECTION 2 - PROCEDURE

Order of Forming Up

14.20. The Firing Party or Leading Detachment of the Escort will be drawn up two deep, with shouldered arms, one pace interval between files, facing the building where the body is placed. The Corporal will be on that flank of the front rank towards which the procession will move. The Sergeant will give all words of command and be posted in rear of the centre.

14.21. As soon as the body is brought out of the building by the Bearers, the Sergeant in charge of the Firing Party or Leading Detachment will give the command 'Present Arms'. When the coffin has been placed on the gun-carriage or in the hearse if the former is not available and the cortege is ready to move off, he will order 'Shoulder Arms' followed by 'Reverse Arms' and will turn the party to face its direction of march (the Corporal taking up his place two paces in front and midway between ranks). He will then order it to step off in slow time.

Sergeant IC Party Firing Party, Present Arms. Shoulder Arms. Reverse Arms. Right/Left Turn Slow March.

14.22. The Military Mourners (see Special Party, paragraph 14.15), Band and Drummers with drums muffled, will have formed up in two ranks, facing inward, with two paces interval between men and eight paces between ranks. The Firing Party or Leading Detachment and the remainder of the leading portion of the procession will pass between ranks.

The Procession

14.23. The Procession will then move off in the following order:

- a. The personnel listed in paragraph 14.03.
- b. The chief mourners.
- c. The Queen's special representative, when Her Majesty is represented.
- d. The Lord Lieutenant (if present) of the county in which the funeral takes place.
- e. Mourners in uniform in order of seniority, the senior leading.
- f. Mourners not in uniform.
- g. Rear detachment (from the Escort).
- h. Mounted units forming part of the Escort authorized by Queen's Regulations.

- i. Motor cars or other vehicles, unless directed by a separate route.

14.24. The Bearers will march on either side of and next to the gun-carriage or hearse, except when Pall Bearers are present, in which case the Pall Bearers will march immediately on either side of the gun-carriage or hearse, and the bearers on the outer flanks at two paces interval. The position of the Pall Bearers will be in order of seniority alternately on either side of the coffin, the senior being in rear on the right-hand side, the next senior in rear on the left-hand side and so on.

14.25. Should the mourners, for any reason, not be able to walk in the procession they will proceed by car by a separate route.

The Band and Drums

14.26. The Band or Drums will begin to play the 'Dead March' when about 300 yards from the mortuary or the building from which the coffin was lying, and continue for such a distance as the Officer in charge may have ordered.

14.27. The Firing Party or Leading Detachment will receive the command 'Quick March' when the Band or Drums cease playing and the remainder will conform.

14.28. When at a convenient distance from the cemetery or crematorium, as directed by the Officer in charge, the Sergeant in charge of the Firing Party or Leading Detachment will give the command 'Slow March' and the Band of Drums will again begin playing.

Procedure on arrival at the place of Interment

14.29. When the head of the procession arrives near the ground where it is to meet the Officiating Minister, and before the Sergeant in charge of the Firing Party or Leading Detachment gives the command 'Halt' the ranks of the Firing Party or Leading Detachment at the head of the procession, and the Band and Drums, will open out to six paces distance, and will halt on the Sergeant's word of command. The order to 'inwards turn, shoulder arms, present arms and rest on arms reversed' will then be given.

Sergeant IC Firing Party: Halt. Sergeant: Inwards-Turn. Shoulder Arms Present Arms Rest on your arms reversed.

14.30. The coffin will then be moved by the Bearers and carried feet-end foremost to the place of interment (Chapel in the case of cremation). It will be placed in position on wooden bearers immediately over the grave or, if in a chapel, on the bier.

14.31. The order of the procession will now be: Officiating Minister - body with pall bearers and bearers (the former walking behind the body should the path be too narrow to admit of their remaining in the correct position) - Mourners - Band and Drums - Firing Party. Should the Band be required to take part in the service, they and the Drums may precede the body to the grave or chapel in quick time, in which case they will not open out and halt as detailed in paragraph 14.28.

Sergeant IC Firing Party: Present Arms. Shoulder Arms. Ranks, Right and Left Turn. Slow March.

Procedure at the Graveside

14.32. The Mourners will then file around the grave, halt and turn inwards without word or command. The Firing Party will follow the Mourners and will be halted near the grave under the orders of the Sergeant in charge, who will give the command shown in the margin.

Sergeant: Halt, Left Turn. Shoulder Arms Present Arms Rest on your arms reversed.

14.33. The Leading Detachment (if present) will be halted at some convenient pre-arranged position at the graveside.

Procedure during the Service

14.34. During the service at the graveside (except when actual burial takes place in a sacred building) the head-dress of those attending in uniform will not be removed except that of the Bearers when actually carrying the coffin.

14.35. As soon as the Chief Mourners are in position and the Officiating Chaplain is ready to begin the burial service the Bearers will raise the coffin from the wooden bearers and lower it into the grave, having first removed the flag, head-dress, side arms, wreaths etc. The head-dress of the Bearers will be carried by an NCO or by drummers to be specially detailed.

14.36. Once the coffin has been lowered the Bearers will move from the graveside and replace their head-dress.

Procedure at a Crematorium

14.37. Prior arrangements will be made for the positioning of the Firing Party outside the chapel, the trumpeters or buglers (either outside or inside the chapel), and the seating of mourners, Pall Bearers and Bearer Party.

14.38. The flag, head-dress, side arms, wreaths etc which are on the coffin will be collected from the Crematorium authorities after the ceremony.

Procedure for firing the Volleys

14.39. At the conclusion of the Service, the Firing Party will take action as follows:

a. If volleys are to be fired:

(1) If armed with the rifle the procedure for loading with blank cartridges, the Present, fire and unloading will be the same as when firing a Feu-de-Joie (see paragraphs 11.11 - 11.19) except that each man will fire simultaneously.

Sergeant IC Firing Party: Firing Party, Present Arms. Shoulder Arms. Firing Party, volleys with blank cartridges Load. Present. Fire. (Two or more volleys will be similarly fired.) Unload. Order Arms. Fix Bayonets.

(2) If armed with the pistol the procedure will be as follows:

Attention. Shoulder Arms. Present Arms.

(a) Draw the pistol the procedure will be as follows:

Sergeant IC Firing Party: Draw Arms.

(b) Load.

Volleys (with blank cartridges) Load.

(c) Adopt the ready position.

Right hand. Ready.

(d) Raise the right arm in the air at an angle of 135 degrees without moving the feet, muzzle to be pointing at the same angle as the arm.

Present, Cock, Fire.

(e) Re-cock without lowering the pistol, fire and repeat.

Re-cock.

(f) Resume the 'Ready' position.

Steady,

(g) The men will remain in the unloaded position and will not 'Make safe' pistols until the NCO in charge of the Firing Party has inspected them. Empty cases will not be collected by the Firing Party.

Unload.

b. If no volley is to be fired, the Firing Party will present arms.

c. At a Crematorium the volleys will be fired as the curtains are closed on the coffin at the end of the service. To be followed immediately by sounding of the 'The Last Post'.

Sergeant IC Firing Party: Detachment, Present Arms. Shoulder Arms. Order Arms. Fix Bayonets. Shoulder Arms. Present Arms.

d. If the Crematorium is unsuitable as a place for volleys to be fired and the main audience would be at the place of the funeral service (a Church/Mosque elsewhere for example) volleys may be fired as the hearse leaves the place of the funeral service..

14.40. The trumpeters or buglers will then sound the 'Last Post' - a short interval - then 'Reveille'. During the sounding of these calls all troops under arms (except the Firing Party or Leading Detachment) will stand at attention. Officers will salute during the 'Last Post' but not when 'Reveille' is sounded.

14.41. The Firing Party will shoulder arms, the command being given immediately after the 'sounding of Reveille' has ceased.

Sergeant: Shoulder Arms.

Procedure for Dispersal

14.42. The Band and Drums will be formed up ready for moving off. The Sergeant in charge of the Firing Party or Leading Detachment will now give the orders to march off.

Sergeant: Form three ranks. Right Turn. Quick March.

14.43. The Band and Drums will lead, followed by the Firing Party and Mourners, who will form threes without word of command as they march off. The Band will not play, nor the Drums beat, until the party is entirely clear of the burial ground.

14.44. Bayonets will be unfixed at the earliest opportunity after leaving the place of burial.

Procedure for carrying the coffin

14.45. The coffin will always be carried feet-end foremost and normally the Bearers will work on the word of command of the Officer, Warrant Officer or Non-Commissioned Officer in charge of the Bearer Party. Words of command will be given in a quiet low tone. These movements cannot be controlled by a signal and should always be ordered by a word of command.

NCO IC Bearer Party: Prepare to lift. Lift. Slow March. Halt. Prepare to lower. Lower.

14.46. When in the lift position the Bearer Party should be evenly spaced three/four on each side of the coffin depending on whether there are six or eight bearers. Their arms should be crossed and around each other's shoulders, the coffin resting on the shoulder with the face close to the side of the coffin itself. The outer arm will be placed on the coffin immediately in front of the face. The Bearers will step off with the inside foot to avoid undue rocking of the coffin.

14.47. The Non-Commissioned Officer in charge of the Bearer Party will march two places in the rear and in the centre of the Bearer Party.

Procedure for the Joint Burial/Cremation of a Service person and a Civilian (Husband and Wife, Father/Mother and Son/Daughter).

14.48. In the event that a joint Military/Civilian Burial/Cremation is being planned there must be a clear distinction between those concerned when Honours are being paid. It will be usual for the military person to be buried/cremated first to show clear separation between the two. Advice in all such cases should be sought from PS12(A).

Safety

14.49 When the firing of volleys takes place **no-one** is to be in front of the firing party and when firearms are raised there are to be no obstructions in front of them. 'Clear sky' should always be the maxim.

CHAPTER 15 - OTHER PARADES

SECTION 1 - PARADES OF OTHER REGIMENTS AND CORPS

Forms of Parade

15.01. The basic forms of parades are given in earlier chapters:

- a. The dismounted parade - Chapter 3 - The Battalion Parade.
- b. The mounted parade - Chapter 4 - The Armoured Regiment Parade.

The Artillery Regimental Parade is contained in Chapter 5 as this is a rather special case, but it is not possible to lay down forms of parade for all regiments and corps in this pamphlet. Even with the infantry there are minor variations due to regimental customs and traditions. However, all regiments and corps are to follow, where appropriate the basic procedure.

Parade Ground

15.02. This will always be laid out as shown at Annex B.

Positions on Parade

15.03. For the dismounted parade these are given in Annex C. In units without Colours there will be no gap between Nos 2 and 3 sub-units and the position of the RSM will be on the right of the front rank.

Salutes without Arms

15.04. In units not armed with rifles the procedure for the General Salute will be for all officers to salute upon the order shown. If there is a Band, it will play the appropriate salute and Officers will remain at the salute until the Band has finished

playing, cutting the hand to the side after a regulation pause after the last note. If there is no Band, Officers will salute with the hand for a period estimated equal to six paces, taking the time from the Parade Commander. The rest of the Parade will remain at attention.

Parade Commander: General Salute, Salute.

Drawing of Swords

15.05. If wearing a sword, the Parade Commander will not draw it unless a Senior Officer is on parade. Swords will not be drawn by Staff Officers.

Infantry battalion mounted in APCs

15.06. A parade formation for the Battalion when mounted in vehicles is shown in Annex L. For the form of parade see Chapter 4. Colours will not normally be carried.

SECTION 2 - GUARDS

Guard Mounting

15.07. The procedure for guard mounting is contained in the latest edition of the Drill Manual.

Ceremonial Barrack Guard

15.08. When a Senior Officer visits a unit, it is customary for him to be received by a Ceremonial Barrack Guard. This is not to be confused with the Guard of Honour described in Chapter 7.

15.09. *Composition.* It will normally be a sergeant, one other NCO and six soldiers. If a trumpeter or bugler is available, he will also parade.

15.10. *Procedure.* This will be as follows:

a. A sentry will be posted outside the Guard Room. As the Visiting Officer's car approaches, he will turn out the Guard.

Sentry: Guard Turn out

b. The Guard will turn out in quick time with their rifles at the high port; they will halt in line, slope arms, take up their dressing and stand still. The trumpeter or bugler will be two paces to the right of the senior NCO. The sentry will remain at his post.

c. The Visiting Officer will alight from his car, be met by the Unit Commander and position himself in front of the Guard.

d. The Guard Commander will give the General Salute.

Guard Commander: General Salute Present Arms

e. The Trumpeter or Bugler will sound 'The General Salute'.

f. The Guard Commander will bring the Guard to the slope. He will then take one pace forward and report. Having done so, he will step back into line.

Guard Commander: Slope Arms

g. The Visiting Officer, accompanied by the Commanding Officer will now inspect the Guard, moving from the right to left of the rank and returning along the rear to his original position.

h. He will then order the Guard Commander to dismiss.

Guard Commander: Sentry stand fast; Guard to the Guardroom, Dismiss.

j. The Guard will turn to the right, salute and file into the Guard Room in quick time at the high port, the sentry remaining at his post.

SECTION 3 - DRUMHEAD AND REMEMBRANCE SERVICES

Introduction

15.11. This section is intended as a guide only. Much depends on local circumstances, the type of parade and the size and location of the parade ground.

Preparations for a Drumhead Service

15.12. Instructions should include:

- a. Orders for forming up.
- b. Piling of drums, which should, if possible, be carried out before the service.
- c. Provision of public address system.
- d. Seating for civilian congregation.
- e. Issue of forms of service or prayer books, which should preferably be done before the parade.

Procedure

15.13. The normal procedure will be as follows:

- a. The Parade will march on and form a hollow square, the congregation already being seated.
- b. If Colours are being brought on parade, they will now be marched on in the normal manner.
- c. The Chaplain will move forward on to parade from the front and place himself in rear of the piled drums.
- d. The Colour Party will advance in quick time and halt three paces in rear of the drums. It will then carry out the procedure given in paragraph 2.67.
- e. The Chaplain will place the Colours on the drums as described in paragraph 2.67 and the Colour Party will afterwards turn to its left and file back to its position.
- f. The Parade will be stood easy. Head-dress will not be removed.
- g. The Chaplain will conduct the service, normally standing in rear of the drums (the Parade side).
- h. After the Blessing, the Parade will be brought to attention and the National Anthem will be sung. All on parade will join in the singing, officers will not salute.
- j. The Colour Party will advance, receive back the Colours and the Chaplain will move off parade.
- k. If there is to be a march past, the Parade will be formed into line.
- l. The march past will take place in the normal way and the Parade will march off the parade ground. Colours will be marched off before dismissing.

Remembrance Ceremonies

15.14. It is customary to hold Services of Remembrance at all military stations on Remembrance Sunday. These may take place in a Church or at a local War Memorial. In the former case, there is a set order of service; in the latter, the ceremony is normally carried out according to local tradition.

15.15. However, circumstances may arise where guidance might be required. Therefore a summary of the form of ceremonial carried out at the Cenotaph is given below - but it should be noted that there is **no** saluting as this is conducted as a religious service.

- a. Representative detachments of the Services assemble, march to the Cenotaph and form a hollow square around it, markers having been placed in position. All are in position by 1050 hours.
- b. At the same time, ex-Servicemen's (and women's) organisations are assembling and form up facing the open end of the hollow square.
- c. The massed Bands play from 1040 to 1058½ hours, and when the music stops the Parade is brought to the 'Stand at Ease'.
- d. Her Majesty the Queen arrives and the Parade is called to attention.
- e. The Two Minutes' Silence indicated by the firing of guns is observed from 1100 to 1102 hours.
- f. Immediately after the second gun has fired, 'Last Post' is sounded.
- g. Wreaths are laid.
- h. The Parade stands at ease and the Service takes place; all in parade join in the singing.
- j. After the Blessing, at the end of the Service, the Parade is brought to attention.
- k. 'Reveille' is sounded.
- l. All join in the singing of the National Anthem, officers do not salute.
- m. Her Majesty then departs.
- n. The Parade marches off.

15.16. If guns are not available, the beginning of The Silence could be denoted by the recitation of 'The Ode to the Fallen', or the beginning and end by the sounding of the 'Last Post' and 'Reveille' respectively on a trumpet or bugle.

Compliments

15.17. Compliments. See Para 14.18.

SECTION 4 – BEATING RETREAT, FORMATION, AMALGAMATION, VESTING DAY, REORGANISATION AND DISBANDMENT PARADES

General

15.18. It is not possible to lay down any set form for these parades; much depends on circumstances. However, with minor adaptations, the basic forms of parade given in the preceding chapters are appropriate. Some possible forms of parade are suggested in the following paragraphs.

Beating Retreat

15.18. The purpose of this sub section is to provide appropriate guidance to organisers of Beating Retreats.

15.19. An example of a Beating Retreat programme is laid out below. Instructions that organisers should give to spectators is annotated, where relevant, in brackets;

- a. Reception of Principal Guest. (All stand).
- b. The playing of the musical programme including marching patterns.
- c. The massing of the musical elements to play a particular piece of music, probably conducted by the Director of Music/Bandmaster.
- d. An Evening Hymn may be played. (All stand).
- e. A sunset tune is played; at this point flags may be lowered. (All stand, no salutes are given)

Note: Last Post or an arrangement thereof may be used as the sunset tune; as a Beating Retreat is neither a funeral nor a remembrance service there is no requirement to salute Last Post (Para 16.37d), however if Last Post itself is played during the lowering of a flag then officers should salute and all should stand to attention (Para 16.37f).

- f. The National Anthem is played. Note: For formed bodies on parade only the officers are to salute. (All ranks in uniform salute).
- g. The bands march off, the Senior Drum Major having sought permission. (Only the Principal Guest returns the salute).

15.20. Compliments to be given in connection with the raising and lowering of the Union Flag, camp flags and at Sunset Ceremonies are subject to regimental custom and should be clearly detailed in instructions to spectators. There is no mandatory drill relating to the raising and lowering of camp flags other than that outlined in Para 16.37f but it is **not** customary for spectators to salute the lowering of flags to music other than Last Post.

Formation or Amalgamation Parades

15.21. Usually when parades are to be held to mark the formation or amalgamation of regiments or units it is not always possible to collect the soldiers together far in advance for rehearsals, therefore units are advised to keep the parade fairly simple. Suggested forms are:

- a.
 - (1) The unit marches on to parade wearing its new badges for the first time.
 - (2) Reception of a senior officer and inspection.
 - (3) An address.
 - (4) The new regimental flag is raised.
 - (5) Three cheers for the new Colonel in Chief/Colonel.
 - (6) March Past in column of route.

or

- b.

- (1) The old units march on from either side of the parade ground.
- (2) The 'Last Post' is sounded and the old regimental flags are lowered.
- (3) New cap badges are issued on parade and fixed in head dress.
- (4) An address.
- (5) 'Reveille' and the raising of the new regimental flag.
- (6) March Past in column of route.

or

c.

- (1) The old units form up on parade.
- (2) March Past and off parade, flags are lowered. Change cap badges and reorganise.
- (3) The new unit marches on to parade, the new flag is raised.
- (4) Inspection.
- (5) An address.
- (6) March Past of the new unit.

Vesting Day Parade

15.22. "Vesting Day" being the day on which, in accordance with the relevant MoD authority, changes of role/title/location are carried out. The form of parade suggested in paragraph 15.18a would be appropriate.

Reorganisation Parades

15.23. The most appropriate form would be:

- a. Form up on parade in the old organisation.
- b. March past and off parade, reorganise.
- c. March back on to parade.
- d. An inspection.
- e. An address.
- f. A march past.

Disbandment Parades

15.24. These could include:

- a. Reception of a senior officer.
- b. Inspection.
- c. An address.
- d. March past and off the parade ground, with the Band playing 'Auld Lang Syne' as the unit leaves the parade ground. In an Infantry Battalion or Armoured Regiment this would be a very appropriate occasion for Trooping the Colour/Standard/Guidon.

CHAPTER 16 - MISCELLANEOUS CEREMONIAL MATTERS

SECTION 1 - HONOURS AND SALUTES OTHER THAN ARTILLERY SALUTES

Visiting Personages

16.01. QRs (A) lay down Honours and Salutes accorded to Her Majesty The Queen, to members of the Royal Family, to the Crown and to Foreign Sovereigns, Presidents of Republican States, members of reigning Foreign Imperial and Royal Families.

16.02. The following Honours and Salutes are also accorded:

a. Governors General, Governors and persons holding similar appointments in British Dependent Territories, or to an Ambassador, when taking the salute on the occasion of a Queen's Birthday Parade, when British troops are stationed in a foreign country to which he is accredited.

Royal Salute - Present arms, Standards, Guidons and Colours lowered. The band plays the first six bars of the National Anthem.

b. Admirals of the Fleet, Field-Marsals and Marshals of the Royal Air Force.
General Salute - Present arms, Regimental Colours lowered. The band plays the first part of a slow march with drums beating. If no band is present trumpets or bugles will sound the salute or the drums will beat a ruffle.

c. General Officers and Inspecting Officers below the rank of General Officer, but not below the rank of Brigadier, and to corresponding ranks and appointments in the Royal Navy and the Royal Air Force.

General Salute as in paragraph 16.02b, except that Colours are let fly and not lowered.

d. Standards, Guidons and Colours:

When uncased, the same details as for paragraph 16.02b, except when carried by Regiments, forming part of the escort at a Military funeral, (when no compliments are paid).

National Anthems

16.03. The occasions when the National Anthem or a Foreign National Anthem is played on a parade are laid down in QRs (A) paragraph J8.035 to J8.046. Whenever a National Anthem is played all personnel who are not on parade will stand to attention and salute if wearing uniform head-dress. If wearing civilian clothes, they will remove their head-dress, if worn. Within a building, personnel will stand to attention unless otherwise ordered. Members of the Women's Services will not remove their head-dress within a building.

16.04. Officers will not salute when the National Anthem is played when they are in attendance on Her Majesty and other royal personages, or the personal staff of Governors-General and Governors (when such Governors-General or Governors represent the Sovereign on official occasions). However, on the occasion of Trooping the Colour on the Queen's Birthday Parade, when the National Anthem is played on the presentation of arms to the Colour, all officers in attendance to Her Majesty will salute.

16.05. On a parade after the Royal Salute has been given, the GOC-in-C alone or in his absence the senior officer will be regarded as in attendance and will take up his position in rear of Her Majesty.

16.06. At the reception on board HM Ships, the National Anthem (whole Anthem or first six bars) is only played for Her Majesty The Queen, members of the Royal Family and Governors-General of Commonwealth countries (see QRs(A) paragraph J8.039).

Salutes in Boats

16.07. The following rules for saluting in boats and other craft afloat will be observed:

- a. When a craft, in which there is no officer, passes another in which there is an officer, a salute will be given. When there are officers in each craft, salutes will be exchanged according to the normal rules, only officers of field rank and above being saluted. When craft carrying officers of equal rank pass each other no exchange of salutes will take place.
- b. The Officer in Charge the craft, or the coxswain, will always salute (except when the design of the craft is such that the officer in charge, or the coxswain, is in an inconspicuous position, in which case one of the members of the crew will be detailed to salute).
- c. The senior of any officer passengers in the craft will also salute whenever this is practicable.
- d. The salute will be acknowledged by the officer being saluted unless he details another officer to do so. (If no other officer is available, the coxswain may be detailed to return the salute.)

16.08. In addition to saluting, special marks of respect will be paid to Royal and important personages and senior officers, as given in the table of salutes in paragraph 16.11.

16.09. All Officers will be saluted by the officer in charge of the boat or craft, or by the coxswain, when getting into or leaving it, according to the normal rules.

16.10. In private boats, officers and men will pay and return salutes as dictated by courtesy.

16.11. Table of Special Marks of Respect in Boats

Personage or occasion	When passing in			Craft alongside landing place, accommodation ladder or made fast
	Power craft	Craft under oars	Boat under sail	
a. The Sovereign, members of the Royal Family, equivalent personages of other nations, ambassadors, governors-general and their equivalents in other countries. b. The Army Board or members of it when flying a special Union Flag bearing in its centre, as a	Stop engines	Toss oars	Let fly sheets	Crew called to attention NOTES: (i). In decked-in power-boats, members of the crew who are not engaged in keeping the boat alongside and all passengers, stand to

distinguishing mark, the arms of the Board of Ordinance on a shield and general officers and their equivalents in the other Services and nations, when flying the appropriate flag of their command, i.e., a special Union Flag bearing in its centre as a distinguishing mark, the Royal Cypher surrounded by a garland on a blue shield and surmounted by a crown.				attention and face in the direction of the personage or officer being saluted. (ii). In open boats of all types, members of the crew who are not engaged in keeping the boat alongside and all passengers sit upright and squarely on the thwarts or benches. (iii). Boat keepers sit at attention and the senior officer or NCO in the boat salutes.
c. A boat containing a Service Funeral Party with the body.	Stop engines	Toss oars	Let fly sheets	
d. During the hoisting of Colours and the lowering of Colours at sunset and during the firing of gun salute.	Stop engines	Toss oars	Let fly sheets	
e. General Officer when not flying a flag and officers of equivalent rank of other Services and nations when not flying a flag.	Reduce speed to slow	Lay on oars	Let fly sheets	Crew called to attention (see notes above).

- NOTES:**
- (1). Marks of respect are paid by all boats on occasions a, c and d above. Otherwise only by boats in which officers junior to the personage or officers passing are passengers.
 - (2). In boats fitted with crutches, oars are never to be tossed, but the salute given by laying on oars.
 - (3). When for reasons of safety it would be dangerous to stop engines, toss oars, reduce speed, or let sheets fly, salute only will be given.

SECTION 2 - ROYAL REVIEW - ORDER OF MARCH

16.12. On all occasions when The Queen is to be present at a review, the proposals for the order of march of the Royal procession will invariably be submitted by the officer ordering the parade to the Equerry-in-Waiting who will communicate Her Majesty's pleasure.

16.13. The following order of march will be taken as a general guide in submitting proposals for a Royal review:

- a. A Staff Officer (interval of 50 yards).
- b. Escort (interval of 50 yards).
- c. The Sovereign.
- d. Commander of Escort and Second-in Command of Escort.
- e. The senior military officer of the command or district concerned.
- f. Royal Princes.
- g. Foreign Royal Princes.

- h. Equerries-in-Waiting to the Sovereign.
- j. Gold Stick in Waiting, Master of the Horse (if present).
- k. Military members of the Army Board.
- l. Colonels Commandant and Colonels of regiments on parade.
- m. Aide-de-Camp General to the Sovereign.
- n. Crown Equerry, Silver Stick in Waiting (if present).
- o. Equerries to foreign Royal Princes.
- p. Aides-de-Camp to the Sovereign.
- q. Equerries-in-Waiting to Royal Princes.
- r. Field Marshals, General Officers, and Colonels in successive order according to rank and seniority, with naval and air force officers of equivalent rank.
- s. Staff Officers to General Officers present.
- t. Royal grooms where applicable (interval of 50 yards).
- u. Escort.

SECTION 3 - HONOURS ACCORDED TO THE LORD LIEUTENANT OF A COUNTY

16.14. Honours accorded to a Lord Lieutenant of a county, when a Territorial Army Guard of Honour is mounted for him under the provision of T&AVR Regulations paragraph 2.209 - 2.216 are normally as authorised in QRs (A) paragraph J8.040 - 043.

16.15. However, if he has been expressly instructed to deputise for the Sovereign he will be received with the honours accorded under QRs (A) paragraph J8.042b.

SECTION 4 - PRECEDENCE ON PARADE

16.16. For precedence of units on parade see QRs (A) paragraph 8.001. Since 2007 the RM take precedence within or as for the RN at all times.

16.17. On occasions when more than one Service is on parade the normal precedence of Services will be observed by officers on the Saluting Dais, irrespective of rank.

SECTION 5 - DISTINGUISHING FLAGS AND STAR PLATES ON MOTOR CARS

16.18. Flags and pennants to be flown by army officers on motor cars are as laid down in QRs (A) paragraph J8.103.

16.19. Star plates are carried on the front and rear bumpers of motor cars when occupied by the following officers in the Royal Navy, Royal Marines, Army and Royal Air Force on duty. These plates are coloured royal blue for the Royal Navy, red for the Royal Marines and Army, and light blue for the Royal Air Force. Officers in Joint Service appointments carry tie-colour plates divided equally and horizontally (see QRs (A) paragraph J8.105).

RN/Royal Marines

Army

Royal Air Force

a.	Admiral of the Fleet	Field-Marshal	Marshal of the Royal Air Force	5 stars
b.	Admiral or General, Royal Marines	General	Air Chief Marshal	4 stars
c.	Vice-Admiral or Lieutenant-General, Royal Marines	Lieutenant-General	Air Marshal	3 stars
d.	Rear Admiral or Major-General, Royal Marines	Major-General	Air Vice-Marshal	2 stars
e.	Commodore or Brigadier Royal Marines	Brigadier	Air Commodore or Air Commandant	1 star

16.20. The Commander British Forces Cyprus, in his capacity of Administrator of the Sovereign Base Areas, displays a crown on the front and rear number plates of his motor car.

SECTION 6 - HALF-MASTING OF FLAGS

16.21. On occasions when flags are ordered to be flown at half-mast, the following procedure will be observed.

- a. When the flag is hoisted at 'Reveille' it will be hoisted to the top of the flag pole and then lowered to half-mast.
- b. At 'Retreat' the flag will be first hoisted to the top of the flag pole and then lowered in the normal manner.
- c. The position of the flag when at half-mast will be about one width of the flag from the top of the flag pole.
- d. At those stations where there are no soldiers and the flag has to be raised and lowered by a civilian, the time will be left to the discretion of the local Commander.

SECTION 7 - PROCEDURE FOR ORDERLIES TO AN INSPECTING OFFICER

16.22. In some units and establishments it is the custom to detail two orderlies to conduct an Inspecting Officer throughout his inspection.

16.23. The orderlies will meet the Inspecting Officer and conduct him to the saluting base by marching ten paces in front of him. The orderlies will halt on the inside of points C and D and remain there during the Royal or General Salute; they will not salute but remain standing to attention.

NOTE: See Annex B for points C and D.

16.24. After the senior officer has reported the parade ready for inspection the orderlies will move inwards to the saluting base, then outwards towards the right of the line, halting in front of the third section of threes from the right. After the Company Commander of the right company has reported his company ready for inspection the orderlies will march down the front rank, wheeling at the end of the front rank into the centre rank, and wheeling on the right of the centre rank into the

rear rank. After passing the left-hand man of the rear rank they will halt six paces from him, turn about, salute the Inspecting Officer, make a partial turn to the left, and conduct him back to the saluting base where they will halt, again on the inside of points C and D. They will remain at attention throughout the parade.

16.25. If Colours are on parade the orderlies will salute together whenever they pass or are passed by the Colours. At the conclusion of the parade they will conduct the Inspecting Officer and salute as he gets into his car, then turning to face the Inspecting Officer, salute again as he finally drives away.

16.26. If the Inspecting Officer has other inspections to make after the parade, the orderlies will conduct him around in a similar manner.

SECTION 8 - CEREMONIAL CUSTOMS PARTICULAR TO THE ROYAL NAVY

Visits to HM Ships

16.27. Officers and Other Ranks may, in the course of their duty, pay a visit on board one of HM Ships. The following points are therefore given for their guidance:

- a. When coming on board or going ashore from one of HM Ships, all ranks will salute as they set foot on the deck and as they leave the ship.
- b. If in civilian clothes, and wearing a hat, the hat should be raised by all ranks as they set foot on the deck.
- c. Spurs should not be worn on board ship.
- d. Personal salutes are not normally exchanged on board unless reporting to or being addressed by an officer. However, by custom, officers salute the Captain and Executive Officer on first meeting them each morning.
- e. The order or precedence for getting into or out of a boat, either leaving or arriving at the ship side or jetty, is that the senior officer gets in last and gets out first.
- f. The Officer of the Watch, by custom, salutes all officers coming on board or leaving the ship - even those who are junior to him. The return salute is incorporated in the salute in paragraph 16.27a.
- g. All ranks salute the Quarterdeck when they come on to it. In modern ships the Quarterdeck is not always at the stern of the ship.

SECTION 9 - JOINT SERVICE CEREMONIAL

J16.28. Instructions for the procedures on the occasions of Joint Service Ceremonial have not been laid down; however, the Army's expertise in the field is acknowledged. Procedures are developed and agreed as necessary.

SECTION 10 - UNOFFICIAL CEREMONIAL - WEDDINGS

16.29. The ceremony of forming an archway of swords at weddings, although customary, is unofficial. Should this take place, swords should be held with the guard of the hilt pointing upwards and the blade at an angle of 45 degrees.

SECTION 11 - INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE WEARING OF THE INSIGNIA OF ORDERS, DECORATIONS AND MEDALS

16.30. See Army Dress Regulations.

SECTION 12 - REPATRIATION

J16.31. Ceremonial reception procedures for the repatriation of deceased service personnel from overseas are held by PS12(A). There are 2 basic ceremonial procedure plans dependent on the scale of loss;

- a. Op KEIR. A ceremony attended by a member of the Royal Family and a Minister, and Service Board representatives takes place on the airfield. A state band plays while bearer parties are commanded by an officer assisted by a WO. Coffins are carried from the aircraft to a hearse, one by one, in turn in order of Service precedence.
- b. Op PABBAY. A ceremony attended by a 2 star representative takes place on the airfield. A bugler/drummer/piper plays Last Post and Reveille or laments as the first and last coffins arrive and leave the area. The bearer parties are commanded by a WO.
- c. In both cases coffins are carried from the aircraft to a hearse, one by one, in turn in order of Service/capbadge precedence.

(1) Service/Corps/regimental precedence is as shown in QRs and The Army List and;

(2) Precedence within Regiments/ Corps is to be by rank and seniority not by battalion/sub-unit number.

SECTION 13 - FREEDOM AND WELCOME HOME PARADES

16.32. These Parades may take the following forms:

- a. Freedom Parades and/or
- b. 'Welcome Home' Parades (which may exercise a Freedom).

16.33. Freedom Parades. Units who have been accorded a Freedom are permitted, subject to the agreement of the appropriate Local Authority (to include Civil police), to exercise their Freedom by marching through the Borough, Town or City with 'drums beating, bayonets fixed and Colours flying'. Freedom Parades will usually take place within a unit's main regimental/recruiting area.

- a. Colours may be carried. The Colour party are to be in Full or No 1 Dress.
- b. Rifles, bayonets/sidearms and swords may be carried.
- c. When returning from operations Desert CS 95 may be chosen for wear for troops. However, dress must be consistent with that choice i.e. swords are not carried while wearing combat clothing, and footwear must be of uniform colour. For parades other than connected with recent operations No1 or No 2 Dress are to be worn.

16.34. Welcome Home' Parades. Given that unit deployments may mean a unit is not located in its home area, 'Welcome Home' Parades may take place at the invitation of the appropriate Local Authority in Boroughs, Towns and Cities near a unit's lines. Such parades may take place in Boroughs, Towns or Cities that have granted Freedoms to other units and the following guidelines for such parades are to be observed so as not to upset those holding the Freedom of the Borough, Town or City involved.

- a. The nature of ceremonial to be undertaken must be agreed with the host authority (to include Civil police). This must explicitly cover plans for the carriage of Colours, the fixing of bayonets, and musical accompaniment.
- b. While not essential, it is expected that regts/bns/units would prefer to march with weapons, and probably in op clothing, emphasising their operational aspect. It is recommended that when parades precede church services or receptions that weapons are only carried by Colour parties.¹
- c. As for Freedom Parades, dress should be uniform, i.e. no mixed accoutrements or footwear with Desert CS95. However, it would be usual for the Colour party to be in Full or No 1 Dress.
- d. It would be courteous for the Comd Offr to inform the Home HQ of the Regiment which has the Freedom of their invitation.
- e. Also, these parades may precede medal presentation. Only in exceptional operational circumstances would those being awarded medals carry weapons. Weapons inhibit the medal presenter from shaking hands with recipients.

16.35. It is recognised that units may wish to highlight their return from operations by wearing the associated clothing, often Desert Combat CS95. However, whenever possible Service Dress/No2 Dress is preferred so that medals/medal ribbons might be displayed.

16.36. Freedom/Welcome Home Parades are to be planned as well in advance as possible. Advice and guidance may be sought from the Chain of Command or PS12(A) in the first instance.

SECTION 14 - GENERAL COMPLIMENTS

16.37. All ranks should be aware of the occasions on which compliments are to be paid, direction being given at QR 8.055 - 8.061 and in The Drill Manual. In general, other ranks salute all officers, and officers salute their seniors before addressing them on duty or parade, in accordance with regimental custom. In addition, when not on parade, compliments are paid as follows:

- a. All ranks are to salute during the playing of the National Anthem.
- b. When passing any Colours or equivalent (e.g. lead RA gun or cavalry Standard/Guidon) all ranks are to salute or pay the appropriate compliment. Old Comrades banners and Royal British Legion standards are not consecrated Colours and are not saluted.
- c. All ranks passing a military, naval or air force funeral are to salute the body.
- d. When outdoors, as Last Post is played at a funeral, repatriation or Service of Remembrance officers are to salute and other ranks are to stand to attention. The salute is **not** held through any subsequent silence but all ranks remain at attention except at a funeral with a firing party present. (See paragraph 14.18.) All ranks stand to attention during Reveille but officers do not salute. (In church officers would stand but not salute.)

¹ Weapons were not carried on the Falklands Victory parade in 1982 which was followed by a Guildhall reception.

- e. An individual would salute after laying a wreath.
- f. Flag lowering. When a flag is being lowered to the playing of Last Post officers are to salute and other ranks are to stand to attention.
- g. All ranks, whether singly or in formed bodies, are to salute appropriately when passing the Cenotaph. When in plain clothes they should remove headdress (if worn), brace up and give eyes left or right as required.

GLOSSARY - DEFINITIONS

Alignment	A straight line on which a body of troops is formed or is to form.
Column	Bodies of troops one behind the other, parallel and at such distance from one another as, when formed to an angle of 90 degrees to either flank, will bring them into line.
Close Column	A column with distance reduced to suit requirements.
Column of Route	A column of three with not more than three men abreast in any part of the column, including officers and supernumeraries. The normal formation for troops marching closed up on a road.
Column of Threes	A column with its officers and supernumeraries maintaining their places as though in line.
Covering	The act of a body placing itself directly in rear of another.
Crewfront	A line on which crews fall in forward of their vehicle.
Depth	The space occupied by a body of troops from front to rear.
Directing Flank	The flank by which a body of troops takes its dressing.
Distance	The space between men or bodies of troops from front to rear.
Dressing	The act of taking up an alignment correctly.
File	A front rank man and his coverer or coverers.
Flan	Either side of a body of troops, as opposed to its front or rear.
Forming	A method of changing direction in line as opposed to wheeling.
Frontage	The extent of ground covered laterally by a body of troops.
General Salute	The salute with which any inspecting or reviewing officer, on the active list of and above the rank of Brigadier, is received, will be as laid down in Queen's Regulations 1975 para J8.042d. In the case of Field Marshals, Admirals of the Fleet and Marshals of the Royal Air Force, Regimental Colours of all forces will be lowered during the carrying out of the above salute.

Half-Company The standard size of a half-company is normally 20 men, but this may have to be varied to suit the ground.

Interval The lateral space between men or bodies of troops in the same alignment measured from flank to flank. Between dismounted troops intervals are measured from elbow to elbow. In two ranks it is 24 inches, in three ranks an arm's length with fist clenched.

Line Troops formed on the same alignment.

Mass A battalion with its companies in line of close column of platoons with five paces interval between companies.

Markers Soldiers employed to mark points on which a movement is to be directed, or by which a formation or alignment is to be regulated.

Order (Close or Open) The distance between ranks in line which is either 30 inches or 60 depending on circumstances.

Pace A measurement of distance on foot, e.g. 30 inches (or 27 inches in the case of Servicewomen). Also rate of movement.

Parade Commander The officer on parade commanding the on parading troops.

Rank A line of men side by side.

Supernumerary Rank The extra rank, fourth rank in the three ranks, or third in two ranks, formed by the senior NCOs of a body of troops.

Unit The formation carrying out the parade, the next lower formations being referred to as subordinate units.

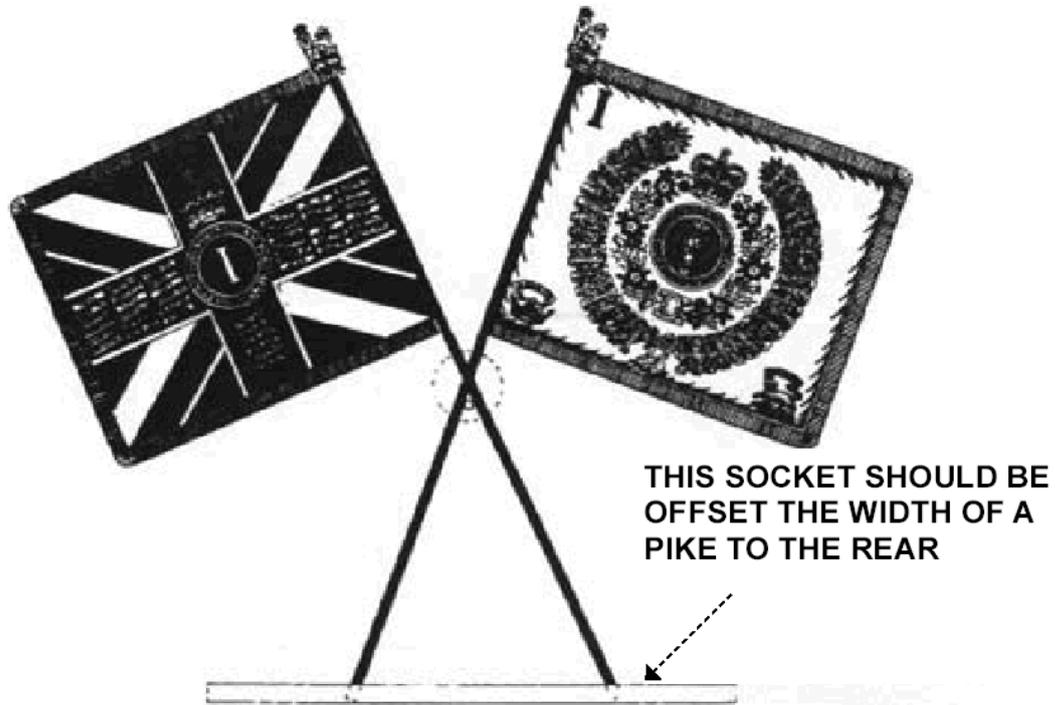
Wheeling A movement by which a body of troops changes direction, each rank or file pivoting on the inner flank but retaining its dressing.

KEY TO SYMBOLS USED IN ANNEXES

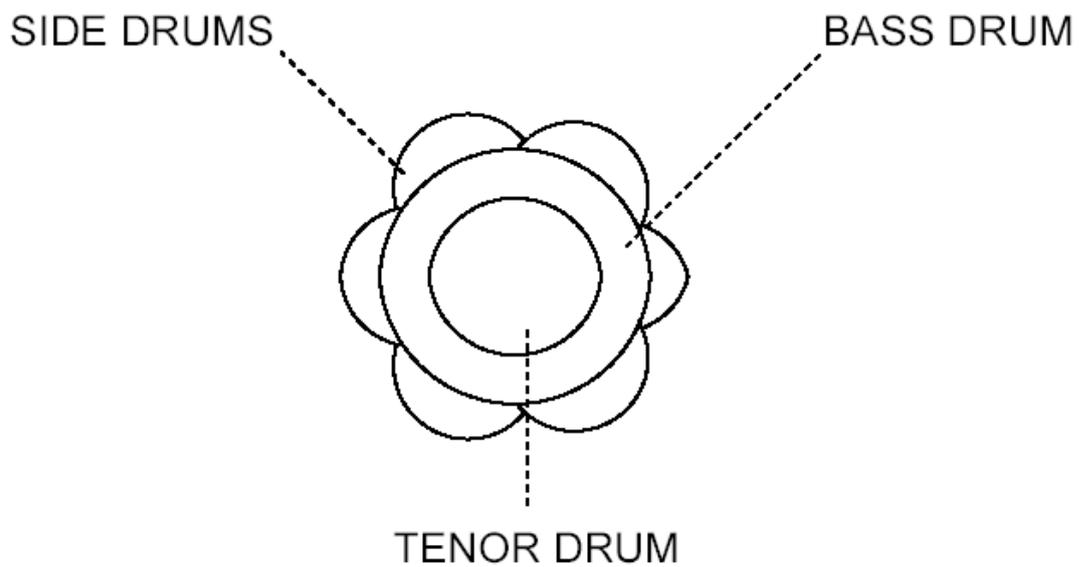
	Commanding Officer
	Second - in - command
	Adjutant
	RSM
	Squadron, Battery or Company Commander
	Squadron, Battery or Company Second - in - command
	CSM (or equivalent)
	CQMS (or equivalent)
	Platoon Commander (or equivalent)
	Other Officers
	Sergeant
	Drum Major
	Rank and File
	Front Rank
	Centre Rank
	Rear Rank
	Main Battle Tank
	Light Tank (CVR (T))
	APC
	½ Ton Wheeled Vehicle
	Right Marker
	Gun

**ANNEX A - COLOURS IN COLOUR STANDS AND PILED DRUMS
WITH COLOURS - ALL VIEWED FROM THE FRONT AS SEEN BY
THE TROOPS ON PARADE**

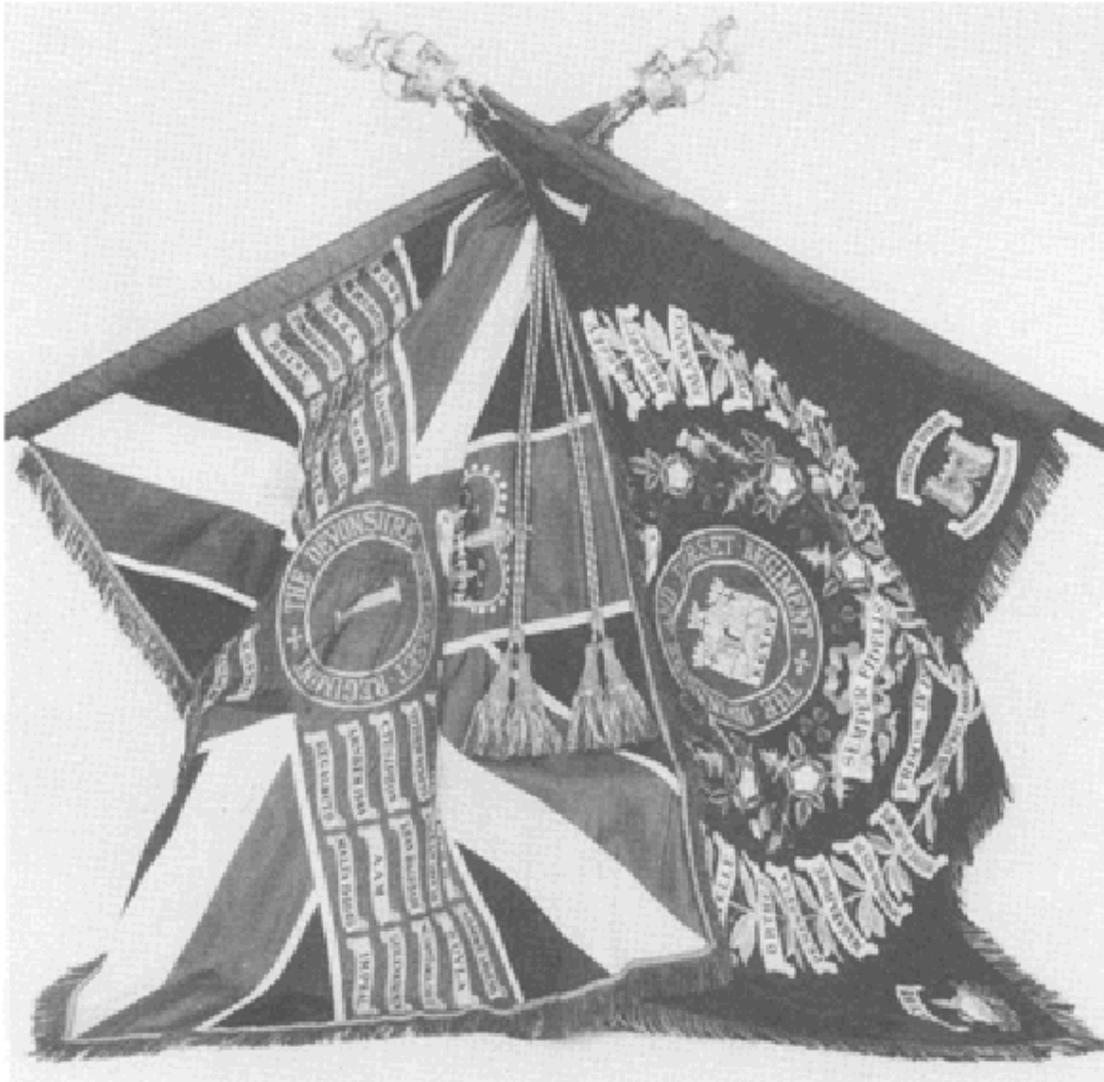
1. COLOURS IN STAND



2. LAYOUT OF PILED DRUMS

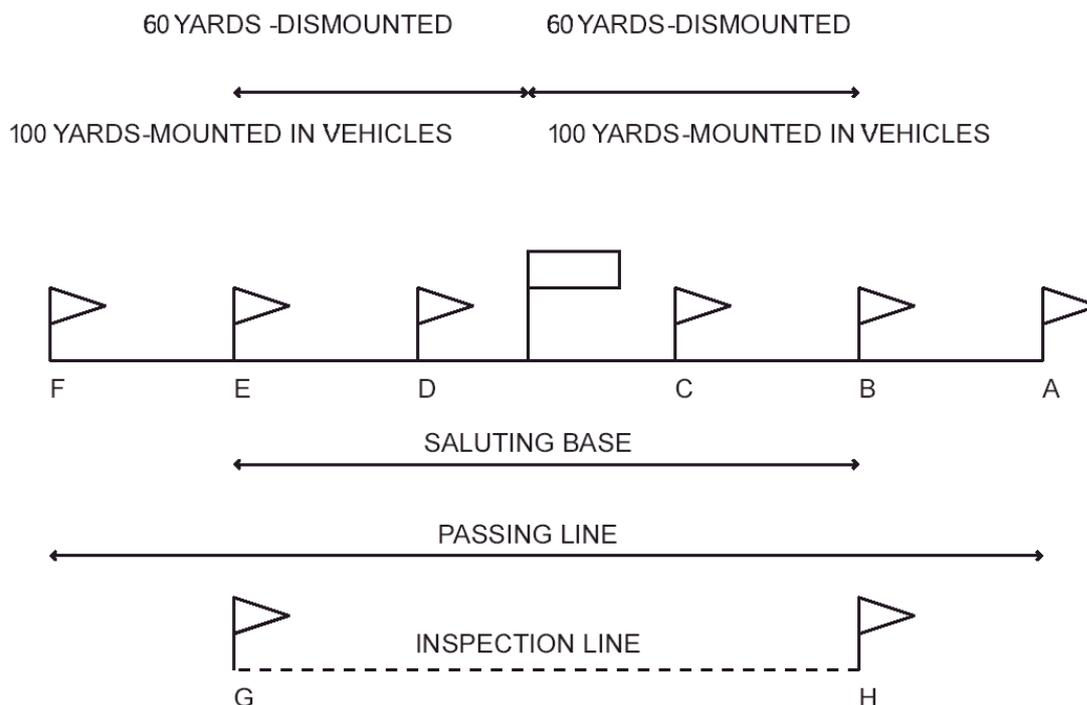


3. PILED DRUMS WITH COLOURS - GUARDS BATTALION



- NOTES:
- a. In the Colours stand the Regimental Colour's pike is placed in front of the Queen's Colour's pike crossing the right.
 - b. It is suggested that a peg be put on the tenor drum on either side on which to rest the Colour pike. It may also be an advantage to insert sockets into the parade ground for the bases of the pikes.
 - c. For all battalions the Queen's Colour has its pike crossed at the top behind that of the Regimental Colour, which holds the Colours in position and the Queen's Colour is then brought from behind to cover the Regimental Colour.

ANNEX B - THE INSPECTION OR REVIEW PARADE GROUND



1. The length of the inspection line G-H depends on the frontage of the troops being inspected. Its distance from the passing line will depend on the greatest frontage occupied by any unit when marching past, plus the depth occupied by the band or massed bands while playing troops past. When larger bodies than a brigade are being reviewed the distance may require increasing to ensure that, when troops are drawn up in line for inspection and commanders are in position at their correct distances in front of the inspection line, the commander of the parade is at a suitable distance from the passing lines in proportion to the dimensions of the parade. It may also be necessary to reduce the distances of the commanders in front of the inspection line, otherwise, in the case of the large formations, either the inspection line may be too far from the passing line or the commander of the parade too near the inspecting/reviewing officer.

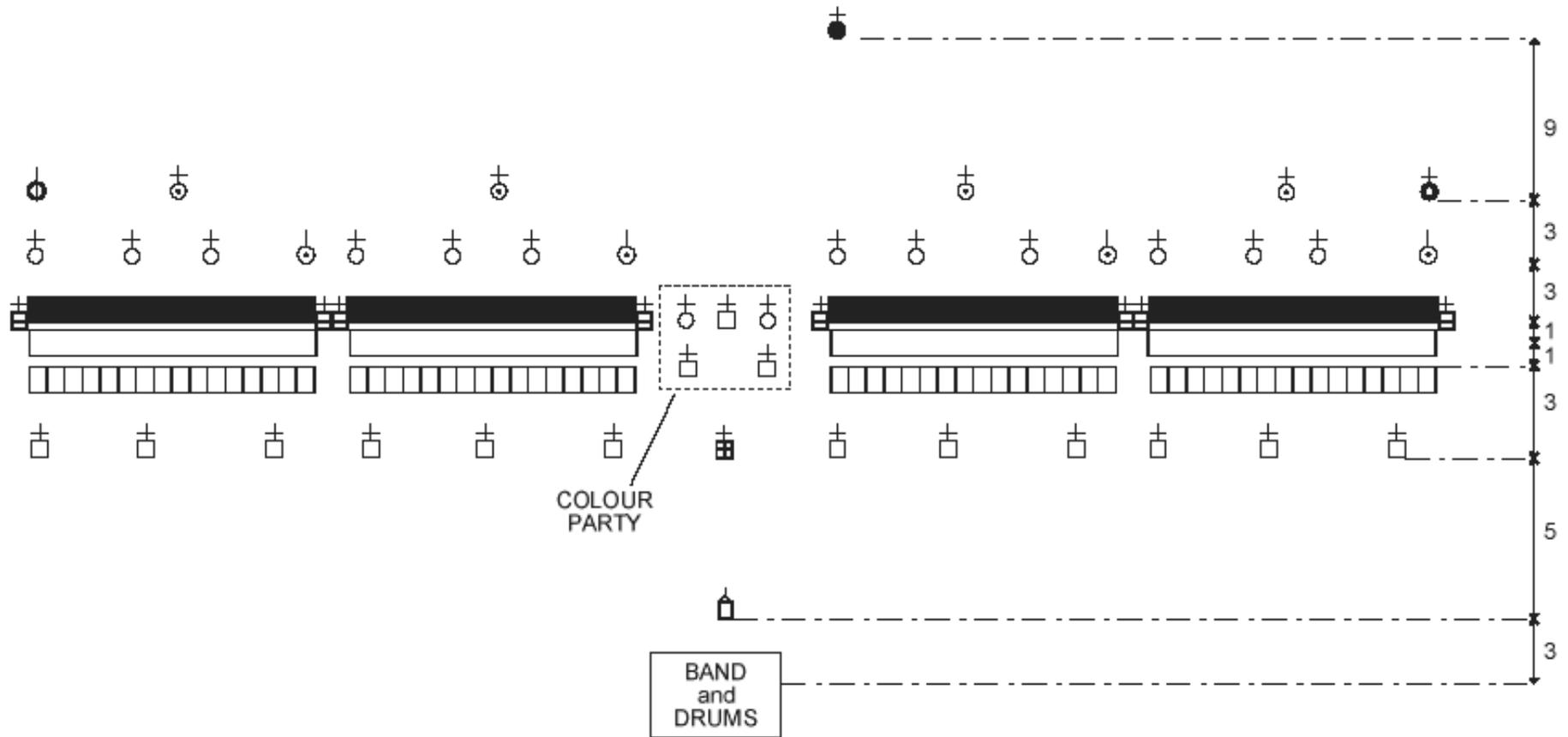
2. The length of the saluting base (B-E) will not be less than 120 nor greater than 260 yards, the distance being dependent on local conditions. The march past begins at Point B and ends at Point E. The reviewing officer will be behind the centre of the saluting base. Ten yards on each side of him, along the saluting base, are two points, C and D, at which the salute will begin and end respectively. If a march past is to take place without opening and closing order, i.e., in quick time only, Points B and E can be dispensed with: Points A and F should, however, remain at their original distances.

3. The position of the passing line A-B should be of sufficient length to enable units to obtain their direction before reaching the saluting base. Units will move up to Point B in close formation. From that point, they will adopt the formation laid down for them in the orders for the review or inspection.

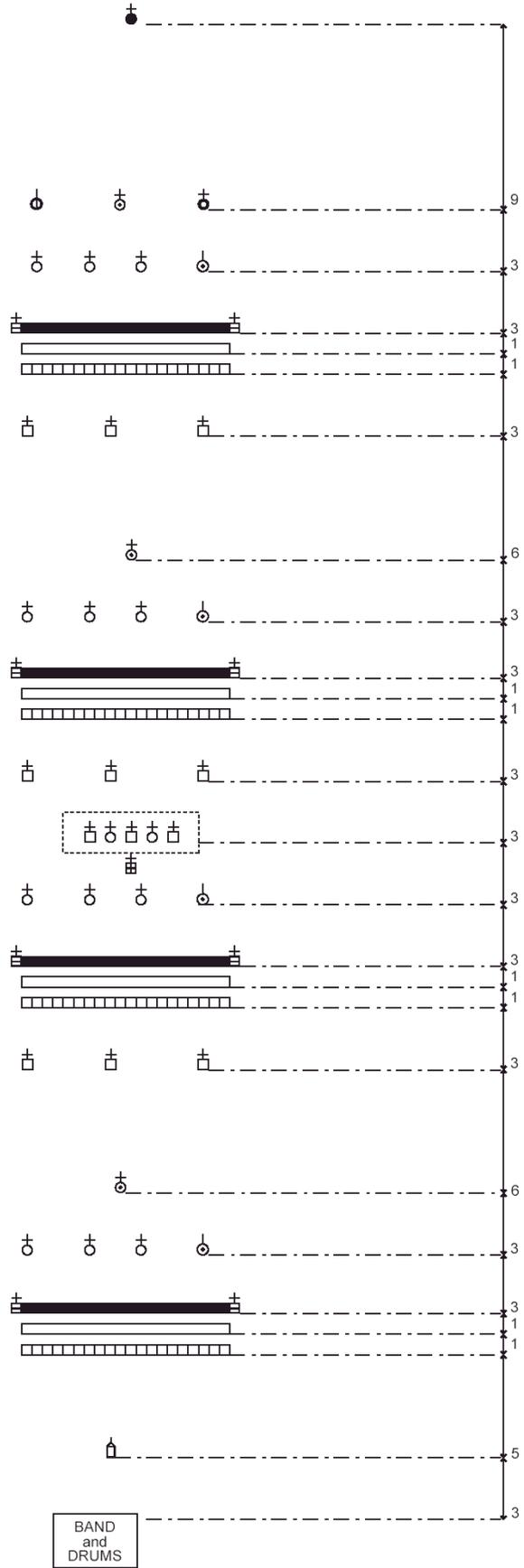
4. As a general rule the passing line will be the same length as the inspection line.

5. All points will be marked by flags or markers. Flags or posts may be set up to mark the line on which the troops are to form, or the line may be picked out or marked with whitewash. When large bodies of troops are to march past it will usually be desirable to place small coloured flags along the passing line at appropriate distances from Point B to guide units in moving off at correct distances.

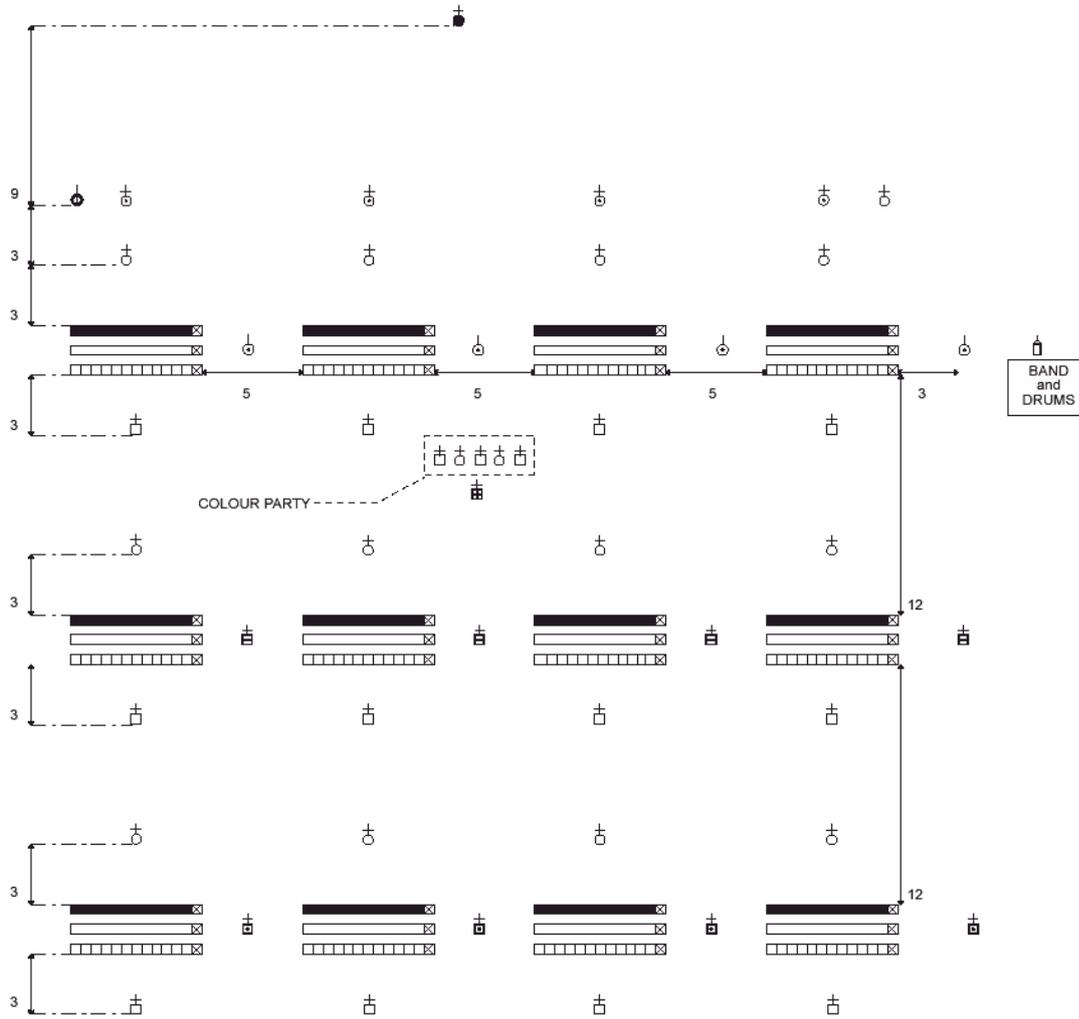
ANNEX C - A BATTALION IN LINE



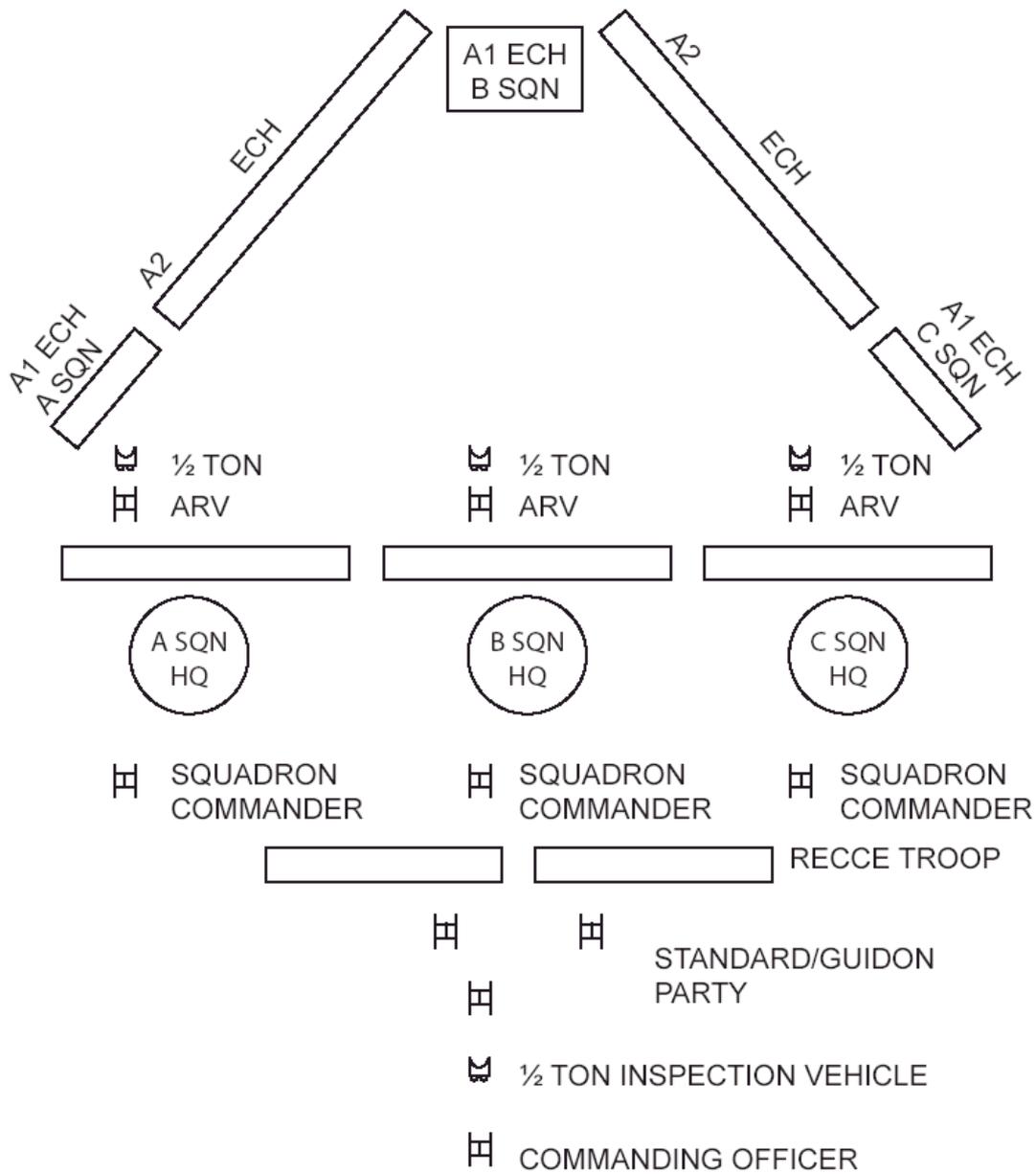
ANNEX D - A BATTALION IN CLOSE COLUMN



ANNEX E - A BATTALION IN MASS

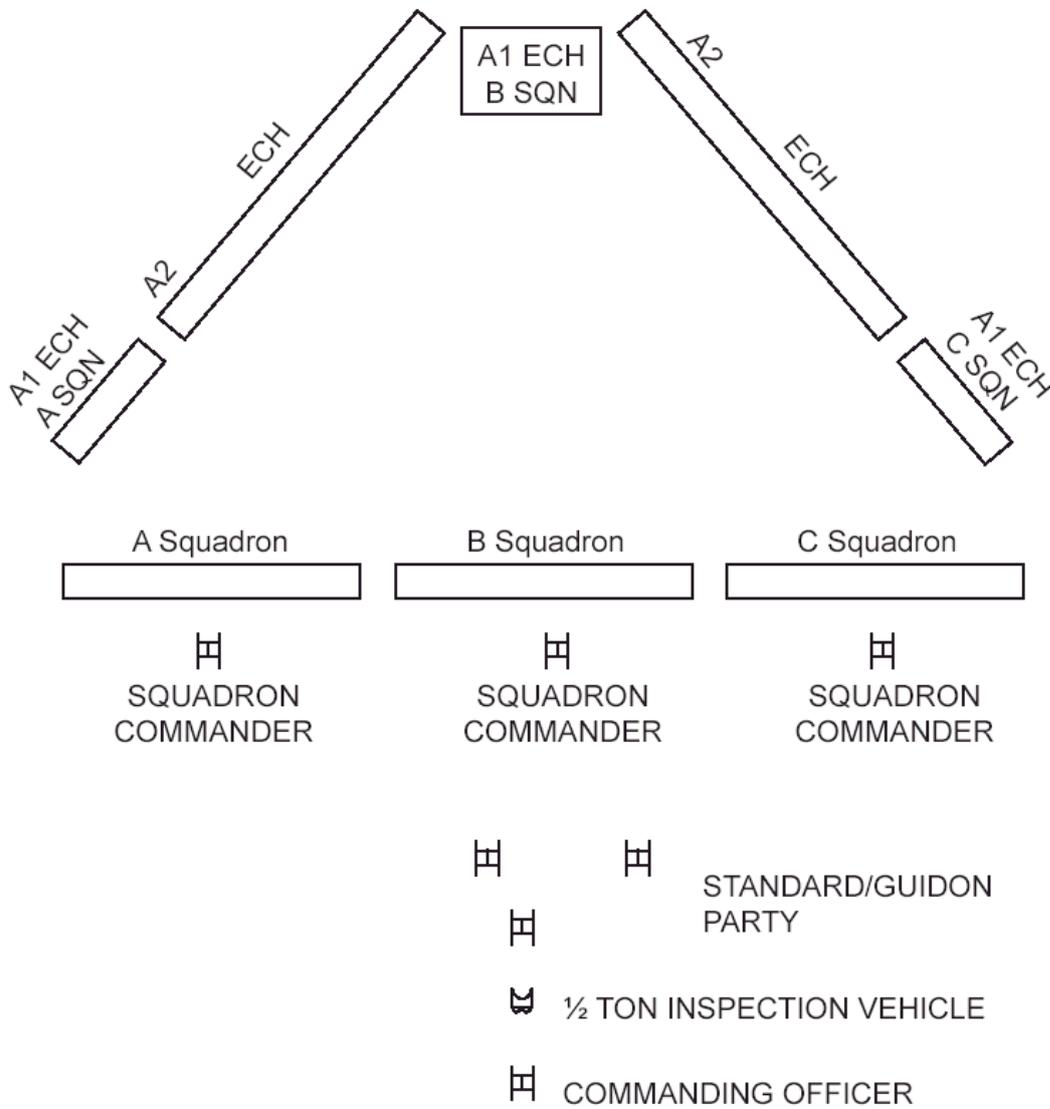


ANNEX F - ARMOURED REGIMENT FORMED UP ON PARADE WITH STANDARD/GUIDON IN POSITION



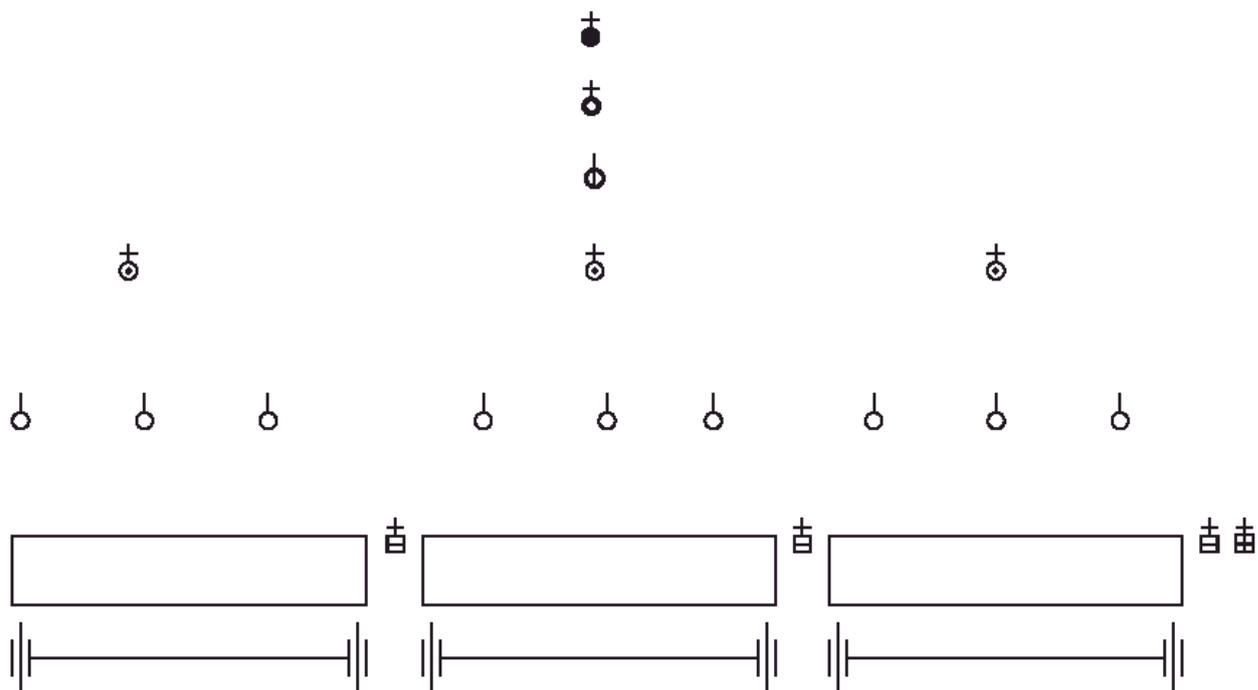
NOTE: Where there is sufficient space for the above formation, echelons will be parallel to squadrons.

ANNEX G - ARMoured RECONNAISSANCE REGIMENT FORMED UP ON PARADE WITH STANDARD/GUIDON IN POSITION



NOTE: Where there is sufficient space for the above formation, echelons will be parallel to squadrons.

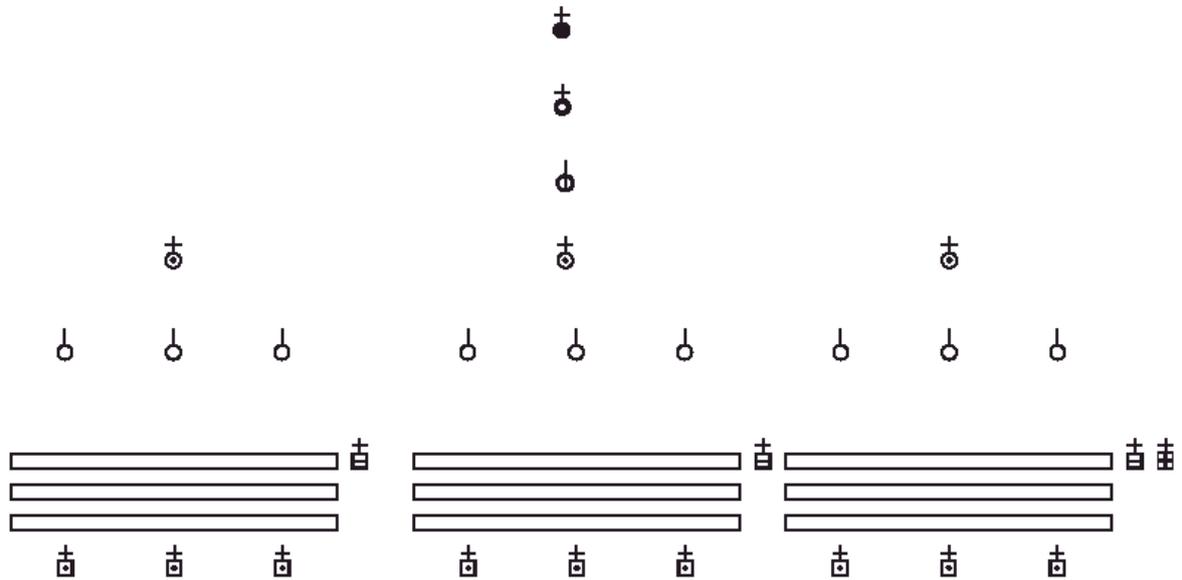
ANNEX H - A ROYAL ARTILLERY REGIMENT ON CEREMONIAL PARADE (MOUNTED)



NOTES:

1. The number of batteries and officers varies with the establishment. Headquarters Battery and other non-firing batteries may parade at the discretion of the Commanding Officer.
2. If the Second-in-command is not on parade his position will be taken by the Adjutant.
3. Officers' vehicles and crews may be either those established for the role or another vehicle and a driver as suits the purpose of the parade.
4. Battery echelon vehicles do not normally parade.

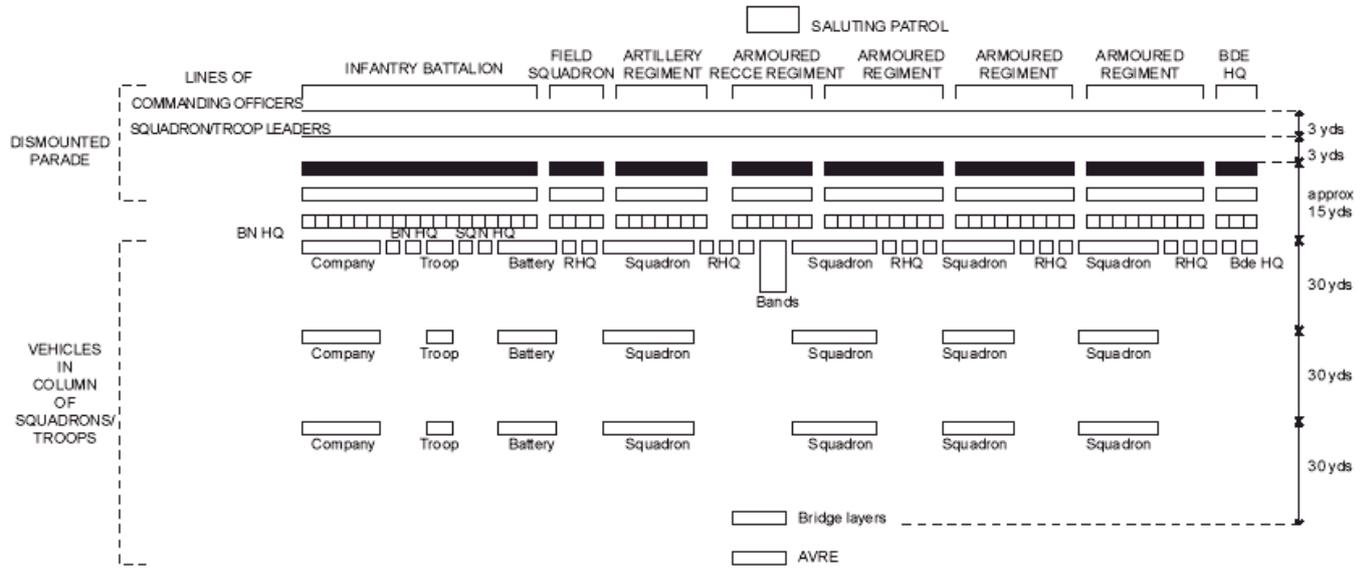
ANNEX I - A ROYAL ARTILLERY REGIMENT ON CEREMONIAL PARADE (DISMOUNTED)



NOTES:

1. The number of batteries and officers varies with the establishment.
2. If the Second-in-command is not on parade his position will be taken by the Adjutant.
3. Warrant Officers, Battery Sergeant Majors excepted, form the Serre file. Numbers vary with the establishment.

ANNEX J - REVIEW OF AN ARMoured BRIGADE



NOTES: Frontages (approximate): Dismounted, 470 yards; Mounted, 750 yards.

Intervals between units: Dismounted, 4 yards; Mounted, 6 yards.

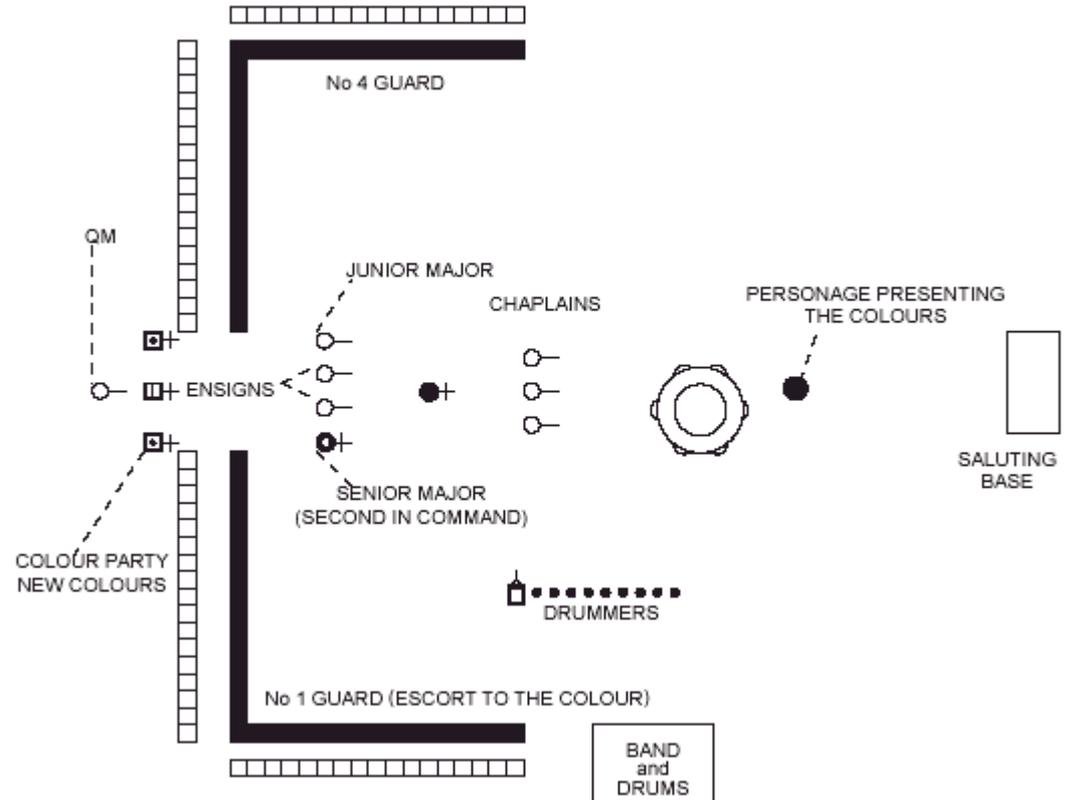
No supernumeraries on dismounted parade.

Although the Armoured Recce Regiment may not be an integral part of the Armoured Brigade, there may be one under command in some circumstances; therefore its position on parade is shown.

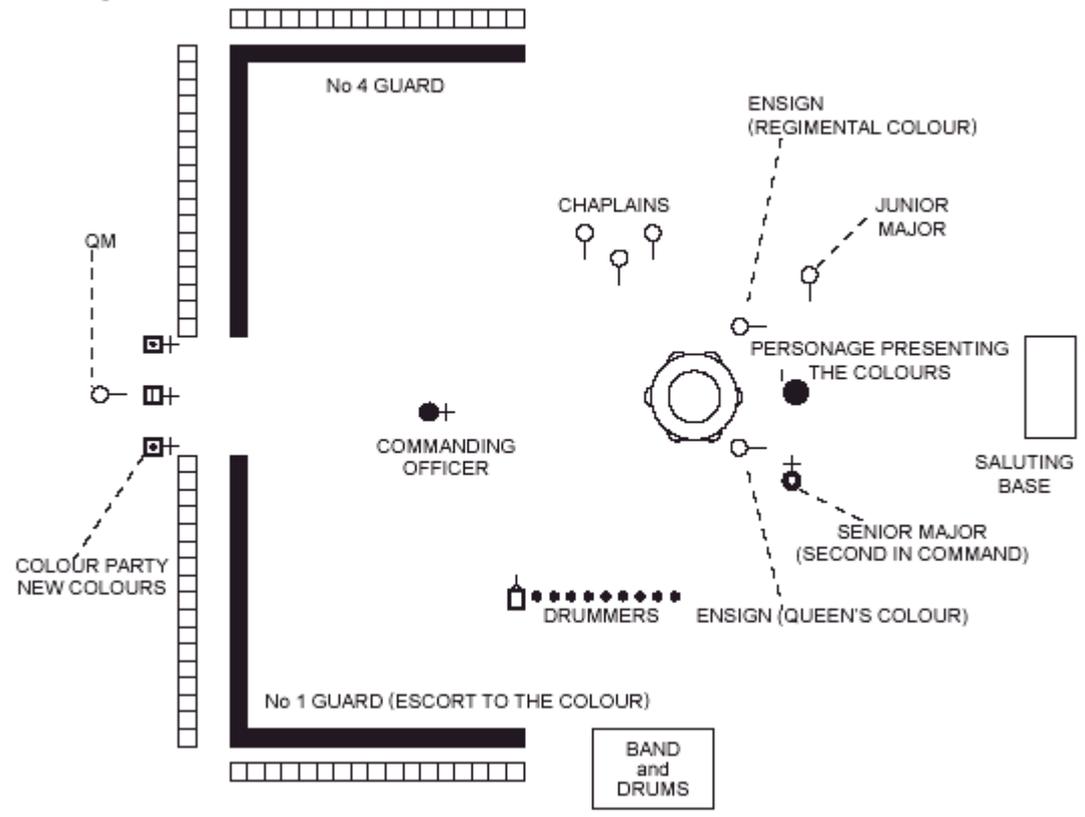
Armoured Regiment may be Armoured Infantry or mechanised bn. Numbers will vary according to role.

ANNEX K - LAYOUT FOR PRESENTATION OF NEW COLOURS

1. During the Consecration Service



2. During the Presentation



ANNEX L - AN INFANTRY BATTALION MOUNTED IN APCS



 COMPANY COMMANDER



 COMPANY COMMANDER



2 IC

COMPANY
COMMANDER

COMPANY
COMMANDER

COMPANY
COMMANDER

ADJT



RECCE TROOP



½ TON INSPECTION VEHICLE



COMMANDING OFFICER



SALUTING BASE

BANDS
and
DRUMS

Army Code No. 70166

The Drill Manual

Prepared under the direction
of the Chief of the General Staff
Ministry of Defence
December 2017
Crown Copyright Reserved

2017

AMENDMENTS

Amendment No.	Date of Insertion	Amendment No.	Date of Insertion

DISTRIBUTION

Regular Army:	
Arms and Services	Scale C
AADW, ASC, Vimy Barracks, ITC Catterick	300 copies
Royal Military Academy, Sandhurst	150 copies
Reserve Army:	
Arms and Services	Scale C
Royal Navy and Royal Marines	400 copies
Royal Air Force	400 copies

FOR THE ATTENTION OF ALL SCALE HOLDERS

Units requiring amendments to their scales should apply to Forms & Publications Branch who will arrange for a revised distribution. Any proposals to exceed the A-F scale must first be referred by Forms & Publications Branch to the sponsor. Further information regarding the issue of publications is contained in the Catalogue of Army Publications Part II (Army Code No. 12123) and in Command etc., Standing Instructions and Routine Orders. In order to achieve maximum efficiency in the management of Forms & Publications transactions, units should nominate a responsible Publications Control Officer.

FOREWORD

1. This Infantry sponsored Drill Manual replaces the 1990 edition. It does not include drill for the Self Loading Rifle or Sub Machine Gun. The impetus for this rewrite is the introduction of the L22A2 Carbine. Pistol Drill is retained. Drill for Rifle Regiments is contained in The Rifles Drill Manual (Army Code No. 72061). The pamphlet is written in lesson form for ease of reference of all instructors.
2. Any person wishing to propose amendments should submit them in writing to The All Arms Drill Wing, ASC, Infantry Training Centre Support Battalion, Helles Barracks, Catterick Garrison, North Yorkshire, DL9 4HH. All such proposals will be given consideration and, if there is a requirement for them, the appropriate amendments will be prepared and submitted to HQ The Director of Infantry for approval and publication.

CONTENTS

Distribution
Foreword
Contents
Illustrations
Definitions
Introduction

CHAPTER 1 - NOTES FOR DRILL INSTRUCTORS

Section 1. - General
Section 2. - The Word of Command
Section 3. - Aids to Drill
Section 4. - The Sequence of Instruction
Section 5. - Compliments

CHAPTER 2 - FOOT DRILL AT THE HALT, MARCHING AND DRILL IN LINE

Introduction
Lesson 1. - Positions of Attention, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy at the Halt
Instructor's Notes - Forming Up in Three Ranks and Dressing
Lesson 2. - Dressing in Three Ranks
Lesson 3. - Open Order at the Halt - Front Rank and Close Order at the Halt - Rear Rank
Lesson 4. - Close Order at the Halt - Front Rank and Open Order at the Halt - Rear Rank
Lesson 5. - Turnings at the Halt - Left and Right Turns
Lesson 6. - Turnings at the Halt - About Turn
Lesson 7. - Inclinations to the Right and Left at the Halt
Lesson 8. - Saluting to the Front at the Halt
Lesson 9. - Saluting to the Right and Left Flank at the Halt
Lesson 10. - Saluting to the Right and Left Flank on the March
Instructor's Notes - Paying of Compliments
Lesson 11. - Dismissing and Falling Out
Lesson 12. - The Side Pace
Instructor's Notes - Marching
Lesson 13. - Marching and Halting in Quick Time
Instructor's Notes - Getting on Parade, Numbering, Proving and Sizing
Lesson 14. - Turnings to the Right and Left Flank in Quick Time and Inclining
Lesson 15. - The About Turn in Quick Time
Lesson 16. - The Change Step in Quick Time
Lesson 17. - Marking Time in Quick Time at the Halt - Halting from Marking Time in Quick Time
Lesson 18. - Marking Time in Quick Time - Forward from Marking Time in Quick Time
Lesson 19. - Changing Step whilst Marking Time at the Halt in Slow and Quick Time
Lesson 20. - Marching and Halting in Slow Time
Lesson 21. - Turnings to the Right and Left Flank in Slow Time
Lesson 22. - The About Turn in Slow Time
Instructor's Notes - Inclining and Wheeling in Slow and Quick Time
Lesson 23. - Change Step in Slow Time on the March
Lesson 24. - Marking Time and Halting from Marking Time in Slow Time at the Halt
Lesson 25. - Marking Time in Slow Time and Forward from Marking Time in Slow Time
Lesson 26. - Breaking into Slow Time from Quick Time
Lesson 27. - Breaking into Quick Time from Slow Time
Instructor's Notes - Drill in Line:

- a. Introduction
 - b. Marching in Line in Slow and Quick Time
 - c. Open and Close Order in Slow Time
 - d. Changing Direction by Forming
 - e. The Blank File
 - f. Forming from the Halt to the Halt
 - g. Forming from Marching to the Halt
 - h. Forming on the March
 - i. Marching Off in Single File and Reform on the March
 - j. Forming Squad
 - k. Forming Three Ranks from Two Ranks and Two Ranks from Three Ranks (Advanced Method)
- Lesson 28. - Forming Three Ranks from Two Ranks and Two Ranks from Three Ranks

CHAPTER 3 - RIFLE AND CARBINE EXERCISES

PART 1. Rifle Exercises:

Introduction

- Lesson 1. - Positions of Attention, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy with the Rifle at the Shoulder
- Lesson 2. - The Change Arms at the Shoulder
- Lesson 3. - The Slope Arms from the Shoulder
- Lesson 4. - The Shoulder Arms from the Slope
- Lesson 5. - The Change Arms at the Slope
- Lesson 6. - The Present Arms from the Slope
- Lesson 7. - The Slope Arms from the Present
- Lesson 8. - The Fixing of Bayonets
- Lesson 9. - The Unfixing of Bayonets
- Lesson 10. - The Ground Arms from the Shoulder
- Lesson 11. - The Take Up Arms from the Ground Arms
- Lesson 12. - Saluting to the Front at the Halt
- Lesson 13. - Saluting to a Flank at the Halt
- Lesson 14. - Saluting to a Flank on the March
- Lesson 15. - The Recover Arms from the Slope
- Lesson 16. - The Slope Arms from the Recover
- Lesson 17. - The On Guard from the Slope
- Lesson 18. - The Slope Arms from the On Guard
- Lesson 19. - The High Port Arms from the Slope
- Lesson 20. - The Slope Arms from the High Port

PART 2. Carbine Exercises:

Introduction

- Lesson 21. - The Change Arms at the Shoulder
- Lesson 22. - The Slope Arms from the Shoulder
- Lesson 23. - The Shoulder Arms from the Slope
- Lesson 24. - The Change Arms at the Slope
- Lesson 25. - The Present Arms from the Slope
- Lesson 26. - The Ground Arms from the Shoulder
- Lesson 27. - The Take up Arms from the Ground Arms

CHAPTER 4 - SWORD DRILL

Introduction

- Lesson 1. - Draw Swords
 - Lesson 2. - Return Swords
 - Lesson 3. - Slope Swords, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy and the Salute at the Halt
 - Lesson 4. - Saluting on the March in Slow and Quick Time
- Instructor's Notes - Mounted Sword Drill

CHAPTER 5 - STANDARDS, GUIDONS AND COLOURS

- Section 1. - A Short History of Colours
- Section 2. - Infantry Colours
- Section 3. - Procedure for Casings, Uncasings and Dressing the Colours
- Section 4. - Procedure for Marching Colours On and Off a Ceremonial Parade
- Section 5. - Rules for Carrying and Lowering Standards, Guidons and Colours
- Section 6. - Colour Drill
- Section 7. - Colours in Messes and at Divine Service
- Section 8. - Standards and Guidons

CHAPTER 6 - CANE AND WHIP DRILL

- Lesson 1. - Position of Attention and Stand at Ease
 - Lesson 2. - Marching and Dismissing
 - Lesson 3. - Halting
 - Lesson 4. - Saluting at the Halt
- Instructor's Notes: Saluting
- a. Saluting to a Flank - Right or Left - On the March
 - b. Saluting to the Front

CHAPTER 7 - PISTOL DRILL

- For Inspection - Draw Pistols
- Examine Pistols
- Return Pistols After Inspection
- Prove Pistols

CHAPTER 8 - THE PACE-STICK

- Introduction
- History
- The Object of Pace-Stick Drill
- Pace-Stick Drill at the Halt (Stick Closed)
- Pace-Stick Drill at the Halt (Stick Open)
- Pace-Stick Drill on the March - Stick Closed
- Saluting
- Pace-Stick Drill on the March - Stick Open
- Pace-Stick Drill in Slow Time
- Pace-Stick Drill in Quick Time

CHAPTER 9 - FUNERAL PLANNING AND PROCEDURES, RIFLE EXERCISES, SWORD AND PISTOL DRILLS

PART 1 - PLANNING AND PROCEDURES

- Introduction
- Planning and Liaison
- Detailed Procedures and Drills at a Funeral
- Foot Drill at a Funeral with the Rifle

PART 2 - FUNERAL RIFLE EXERCISES

- Lesson 1. - The Reverse Arms from the Slope
- Lesson 2. - The Slope Arms from the Reverse
- Lesson 3. - The Change Arms at the Reverse
- Lesson 4. - Lower on your Arms Reversed from the Present Arms
- Lesson 5. - The Present Arms from the Lower on your Arms Reversed
- Lesson 6. - Volleys with Blank Cartridges

PART 3 - FUNERAL SWORD DRILL

- Lesson 1. - The Reverse Swords from the Carry
- Lesson 2. - The Carry Swords from the Reverse
- Lesson 3. - The Change Swords at the Reverse
- Lesson 4. - The Lower on Your Swords Reversed from the Present
- Lesson 5. - The Present from the Lower on Your Swords Reversed

CHAPTER 10 - RIFLES DRILL

- Introduction
- History
- Basic Principles - The Rifles
- Basic Principles - The Royal Gurkha Rifles
- On Parade with Non Rifles Units
- Timings
- Bands

CHAPTER 11 - GUARDS AND SENTRIES

- Introduction
- Ceremonial Guard
- The Barrack Guard
- Guard Mounting
- Relieving, Posting and Dismissing a Guard
- Changing Arms During Guard Mounting
- Guards Turning Out
- Posting Sentries
- Relieving Sentries
- Dismissing a Relief
- Challenging
- Sentry Drill
- Single Sentry Drill
- Patrolling
- Double Sentry Drill
- Compliments on the Beat

CHAPTER 12 - COMPANY DRILL

- Introduction
- Formations
- Dressing a Company in Une
- Dressing a Company in Column or Close Column
- Forming Up in Close Column of Platoons with the Drum
- Telling Off by Platoons after Inspection
- Forming Up in Close Column of Platoons without a Drum
- Falling In and Falling Out the Officers

At the Halt in Close Column of Platoons required to Move to the Right in Column of Threes
 At the Halt in Column of Platoons required to Form Line Facing a Flank and Halted
 On the March in Column of Threes required to Form Close Column of Platoons Facing a Flank and Halted
 On the March in Column of Platoons required to Form Column of Threes
 On the March in Column of Platoons required to Change Direction by Forming
 On the March in Column of Threes required to Advance in Column of Platoons Facing Left
 At the Halt in Line required to Form Column of Platoons Facing the Same Direction

CHAPTER 13 - BATTALION DRILL

Introduction
 Formations
 Dressing

At Ease in Mass required to Move Off in Column of Threes
 On the March in Column of Threes required to Form Mass
 At Ease in Close Column of Companies required to Move Off in Column of Route
 On the March in Column of Threes required to Form Close Column of Companies

ANNEXES

- A Table for Timing Words of Command
- B The Introductory Word of Command
- C Time and Pace
- D The Procedures for a Pace Sticking Competition
- E Notes for Inspecting Officers

ILLUSTRATIONS

CHAPTER 2 - FOOT DRILL

Figure

- 1 Position of Attention - Front and Side Views
- 2 Stand at Ease - Front and Rear Views
- 3 Stand Easy - Front and Rear Views
- 4 Right Dress - Front View
- 5 Left Turn at the Halt - First and Second Positions
- 6 Right Turn at the Halt - First and Second Positions
- 7 About Turn at the Halt - Side and Rear Views
- 8 Saluting to the Front at the Halt - Forage Cap and Beret
- 9 Saluting to the Right Flank - Front View -Forage Cap and Beret
- 10 Saluting to the Right Flank - Side View - Forage Cap and Beret
- 11 Saluting to the Left Flank - Front and Side Views
- 12 Side Pace Left - First and Second Positions
- 13 Marching in Quick Time - Left and Right Foot Forward
- 14 Halting in Quick Time - First and Second Positions
- 15 Right Turn in Quick Time - Second and Third Positions
- 16 Left Turn in Quick Time - Second and Third Positions
- 17 About Turn in Quick Time - First and Second Positions
- 18 Change Step in Quick Time - Second Position
- 19 Marching in Slow Time - Left Foot - First and Second Positions
- 20 Marching in Slow Time - Right Foot
- 21 Halting in Slow Time - First and Second Positions
- 22 Right Turn in Slow Time - First and Second Positions
- 23 Left Turn in Slow Time- First and Second Positions
- 24 About Turn in Slow Time- First and Second Positions

25 Change Step in Slow Time - First and Second Positions
26-29 Reserved

CHAPTER 3 - RIFLE AND CARBINE EXERCISES

PART 1

Figure

3-1-1	Position of Attention at the Shoulder
3-1-2	Stand at Ease
3-1-3	Stand Easy
3-2-1	Change Arms - One and Squad Two
3-2-2	Change Arms - Squad Three and Four
3-3-1	Slope Arms - One and Squad Two
3-3-2	Slope Arms - Squad Three
3-4-1	Shoulder Arms - One and Squad Two
3-4-2	Shoulder Arms - Squad Three and Four
3-5-1	Change Arms - One and Squad Two
3-5-2	Change Arms - Squad Three and Four
3-6-1	Present Arms - One and Squad Two
3-6-2	Present Arms - Squad Three - Front and Side Views
3-7-1	Slope Arms from the Present - One and Squad Two
3-8-1	Fix Bayonets - Fix - Front and Rear Views
3-8-2	Fix Bayonets - Bayonets and Shun
3-9-1	Unfix Bayonets - Unfix - First and Second Movements
3-9-2	Unfix Bayonets - Third Movement
3-9-3	Unfix Bayonets - Bayonets
3-9-4	Unfix Bayonets - Shun - First and Second Movements
3-10-1	Ground Arms from the Shoulder - One and Squad Two
3-10-2	Ground Arms from the Shoulder - Squad Three and Four
3-10-3	Ground Arms - Final Position
3-12-1	Salute to the Front
3-13-1	Salute to the Right
3-13-2	Salute to the Left
3-14-1	Salute to the Right on the March - Squad One - Both Movements
3-14-2	Salute to the Right on the March - Squad Six
3-15-1	Recover Arms - One and Squad Two
3-17-1	On Guard from the Slope - One and Squad Two
3-17-2	On Guard from the Slope - Squad Three
3-19-1	High Port Arms - One and Squad Two

PART 2

Figure

3-21-1	Change Arms - One and Squad Two
3-21-2	Change Arms - Squad Three and Four
3-22-1	Slope Arms - One - Front and Side views
3-22-2	Slope Arms - Squad Two and Three
3-23-1	Shoulder Arms - One and Squad Two
3-23-2	Shoulder Arms - Squad Three - Front and Side views
3-23-3	Shoulder Arms - Squad Four - Front and Side views
3-24-1	Change Arms - One and Squad Two
3-24-2	Change Arms - Squad Three and Four
3-25-1	Present Arms - One and Squad Two
3-25-2	Present Arms - Squad Three
3-26-1	Ground Arms from the Shoulder - One and Squad Two
3-26-2	Ground Arms from the Shoulder - Squad Three and Four
3-27-1	Take up Arms from the Ground Arms - One and Squad Two
3-27-2	Take up Arms from the Ground Arms - Squad Three and Four

3-27-3 Take up Arms from the Ground Arms - Squad Five - Final position of Attention

CHAPTER 4 - SWORD DRILL

Figure

- 65 Position of Attention - Sam Browne Belt
- 66 Position of Attention - Slung Sword
- 67 Draw Swords - One - Two - The Recover
- 68 Draw Swords - Three - The Carry
- 69 Return Swords - One and Squad Two
- 70 Slope Swords
- 71 Stand at Ease - Slung Sword
- 72 Stand Easy - Slung Sword
- 73 Salute to the Front - Second Movement
- 74 Salute to the Left or Right - The Flourish - One and Squad Two
- 75 Salute to the Left or Right - Squad Three and Four
- 76-79 Reserved

CHAPTER 5 - STANDARDS, GUIDONS AND COLOURS

Figure

- 80 The Order
- 81 Stand at Ease
- 82 The Carry from the Order - First and Second Positions
- 83 The Colour Lowered
- 84 The Colour Lowered when Marching in Slow Time
- 85 Drums Arrangement
- 86 Colours Laid on Drums - Guards Battalion
- 87 Colours Laid on Drums - Line Battalion
- 88-89 Reserved

CHAPTER 6 - CANE AND WHIP DRILL

Figure

- 90 The Cane and Whip
- 91 Position of Attention
- 92 Stand at Ease - Front and Rear Views
- 93 Quick March - First and Second Positions
- 94 Quick March -Third Position
- 95 The Halt - First and Final Positions
- 96 Salute at the Halt
- 97-99 Reserved

CHAPTER 8 - THE PACE STICK

Figure

- 100 The Pace Stick
- 101 Position of Attention - Stick Closed - At the Carry and At the Shoulder
- 102 Stand at Ease - At the Shoulder - Front and Rear Views
- 103 Stand Easy - At the Shoulder
- 104 Position of Attention - Stick Open
- 105 Stand at Ease - Stick Open
- 106 Stick at the Trail on the March - First and Final Positions
- 107 Stick at the Shoulder on the March
- 108 Salute to the Front - Stick Open and Closed
- 109 Salute to the Right - Stick Open and Closed
- 110 Salute to the Left - Stick Open and Closed

- 111 Stick at the Carry on the March - Right and Left Hand
- 112 Change Sticks - Right Hand to Left Hand and Left Hand to Right Hand
- 113 Proving Sticks
- 114-119 Reserved

CHAPTER 9 - FUNERAL PLANNING AND PROCEDURES, RIFLE EXERCISES, SWORD AND PISTOL DRILLS

Figure

- 120 Dressing the Coffin - Officer and Other Rank
- 121 Prepare to Lift
- 122 Raise - Final Position
- 123 Outwards
- 124 Turn
- 125 Support Poles and Straps over the Grave
- 126 Lower to the Supports
- 127 Prepare to Lift - Lift
- 128 Lowering the Coffin
- 129 Reverse Arms - Squad Two and Three
- 130 Reverse Arms - Final Position
- 131 Change Arms - One and Squad Two
- 132 Change Arms - Final Position
- 133 Lower on Your Arms Reversed - One - Side and Front Views
- 134 Lower on Your Arms Reversed - Squad Two - Mid Movement
- 135 Lower on Your Arms Reversed - Squad Three and Final Position
- 136 Present Arms from Lower on Your Arms Reversed - Party and Present Arms One
- 137 Volleys with Blank Cartridges - Squad Three
- 138 Volleys with Blank Cartridges - Present - Side and Front Views
- 139 Reverse Swords from the Carry - First and Second Positions
- 140 Change Swords at the Reverse - One and Squad Two
- 141 Change Swords at the Reverse - Final Position
- 142-145 Reserved

CHAPTER 12 - COMPANY DRILL

Figure

- 146 Key to Diagrams
- 147 A Company in Line
- 148 A Company in Column of Threes
- 149 A Company in Column of Route
- 150 A Company in Column of Platoons
- 151 A Company in Close Column of Platoons
- 152 Reserved

CHAPTER 13 - BATTALION DRILL

Figure

- 153 A Battalion in Line
- 154 A Battalion in Column of Threes
- 155 A Battalion in Column of Route
- 156 A Battalion in Column of Companies
- 157 A Battalion in Close Column of Companies
- 158 A Battalion in Mass

ANNEX B

Figure
159 The Introductory Word of Command

DEFINITIONS

Alignment - A straight line on which a body of troops is formed or is to form.

Covering - The act of placing oneself directly behind another body.

Depth - The space occupied by a body of troops from front to rear.

Distance - The space between men or bodies from front to rear.

Dressing - The act of aligning oneself with and covering others within a body of troops.

File -

- a. Either two or three men in different ranks who are covering each other.
- b. A body of troops in two ranks facing a flank.

Single File - Men one behind another on a frontage of one at normal marching distance.

Blank File - A file in which there is no centre and rear man, or no centre man, due to the inequality of numbers within a body of troops. This file is the second from the left in three ranks and the third from the left in two ranks.

Flank - Either side of a body of troops as opposed to its front or rear.

Directing Flank - The flank by which a body of troops takes its dressing.

Frontage - The extent of ground covered laterally by a body of troops, measured from flank to flank.

Interval - The lateral space measured between men or bodies of troops on the same alignment

Line - Troops formed on the same alignment

Markers - Soldiers employed to mark points on which a movement is to be directed, or by which a formation or alignment is to be regulated.

Order (Close or Open) - The distance between ranks in line which is either 750 mm (30 inches) or 1500 mm (60 inches) depending on circumstances.

Rank - A line of men side by side.

Supernumerary Rank - The extra rank, fourth rank in three ranks, or third in two ranks, formed by the senior NCOs of a body of troops.

THE DRILL MANUAL

INTRODUCTION

The Aim of Drill

1. The aim of drill is to:
 - a. Produce a soldier who is proud, alert and obedient
 - b. Provide the basis of teamwork and engender collective discipline.

The Means to an End

2. Military discipline is founded on drill. Drill has often been used as a forerunner to great battles, and during them it justifies itself. When victory is won, a parade, in whatever place, will most quickly restore the corporate unity of any body of men.
3. Whenever drill is taught or practised those in command must stress its object. It must never be used as a punishment, but always as a means of raising standards within a body of men.

The Use of the Manual

4. This manual is a book of reference for instructors and is written in lesson form.

Funeral Procedures

5. Funeral Procedures are given in Chapter 9 and include all Rifle Exercises and Sword Drills.

Some Definitions

6. Definitions are given on Page xix. Two further definitions are:
 - a. *Squad*. This means a sub-unit formed for drill and is used throughout to avoid explanations.
 - b. *Regulation Pause*. This refers to the short pause between two movements of drill which is the equivalent of two marching paces in quick time, i.e., 40 movements to the minute.

The Parade

7. Below are laid out some guiding principles for parades:
 - a. A parade should start with an inspection of all who are on it.
 - b. A strict observance of rank should be shown; thus an officer or soldier, when he wishes to either join or leave parade, should report to the senior rank and ask permission to do so.
 - c. Soldiers should not walk across a parade ground when drill, in which they have no part, is taking place.
 - d. The form and purpose of a parade should be planned beforehand by those who are to command it.
 - e. At the end of a parade all ranks 'Dismiss' to show respect to the senior rank on parade.

Chapter 1

NOTES FOR DRILL INSTRUCTORS

SECTION 1 - GENERAL

Introduction

0101. The aim of drill is written on Page xxi. All who teach and learn drill, must know this object. This chapter is devoted to the instructor and is aimed as much at those who teach potential instructors as the instructors themselves.

The Qualities of an Instructor

0102. Drill is exacting and to teach it successfully you must have the following qualities:
- a. *Patience*. Never lose your temper.
 - b. *Enthusiasm*. You must inspire your squad with a will to learn.
 - c. *Consistency*. Set yourself and the squad a standard. Do not deviate from it.
 - d. *Humanity*. Understand the squad's problems. Praise readily but do not become familiar, never humiliate individual members of the squad.
 - e. *Personality*. As a drill instructor you must impress your squad with your personality and always control them fully.

Example

0103. Recruits imitate their instructors and it is by example that they will learn most. Therefore:

- a. When drilling a squad, stand at attention.
- b. When moving, march as you would wish your squad to march.
- c. When demonstrating, do so accurately and, if the movement is with a rifle, cane, etc., use that article and nothing else.
- d. Do not use bad language.
- e. Be impeccably turned out
- f. Never exaggerate a movement of drill.

Words

0104. Use short, precise words which convey the speed of good drill, e.g., "*Strike*" "*Force*", "*Grip*", but remember - '**Action not Words**'.

SECTION 2 - THE WORD OF COMMAND

Words of Command

0105. All words of command must be clear and powerful since the way in which they are given affects the reaction which they inspire. A word of command is divided into three parts:

- a. *Introductory*. This tells the squad what movement they are about to carry out, i.e., "**MOVE TO THE RIGHT IN THREES**".
- b. *Cautionary*. The drawn out and loud reminder to the squad, i.e., "**RIGHT**".
- c. *Executive*. The high pitched, sharp command, i.e., "**TURN!**".

0106. Sometimes there is no need for an introductory word of command, i.e., "**SQUAD - SHUN!**" and occasionally there is no cautionary, e.g., "**FORWARD!**".

Timing of Words of Command

0107. The table at Annex A shows on what foot the executive word of command is given. The cautionary word of command should be consistently drawn out over about the equivalent of four paces in quick time. There should be a pause between it and the executive word of command of:

- a. At the Halt - the regulation pause.
- b. In Quick Time - about four paces.
- c. In Slow Time - about three paces.

Development of the Word of Command

0108. Instructors should be taught how to control a squad by the following two methods:

- a. *Communication Drill.*
 - (1) First demonstrate to the squad all words of command at the halt, including rifle exercises.
 - (2) Now 'conduct' the squad while they give elementary words of command, insisting on clarity and power from each man.
 - (3) Divide the squad into two ranks, place them 30 metres apart, with five paces interval between each man.
 - (4) Each man should now drill his opposite number 30 metres away without regard to the men to left or right of him.
 - (5) After not more than ten minutes, change the ranks, so that the men in both ranks have a chance of controlling their opposite number.
- b. *Mutual Drill.*
 - (1) Form the squad into three ranks and explain the introductory word of command and the directing flank (see Annex B).
 - (2) Call out each member of the squad in turn to drill the squad and call out another member of the squad to watch and to be prepared to comment on his performance.

Note. Be patient and encouraging. When correcting, be sure that you address your remarks to the whole squad, since they can all learn by one man's mistakes.

SECTION 3 - AIDS TO DRILL

Calling out the Time

0109. Men in their early stages of training should call out the time, so that:

- a. Every member of a squad has the regulation pause fixed in his head.
- b. The squad learn to act together.

0110. The squad should call out the words given in Annex A. They must learn to be still when calling out "TWO THREE" for the regulation pause.

Time and Pace

0111. At Annex C is a chart showing the lengths of pace and rates of marching and timings of movements.

Mechanical Aids

0112. There are three aids the instructor may use to help him obtain accurate, smart drill. They are:

- a. The Metronome.
- b. The Drum.
- c. The Pace Stick.

The Metronome

0113. This gives an accurate check on the rate of marching and on the timing of rifle exercises. It can be set to any number of beats per minute and should be used frequently to maintain uniformity of instruction over timings. It must, itself, be checked frequently against a stop watch to ensure that it is accurate.

The Drum

0114. As an aid to instructors, the drum has three uses:

- a. When foot drill and rifle exercises are being taught by numbers at the halt, station a drummer behind the squad. A specimen word of command would sound like this:

**“RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, WORKING WITH THE DRUM,
SHOULDER ARMS - TAP!” “SQUAD - TAP!” “SQUAD - TAP!”**

The drummer should judge the regulation pause between the cautionary word of command and his tap. The squad will react more sharply to the tap of the drum than they would to the instructor's word of command.

- b. When foot and rifle exercises are being done at the halt judging the time, station a drummer to the rear of the squad. He should have a metronome beside him (set at 40) and should be far enough behind the squad for them not to hear the tick of the metronome. A specimen word of command would sound like this:

**“RIFLE EXERCISES, WORKING WITH THE DRUM,
SLOPE - TAP!” “TAP!” “TAP!”**

The drummer will judge the regulation pause between the cautionary word of command and his first tap, if this is possible. Thereafter he will tap the drum on every beat of the metronome for the same number of times as there are movements.

- c. To beat the rate of marching, set the metronome to the rate required. The drummer now beats in time with the metronome and the squad stand still and listen. When the instructor is ready to practise his squad he must have the drummer beating the time to the metronome and then give **“QUICK-MARCH!”**

The Pace Stick

0115. The pace stick is used to gauge the correct length of pace and to measure the distance between ranks. It is a difficult instrument to wield and perfection of the art of turning it, requires constant practice. The instructor should march beside the leading man of the squad, with the pace stick open and turning and control the length of pace. When the squad have progressed and are marching the correct length of pace, the instructor should periodically check the length of pace by marching behind them with the pace stick open and turning (see Chapter 8).

SECTION 4 - THE SEQUENCE OF INSTRUCTION

Sequence of Instruction

0116. Use the following sequence:
- a. Formation of squad.
 - b. Explanation.
 - c. Demonstration.
 - d. Question.
 - e. Practice, which should be first collective then individual and finally collective again.
 - f. Correction of faults.

Formation of Squad

0117. Bear two factors in mind:
- a. *The comfort of the squad.* Make sure that they are not looking into the sun nor into the teeth of a gale.
 - b. *The formation in which they will learn most quickly.* As a guide:

Formation	Use
Straight Line	Foot Drill
Half Circle	Rifle Exercises
Three Ranks, Open Order, Inclined	Saluting at the Halt

Explanation

0118. Explain what you are about to teach and why it is necessary.

Demonstration

0119. Break this down as follows:
- a. Complete demonstration, shouting out the words of command.
 - b. Demonstration by numbers, pointing out important details.
 - c. Another complete demonstration.

Questions

0120. After giving the first demonstration by numbers, ask the squad if they have any questions and do so after each successive demonstration by numbers.

Practice

0121. After each demonstration by numbers, practise the squad in that movement, checking faults. Finally after demonstrating the whole movement, practise the squad, judging the time.

Correction of Faults

0122. When correcting faults, be sure you address your remarks to the whole squad to allow all to learn from one person's mistake. Be patient and encouraging.

SECTION 5 - COMPLIMENTS

The Reason

0123. All compliments derive their origin from the Sovereign, to whom the highest compliment, the Royal Salute, is paid. Because of their link with the Sovereign, the following are also paid some form of compliment:

- a. Members of the Royal Family.
- b. Governors and Ministers to whom the Sovereign delegates authority.
- c. Formed bodies of troops on the Sovereign's business.
- d. All Standards, Guidons and Colours of Regiments of the Army and their equivalent in the Royal Navy, Royal Marines and Royal Air Force.
- e. All Officers, as holders of the Sovereign's commission.

The Origin

0124. The salute with the hand, the present arms and the salute with the sword, were methods by which the person paying a compliment could show the person to whom that compliment was paid that no offence was meant. They are all gestures, symbolic of loyalty and trust.

Information about Compliments

0125. Queen's Regulations lay down the details of which compliments are to be paid and on what occasions. Below are some notes on compliments which can be taught by instructors whilst the squad are standing easy.

National Anthem

0126. When the National Anthem is played, compliments are paid as follows:

- a. *When on Parade or in an Organized Party.* All ranks will stand to Attention, but only officers and warrant officers will salute. NCOs will only salute if they are in charge of an organized party.
- b. *When Not on Parade, but in Uniform.* All ranks will salute.
- c. *When Not on Parade and in Plain Clothes.* All ranks will stand to Attention.
- d. *Officers with Drawn Swords.* They will stand at the Carry.
- e. *Sentries.* They will Slope Arms.

Military Funerals

0127. All ranks passing a military funeral will salute the bier. Formed bodies will pay the appropriate compliments.

When Riding a Horse

0128. When riding without arms:

- a. Officers will salute with the right hand provided that they are free to do so.
- b. Soldiers not part of a formed body will salute with the right hand, provided they are free to do so.
- c. Soldiers who are part of a formed body will salute as follows:
 - (1) If riding with both hands on the reins, they will give 'Eyes Right' or 'Left' without moving their hands.

(2) It riding with the reins in one hand only, they will retain the reins in the left hand and drop the right hand to the full extent of the arm, behind the right thigh, fingers half closed, back of the right hand to the right, and will give 'Eyes Right' or 'Left'.

When Riding a Bicycle

0129. The rider of a bicycle (motor or pedal) will not salute or look to his flank when the bicycle is moving. When stationary he will salute by giving 'Eyes Right' or 'Left' but will not take his hands from the handle bars.

When in a Military Vehicle

0130. Occupants will behave as follows:

- a. Drivers will never salute.
- b. Those beside them will salute with the hand.
- c. Soldiers other than these will sit to Attention.

Compliments by a Formed Body of Troops on the March

0131. When a formed body of troops which is on the march passes any of the following:

- a. The Queen and other members of the Royal Family.
- b. Armed bodies of troops on the march commanded by an officer.
- c. Guards and Escorts.
- d. Their own Brigade Commander (or CRA in the Royal Artillery), General Officers, Officers of the Royal Navy or Royal Air Force of equivalent rank, when in uniform.

0132. The Commander will give the order "**MARCH TO ATTENTION**" and compliments will be paid in succession by the sub-units on parade, the respective Commanders giving the command "**EYES - RIGHT!**" or "**LEFT!**". All officers and other ranks in command of sub-units will salute. In units of the Royal Horse Artillery, commands are repeated in succession by numbers one. Bodies of troops on the march or on training will only pay compliments to the same higher commander once a day. At other times the Commander only will salute a senior officer. Small parties of troops not commanded by an officer will pay compliments to all officers. An officer in command of an armed party, will return the salute of an NCO in charge of an unarmed party of less than twenty men, but will not call the armed party to attention.

0133. When in command of a party of armed or unarmed troops, an officer will salute any officer senior to him, provided his rank is equivalent to Field Officer or higher in any of the services. When persons entitled to salutes approach from the rear, the compliment will not be paid, but officers will salute. This will not apply to members of the Royal Family to whom compliments are paid, in this case troops will always be ordered to march to attention and they will give 'Eyes Right' or 'Left'.

0134. Troops will march to attention until clear of their parade ground or when they are approaching it. They will also march to attention when entering or leaving barracks.

Standards, Guidons and Colours

0135. These are entitled to the highest compliments:

- a. Guards will turn out and present arms.
- b. Formed bodies will fix bayonets and present arms, or if on the march and passing stationary Standards, Guidons or Colours will give 'Eyes Right' or 'Left'.
- c. Individuals will halt, face passing Standards, Guidons or Colours and salute, or if passing will salute to the right or left.

d. Units passing each other with uncased Standards, Guidons or Colours will give 'Eyes Right' or 'Left' to each other.

e. When Standards, Guidons or Colours are marched on or off parade, the unit will Present Arms and the Band or Drums will play the 'Point of War'. If no Band or Drums are present, a trumpeter or bugler will sound the general salute.

f. The only times when a Colour is not saluted are:

(1) When the Colours are carried by a unit forming a part of the escort at a military funeral. (The salute is given to the bier.)

(2) When the Colour is cased.

Note. The same compliments will be paid to the Colours of the Royal Navy, Royal Marines and the Royal Air Force.

Chapter 2

FOOT DRILL AT THE HALT, MARCHING AND DRILL IN LINE

INTRODUCTION

Foot Drill at the Halt

0201. The two basic movements of foot drill used in instruction are:

- a. 'Bend the right/left knee/leg'.
- b. 'Force the right/left foot forward'.

0202. '**Bend the Right/Left Knee/Leg**' One leg is kept braced back with the foot flat on the ground. The opposite leg is raised in front of the body with the knee bent. The foot hangs naturally, with the toe directly under the knee, so that the thigh is horizontal. The leg is then straightened and the foot forced to the ground so that on impact the ball and heel of the foot reach the ground at the same time. The whole movement is completed at speed.

0203. '**Force the Right/Left Foot Forward**' One leg is kept braced back with the foot flat on the ground. The other leg forces forward with the knee braced, ready to carry the weight of the body forward.

0204. These two basic movements should be demonstrated to recruits before Lesson 1.

LESSON 1 - POSITIONS OF ATTENTION, STAND AT EASE AND STAND EASY AT THE HALT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0205. **Aim.** *To teach the positions of Attention, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy at the Halt.*

0206. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

0207. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

0208. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

0209. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0210. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

0211. **Explain:** To introduce foot drill the positions of Attention, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy are taught first. The reason for these movements is to enable an individual or a body of men to form a base, from which all other drill movements can originate in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.

The Position of Attention

(see Fig 1)

0212. **The instructor is to demonstrate the position of Attention.** **Explain:** Both feet are flat and firm on the ground heels in line and touching, with the toes at an angle of 30 degrees from a line, front centre of the body, both knees are braced. The arms are straight and held into the sides of the body, the forearms forced in behind the hip bones and the wrists straight. The hands are closed with the

thumbs vertical and facing to the front, the backs of the fingers touching the thigh, just behind the seam of the trousers. The shoulders held down and back to bring the chest to a normal position without straining or stiffening. The head is held up with the neck touching the back of the collar. The eyes are open - still, and looking just above their own height. The chin is raised and the mouth closed. The body is now in the position of Attention.

0213. *Confirm by questions and practice first bringing the squad into the position. Explain that they are not required to call out*

Stand at Ease

(see Fig 2)

0214. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “STAND AT - EASE!”, at the same time calling out “ONE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on receipt of the word of command the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced down to the ground 300 mm (12 inches) from the right foot. At the same time, the arms are forced behind the back by the shortest possible route keeping the arms straight. Place the back of the right hand in the palm of the left hand the right thumb crossed over the left thumb, fingers straight together. The body is frozen in this position. If equipment is worn, keep the arms to the side. Explain: On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out “ONE”.

0215. **Points to Note.** The body is now in the correct position of the At Ease and the remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.’

0216. *Confirm by questions and practice first collectively, then individually and collectively again and then adopt the At Ease position.*

Stand Easy

(see Fig 3)

0217. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “STAND - EASY!”. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the body is allowed to relax, whilst still in the At Ease position. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out. The body is now in the correct position of the Stand Easy.

0218. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Standing At Ease from Easy

0219. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command “SQUAD!”. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the body is braced up into the position of At Ease. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out. The body is now in the correct position of At Ease.

0220. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Stand Easy and practise.*

Standing to Attention from Standing at Ease

0221. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command ‘SQUAD - SHUN!’, at the same time calling out “ONE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced down beside the right to resume the correct position of Attention. At the same time the arms are forced to the side of the body into the correct position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “ONE”. The body is now in the correct position of Attention.

0222. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

0223. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of all movements then confirm by questions and practice collectively, individually, then collectively ensuring that on the execution of the command “STAND AT - EASE!” and “SQUAD - SHUN!” the squad calls out “ONE”.*

Conclusion

0224. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions to and from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include a look forward to the Dressing movements to be taught in the next lesson.*

0225-0229. *Reserved.*

FIG 1 - POSITION OF ATTENTION



Front View



Side View

FIG 2 - STAND AT EASE

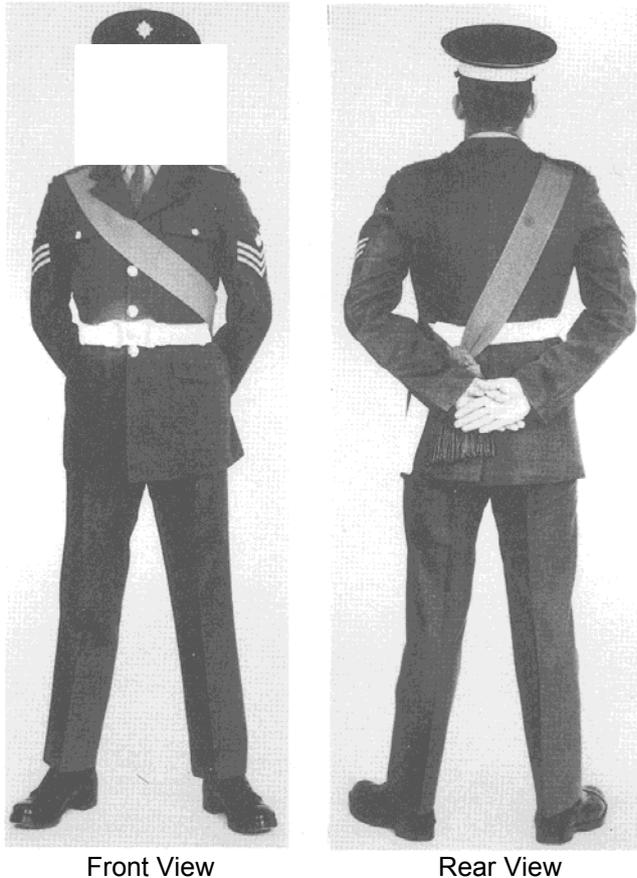


Front View



Rear View

FIG 3 - STAND EASY



INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES - FORMING UP IN THREE RANKS AND DRESSING

Forming Up in Three Ranks

0230. At the beginning of their training, the squad must be introduced to their basic formation. To adopt this formation they are to be placed in close order in three ranks (front, centre and rear). There will be an interval of one arm's length (with hands closed) between each man and a distance of 750 mm (30 inches) between ranks (measured from the heels of one rank to the toes of the rank behind it). The distance in close order may be measured by the men in the right hand file raising their right arm in line with and in front of their right shoulder. The knuckles of the closed hand should just fail to reach the shoulder of the man in front.

Dressing

0231. Within a body of men who are drilling, every man must be in line with, and at the correct interval from, the man to left or right of him; he must also be directly behind, and at the correct distance from, his equivalent in the rank in front of him. This is dressing.

0232. *Reserved.*

LESSON 2 - DRESSING IN THREE RANKS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0233. *Aim. To teach Dressing in Three Ranks.*

0234. **Timings.** One 25 minute period.
0235. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.
0236. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.
0237. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0238. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

0239. *Explain:* The next stage in foot drill is Dressing in Three Ranks. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of men to take up alignment correctly in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to “Stand Easy” and watch your demonstration.

The Right Dress

0240. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command “DRESSING, RIGHT - DRESS! / EYES - FRONT!”, at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain:* For the purpose of instruction the movement is broken down into numbered parts. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part

Right Dress - One

(see Fig 4)

0241. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “DRESSING, BY NUMBERS, RIGHT DRESS - ONE!”. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head and eyes are forced through an angle of 90 degrees over the right shoulder, at the same time the right arm is forced up level and in line with the right shoulder, over to the right side of the body. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out “ONE”.

0242. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The head and eyes are looking square over the right shoulder, the right arm is locked at the elbow with the knuckles in line with the shoulder of the man on the immediate right.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front

0243. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practise.*

Right Dress - Two

0244. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the feet are moved in short, quick steps until the body is correctly aligned with the right hand man (who stands still) or the soldier on the immediate right. Once the individual is correctly aligned the body is frozen in the position of Attention. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “TWO”.

0245. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The head and eyes are looking square over the right shoulder, the knuckles are touching the upper arm of the man on the immediate right in line with the shoulder.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front

0246. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Eyes - Front

0247. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “EYES - FRONT!”, at the same time calling out “ONE” as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, the head and eyes are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the front, at the same time the right arm is forced down to the correct position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out “ONE”.*

0248. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rank is correctly aligned.
- b. The body is held erect and square to the front.

0249. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of Both Complete Movements

0250. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of both movements. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out “ONE - TWO THREE - ONE”. Moving on the “ONE’s” and remaining perfectly still on the “TWO THREE”, thus observing the regulation rate of 40 movements to the minute. Note that:*

- a. *On the command “EYES - FRONT!” call out “ONE”.*
- b. *Those in the centre and rear rank will glance out of the corner of the eye to ensure correct covering off front to rear.*
- c. *The right hand man of the centre and rear rank on receipt of the word of command “RIGHT DRESS - ONE!” will force his right arm forward, thumb uppermost, level and in line with the man to his front, in order to judge the correct distance between ranks.*

Alternative Drills in the Movement

0251. *Explain: The following variations may be used for trained soldiers:*

- a. The arm is not raised when dressing.
- b. Dressing may be ordered by either flank or centre.
- c. Instead of the command “EYES - FRONT!”, each file may turn their heads to the front in succession from the point by which they are dressing.

0252. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

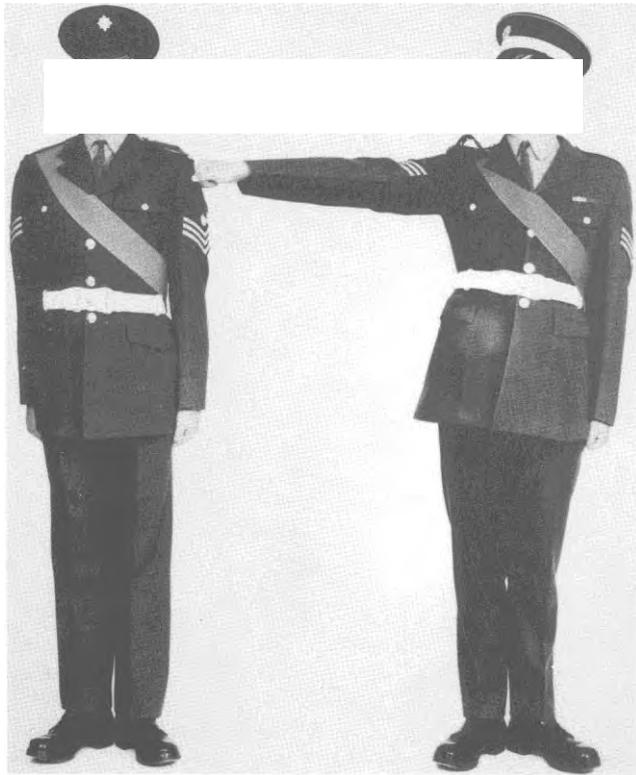
Conclusion

0253. **End of Lesson Drill**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the Open and Close Order movements to be taught in the next lesson.*

0254-0255. *Reserved.*

FIG 4 - RIGHT DRESS - FRONT VIEW



**LESSON 3 - OPEN ORDER AT THE HALT - FRONT RANK
AND CLOSE ORDER AT THE HALT - REAR RANK**

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0256. **Aim.** To teach the Open Order at the Halt - Front Rank and Close Order at the Halt - Rear Rank.
0257. **Timings.** One 30 minute period.
0258. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.
0259. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.
0260. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0261. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

0262. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is the Open Order at the Halt - Front Rank and Close Order at the Halt - Rear Rank. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of men to Dress in Open Order in three ranks at the Halt, prior to being inspected or when fixing or unfixing bayonets, and when being drilled in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.

The Open Order - Front Rank

0263. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command “IN OPEN ORDER, RIGHT - DRESS!”, at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain:* For the purpose of instruction the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Dressing in Open Order, Right Dress - One

0264. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “DRESSING, BY NUMBERS, IN OPEN ORDER, RIGHT DRESS - ONE!”, at the same time calling out “ONE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward a full pace of 750 mm (30 inches), placing the foot flat and firm on the ground. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out “ONE”.

0265. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground, the right toes are on the ground, heel raised.
- b. Both knees are braced and the remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front

0266. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practise.*

Right Dress - Two

0267. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground, with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced down beside the left to resume the position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out “TWO”.

0268. **Points to Note.** The body is now as for Open Order, held erect and square to the front

0269. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Right Dress - Three

0270. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head, eyes and right arm are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “THREE”.

0271. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The head and eyes are looking square over the right shoulder.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front

0272. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Right Dress - Four

0273. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - FOUR!”, at the same time calling out “FOUR” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the feet are moved in short, quick paces until the body is correctly aligned with the right hand man (who looks to his front) or the soldier on the immediate right. Once correctly aligned, the body is frozen in the position of Attention. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “FOUR”.

0274. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The head and eyes are looking square over the right shoulder.

- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front

0275. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Eyes - Front

0276. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “EYES - FRONT!”, at the same time calling out “ONE” as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, the head and eyes are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the front and the right arm is forced into the right side of the body. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out “ONE”.*

0277. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The individual is in Open Order.
- b. The body is held erect and square to the front

0278. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

0279. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out “ONE TWO - TWO THREE - ONE - TWO THREE - ONE”, thus observing the regulation pause, working on the “ONE’s” and standing still on the “TWO THREE”. Note also that:*

- a. *The centre rank stands still during the first two movements. They must observe the regulation pause and then carry out the dressing. The centre and rear ranks must glance out of the corner of the eye to maintain correct alignment front to rear.*
- b. *When dressing in two ranks the front rank stand still and the rear rank only move.*
- c. *The actions carried out by the front rank are the same for the rear rank when moving into Close Order.*
- d. *The right hand men of the centre and rear ranks do not force their right arm forward.*

Conclusion

0280. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include Close and Open Order at the Halt to be taught in the next lesson.*

0281-0282. *Reserved.*

LESSON 4 - CLOSE ORDER AT THE HALT - FRONT RANK AND OPEN ORDER AT THE HALT - REAR RANK

A. INSTRUCTOR’S NOTES

0283. **Aim.** *To teach Close Order at the Halt - Front Rank and Open Order at the Halt - Rear Rank.*

0284. **Timings.** *One 15 minute period.*

0285. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

0286. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

0287. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0288. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

0289. *Explain:* The next stage in foot drill is the Close Order at the Halt - Front Rank and Open Order at the Halt - Rear Rank The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of men to dress in Close Order in three ranks, after inspection, fixing or unfixing bayonets or being drilled, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Close Order - Front Rank

0290. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "IN CLOSE ORDER, RIGHT - DRESS!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Dressing in Close Order, Right Dress - One

0291. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "DRESSING, BY NUMBERS, IN CLOSE ORDER, RIGHT DRESS - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, a full pace of 750 mm (30 inches) is taken backwards with the left foot, placing the foot flat and firm on the ground. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "ONE".

0292. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, both knees are braced.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front

0293. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practise.*

Right Dress - Two

0294. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground with the right foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced down beside the left foot The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "TWO".

0295. **Points to Note.** The body is now as for Close Order, held erect and square to the front

0296. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Right Dress - Three

0297. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head, eyes and right arm are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "THREE".

0298. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The head and eyes are looking square over the right shoulder.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0299. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Right Dress - Four

02100. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement; giving the words of command "SQUAD - FOUR!", at the same time calling out "FOUR" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the feet are moved in short, quick paces until the body is correctly aligned with the right hand man (who looks to his front) or the soldier immediately to the right. Once correctly aligned, the body is frozen in the position of Attention. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "FOUR".

02101. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The head and eyes are looking square over the right shoulder.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front

02102. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02103. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "ONE TWO - TWO THREE - ONE - TWO THREE - ONE", thus observing the regulation pause, working on the "ONE's" and standing still on the "TWO THREE". Note also that:*

- a. *The centre rank stands still during the first two movements. They must observe the regulation pause and then carry out the dressing. The centre and rear ranks must glance out of the corner of the eye to maintain correct alignment front to rear.*
- b. *When dressing in two ranks the front rank stand still and the rear only move.*
- c. *The actions carried out by the front rank Close Order are the same for the rear rank in Open Order.*
- d. *The right hand men of the centre and rear ranks do not force their right arm forward.*

02104. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02105. **End of Lesson Drill**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the Turnings at the Halt movements to be taught in the next lesson.*

02106-02107. *Reserved.*

LESSON 5 - TURNINGS AT THE HALT - LEFT AND RIGHT TURNS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02108. **Aim.** *To teach the Left and Right Turns at the Halt*

02109. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

02110. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02111. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02112. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02113. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood property At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02114. *Explain:* The next stages in foot drill are the Left and Right Turns at the Halt. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of men to turn through an angle of 90 degrees to the left or right at the Halt, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Left Turn

02115. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, LEFT - TURN!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Left Turn - One

(see Fig 5)

02116. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, BY NUMBERS, LEFT TURN - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head, shoulders, body and left foot are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the left by means of pivoting on the left heel and right toe. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "ONE".

02117. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground with the right heel raised.
- b. The body weight is over the left foot with the knees braced and the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front

02118. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practise.*

Left Turn - Two

(see Fig 5)

02119. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right knee is bent and forced in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced to the ground to resume the correct position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "TWO".

02120. **Points to Note.** The body is now facing the new direction having resumed the correct position of Attention.

02121. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

The Right Turn

(see Fig 6)

02122. *The instructor is to repeat the instruction for the Right Turn.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02123. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of both movements. On the execution of the movements the squad will call out the regulation time of "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE", moving on the "ONE's" and remaining perfectly still on the "TWO THREE", thus observing the regulation rate of 40 movements to the minute.*

02124. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02125. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the About Turn at the Halt to be taught in the next lesson.*

02126-02127. *Reserved.*

FIG 5 - LEFT TURN AT THE HALT

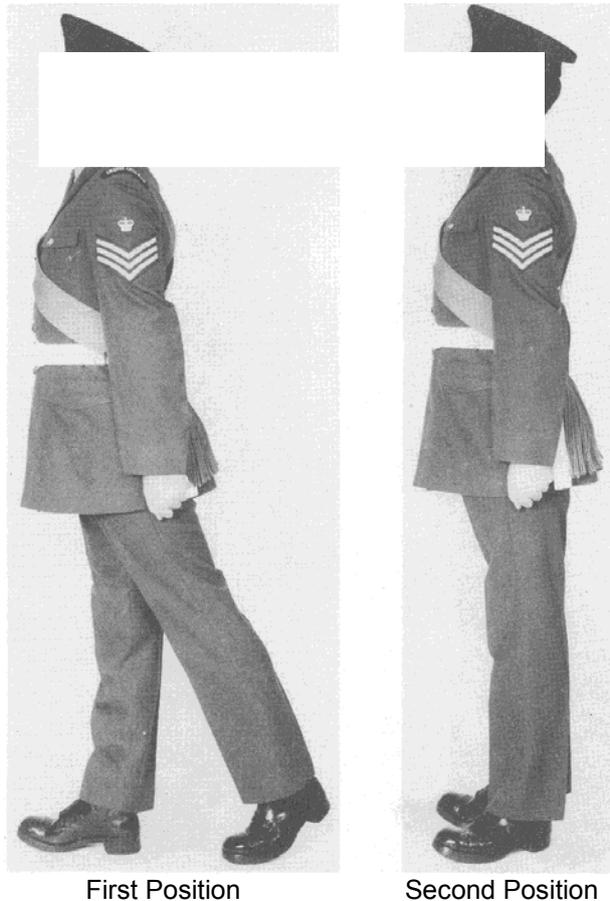


First Position



Second Position

FIG 6 - RIGHT TURN AT THE HALT



LESSON 6 - TURNINGS AT THE HALT - ABOUT TURN

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02128. **Aim.** To teach the About Turn at the Halt

02129. **Timings.** One 20 minute period.

02130. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

02131. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.

02132. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02133. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

02134. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is The About Turn at the Halt The reason the movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of men to turn through an angle of 180 degrees to the right, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The About Turn

02135. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, ABOUT - TURN!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain: For instructional purposes this movement is broken down into numbered parts. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part*

About Turn - One

(see Fig 7)

02136. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, BY NUMBERS, ABOUT TURN - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, the head, shoulders, body and right foot are forced through an angle of 180 degrees to the right by means of pivoting on the right heel and left toe. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "ONE".*

02137. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground with the left toes on the ground with the heel raised.
- b. Both knees are braced and the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02138. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practise.*

About Turn - Two

(see Fig 7)

02139. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO" as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced down beside the right foot. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "TWO".*

02140. **Points to Note.** The body is now in the correct position of Attention facing its new direction.

02141. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02142. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out the regulation time of "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE", moving on the "ONE's" and remaining perfectly still on "TWO THREE", thus observing the regulation rate of 40 movements to the minute.*

02143. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

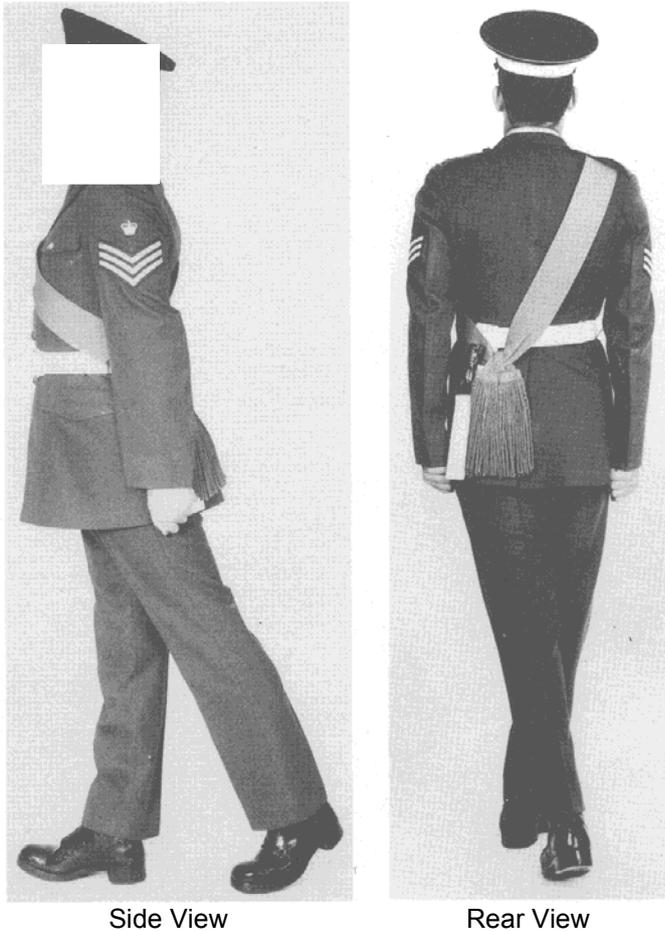
Conclusion

02144. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. Questions from the squad on the lesson.
- b. Further confirmation by practice as time permits.
- c. Summary. To include the Inclining movements to be taught in the next lesson.

02145-02146. Reserved.

FIG 7 - ABOUT TURN AT THE HALT



LESSON 7 - INCLININGS TO THE RIGHT AND LEFT AT THE HALT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02147. **Aim.** To teach the Right and Left Inclines at the Halt

02148. **Timings.** One 20 minute period.

02149. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

02150. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.

02151. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02152. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

02153. **Explain:** The next stages in foot drill are the Right and Left Inclines at the Halt. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of men to turn through an angle of 45

degrees to the right or left at the Halt, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Right Incline

02154. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "INCLININGS, RIGHT - INCLINE!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Right Incline - One

02155. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "INCLININGS, BY NUMBERS, RIGHT INCLINE - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, the head, shoulders, body and right foot are forced through an angle of 45 degrees to the right by means of pivoting on the right heel and left toe. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "ONE".*

02156. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground with the left heel raised.
- b. The body weight is over the right foot with the knees braced and the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front

02157. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practise.*

Right Incline - Two

02158. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO" as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, the left knee is bent and forced in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced to the ground to resume the correct position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "TWO".*

02159. **Points to Note.** The body is now facing the new direction having resumed the correct position of Attention.

02160. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

The Left Incline

02161. *The instructor is to repeat the instruction for the Left Incline.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02162. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movements. There is a difference in dressing and covering which occurs when inclined. Each man's right shoulder must be aligned with the centre of the back of the man next to him and in the case of those in the centre and rear ranks the left shoulder must cover the centre of the back of the man originally covered off. On the execution of the movements the squad will call out the regulation time of "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE", moving on the "ONE's" and remaining perfectly still on the "TWO THREE", thus observing the regulation rate of 40 movements to the minute.*

02163. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02164. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. Questions from the squad on the lesson.
- b. Further confirmation by practice as time permits
- c. Summary. To include Saluting to the Front at the Halt to be taught in the next lesson.

02165-02166. *Reserved.*

LESSON 8 - SALUTING TO THE FRONT AT THE HALT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02167. **Aim.** *To teach the Salute to the Front at the Halt.*

02168. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

02169. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02170. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02171. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent*

02172. **Miscellaneous.** *This movement is taught before the main lesson of Saluting to the Rank.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02173. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in Open Order, in three ranks, inclined.*

Introduction

02174. **Explain:** *Saluting is introduced by teaching the Salute to the Front at the Halt The reason the movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of men to pay the correct compliment to a commissioned officer or an uncased Colour in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Salute to the Front

02175. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, SALUTE TO THE FRONT - SALUTE!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part*

Salute to the Front - One

(see Fig 8)

02176. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, BY NUMBERS, SALUTE TO THE FRONT - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, the right arm is raised sideways until it is horizontal, straightening the fingers and thumb keeping them together, palm facing to the front The elbow is then bent keeping the wrist and hand straight, until the tip of the fore finger is one inch above the right eye, palm facing to the front The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "ONE".*

02177. **Points to Note.** *The body is now in the correct position of the Salute and is held erect and square to the front.*

02178. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Salute to the Front - Two

02179. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO" as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, the elbow is forced forward, and the finger and thumb curled into a fist. The hand is then forced down to the side of the body by straightening the arm. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "TWO".*

02180. **Points to Note.** The body is now back to the position of Attention and is held erect and square to the front

02181. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02182. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE", moving on the "ONE's" and standing still on the "TWO THREE".*

Saluting to the Front

02183. *Explain:* When a soldier delivers a message or speaks to an officer he approaches, halts, salutes, delivers the message or speaks. He then salutes again, turns in the direction in which he is to retire and marches away.

02184. *Explain:* The order for practising this movement is given as the left heel strikes the ground. Then the soldier or squad:

- a. Halts.
- b. Salutes to the Front) Judging the regulation
- c. Salutes to the Front) pause between each
- d. Turns About) again movement.
- e. Steps off in Quick Time.

02185. *Confirm by questions and practise all movements.*

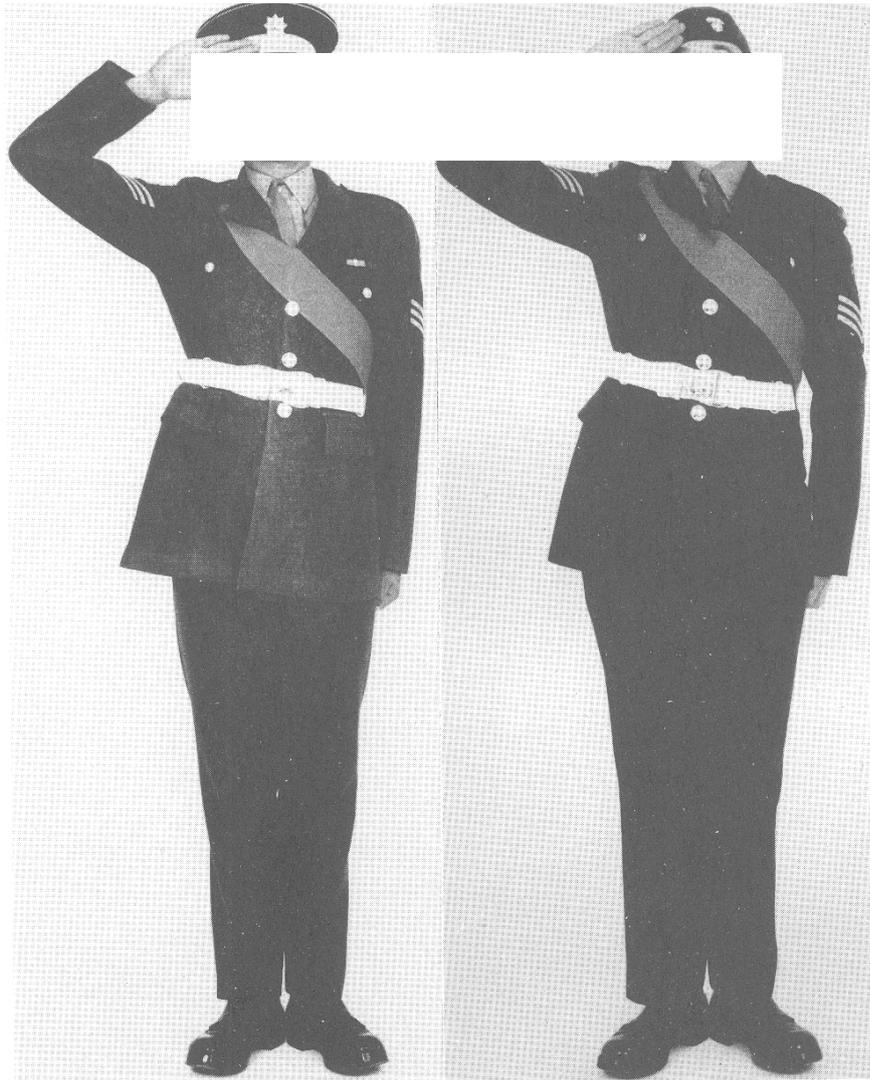
Conclusion

02186. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the movements to be taught in the next lesson.*

02187-02188. *Reserved.*

FIG 8 - SALUTING TO THE FRONT AT THE HALT



Forage Cap

Beret

LESSON 9 - SALUTING TO THE RIGHT AND LEFT FLANK AT THE HALT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02189. **Aim.** To teach the Salute to the Right and Left flank at the Halt

02190. **Timings.** One 20 minute period.

02191. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

02192. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.

02193. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

02194. **Miscellaneous.** This movement is taught before the main lesson of Saluting to a flank on the March.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02195. **Squad Formation.** *The squad is stood properly At Ease in open order in three ranks, inclined. Introduction*

02196. *Explain:* The next stage in saluting is to learn the Salute to a Flank at the Halt The reason this movement is taught is to introduce the Salute to the Flank, on the march, so that the emphasis is placed on the actions to be carried out as the left foot strikes the ground. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Salute to the Right Flank

02197. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, SALUTE TO THE RIGHT - SALUTE!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain:* For the purpose of instruction the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Salute to the Right - One

(see Figs 9 and 10)

02198. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, BY NUMBERS, SALUTE TO THE RIGHT - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, a full pace of 750 mm (30 inches) is taken with the left foot. As the left heel strikes the ground, the head and eyes are forced through an angle of 90 degrees square over the right shoulder. At the same time, the right arm is raised sideways extending the fingers and thumb. As the arm comes horizontal, bend the arm at the elbow, keeping the fingers and thumb together, palm facing forward, until the tip of the forefinger is one inch above the right eye. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out "ONE".

02199. **Points to Note.** The left heel is on the ground, toes raised. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground. Both knees are braced, the head and eyes are looking square over the right shoulder. The tip of the finger of the right hand is 25 mm (1 inch) above the right eye, the palm facing forward. The fingers and thumb, wrist and forearm are straight. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02200. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practise.*

Salute to the Right - Two

02201. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body, so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced down to the ground beside the right foot. At the same time, the head and eyes are forced to the front, whilst the right hand is forced forward and down - curling the fingers and thumb into a fist - to the side of the body. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out "TWO".

02202. **Points to Note.** The body is now back in the correct position of Attention, held erect and square to the front

02203. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02204. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE", moving on the "ONE's" and standing still on the "TWO THREE", thus observing the regulation rate of 40 movements to the minute.*

The Salute to the Left Flank

(see Fig 11)

02205. *The instructor is then to teach and practise the Salute to the Left Flank, the same as to the Right, with the exception of the head and eyes which look square over the left shoulder.*

02206. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

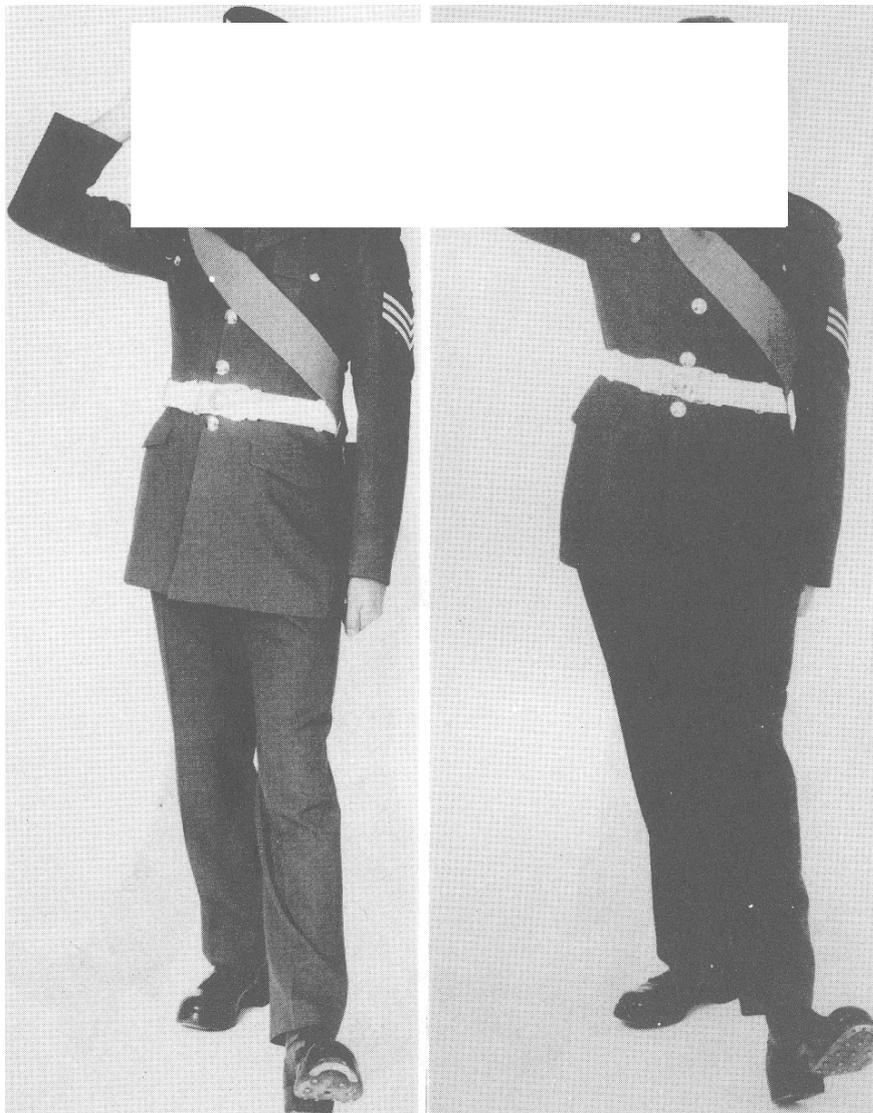
Conclusion

02207. End of Lesson Drill

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits*
- c. *Summary. To include the Saluting to a Rank on the March to be taught in the next lesson.*

02208-02209. *Reserved.*

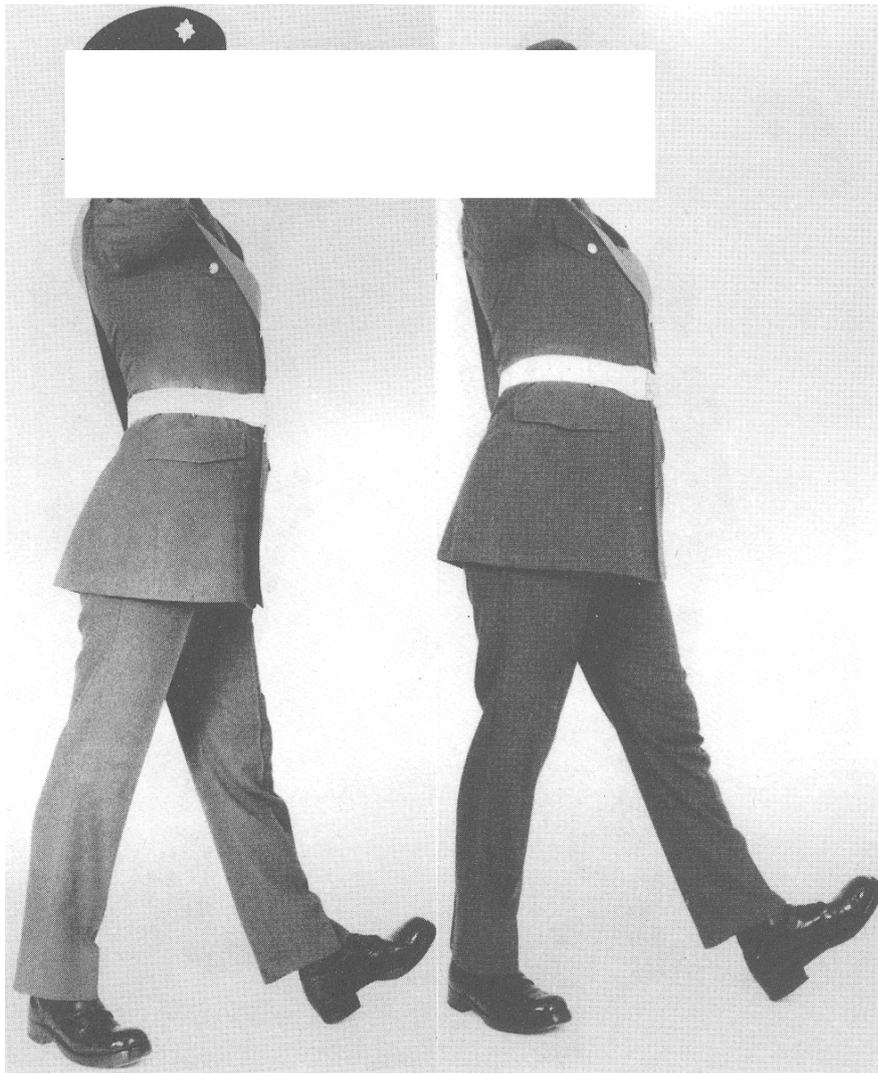
FIG 9 - SALUTING TO THE RIGHT FLANK - FRONT VIEW



Forage Cap

Beret

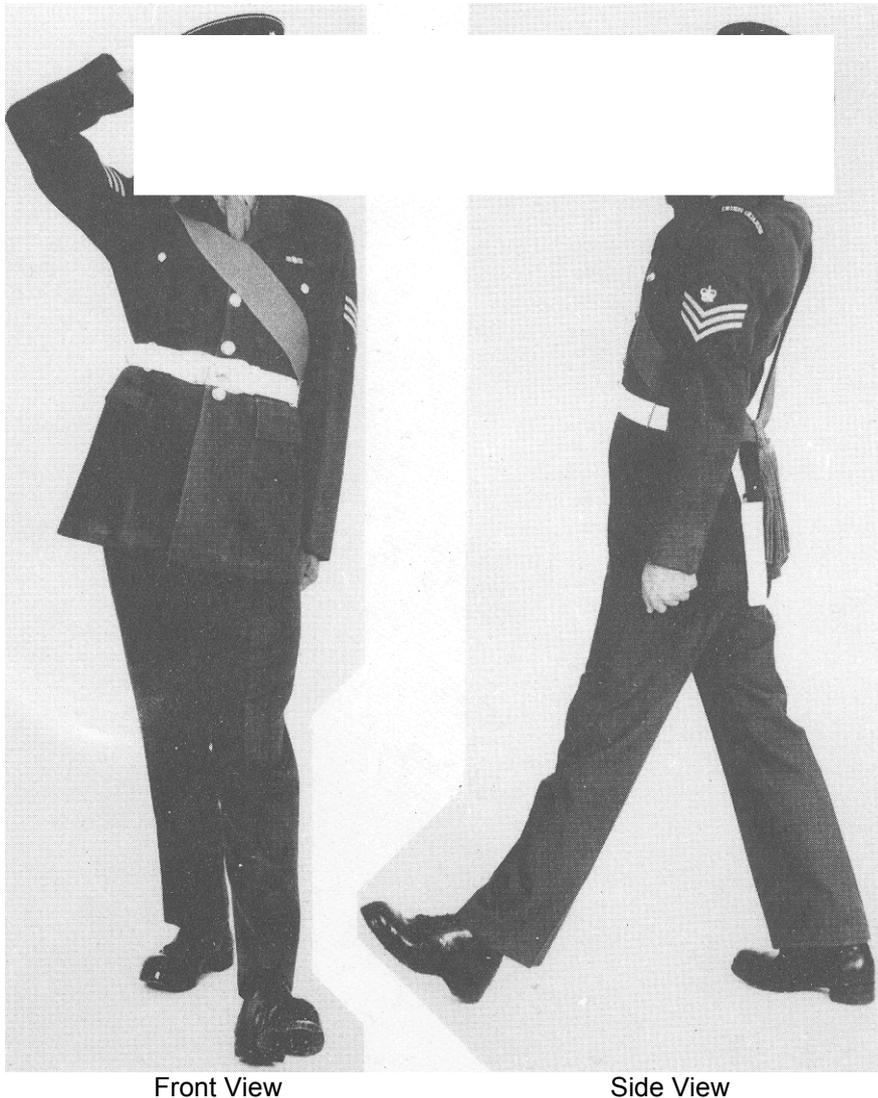
FIG 10 - SALUTING TO THE RIGHT FLANK - SIDE VIEW



Forage Cap

Beret

FIG 11 - SALUTING TO THE LEFT FLANK



LESSON 10 - SALUTING TO THE RIGHT AND LEFT FLANK ON THE MARCH

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

- 02210. **Aim.** To teach Saluting to a Flank on the March.
- 02211. **Timings.** One 40 minute period.
- 02212. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.
- 02213. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.
- 02214. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

- 02215. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

02216. *Explain:* The next stage in saluting is to learn the Salute to the Right and Left on the March. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of men to pay the correct compliments to a commissioned officer or an uncased Colour in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Salute to the Right

(see Figs 9-10)

02217. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, SALUTE TO THE RIGHT - SALUTE!", at the same time calling out "ONE - TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE - DOWN - SWING" as the movement is executed. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Salute to the Right - One

02218. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, BY NUMBERS, SALUTE TO THE RIGHT - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is given as the left heel strikes the ground, a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) is taken with the right foot, at the same time swinging the left arm forward and the right arm to the rear. Then a further full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) is taken with the left foot. As the heel of the left foot contacts the ground, the right arm is forced from the rear, through the position of Attention, into the correct position of the Salute to the Right. At the same time, the left arm is forced down to the side of the body. At the same time the head and eyes are forced square across the right shoulder into the correct position of the Salute to the Right, and the body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "ONE".

02219. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground, the left heel is on the ground, with the toes raised.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The head, eyes, right hand, wrist, forearm and elbow are in the correct position of the Salute to the Right whilst the remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02220. *The instructor is then to turn the squad to the left, give the order "Quick March" and confirm by practice.*

Salute to the Right - Two

02221. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, a further four full marching paces of 750 mm (30 inches) are taken. The body is then frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE".

02222. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground. The left heel is on the ground with the toes raised, both knees braced.
- b. The head, eyes, right hand, wrist, forearm and elbow remain in the correct position of the Salute throughout the execution of these four full marching paces.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02223. *The squad is to adopt the 'Salute to the Right - One' position and confirm by practice.*

Salute to the Right - Six

02224. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - SIX!”, at the same time calling out “DOWN” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, a full pace of 750 mm (30 inches) is taken with the right foot. As the right heel strikes the ground the head and eyes are forced square to the front. At the same time, the right hand is forced down to the side of the body, closing the fingers and thumb into a fist. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “DOWN”.

02225. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right heel is on the ground, toes raised.
- b. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02226. *The squad is to adopt the ‘Salute to the Right - Two’ position and confirm by practice.*

Squad - Forward

02227. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - FORWARD!”, at the same time calling out “SWING” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, a full pace of 750 mm (30 inches) is taken with the left foot, at the same time the right arm is swung forward, the left arm is swung to the rear. The instructor continues to march in Quick Time. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “SWING”.

02228. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left heel strikes the ground first. The right arm is swung forward level and in line with the right shoulder.
- b. The left arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible, whilst marching at the regulation rate of 116 paces to the minute.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front

02229. *Confirm by practice from the last position.*

The Salute to the Left

02230. *Explain:*

- a. The Salute to the Left is exactly the same, changing RIGHT for LEFT, etc.
- b. A formed body of men on the march pays compliments by giving ‘Eyes Right/Left’ and ‘Eyes Front’. The officer, warrant officer or non commissioned officer in charge will salute.

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02231. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movements. On their execution the squad will call out “ONE - TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE - DOWN SWING”.*

02232. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02233. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the movements to be taught in the next lesson.*

02234. *Reserved.*

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES - PAYING OF COMPLIMENTS

Collectively

02235. **Eyes Right and Left.** A formed body of men on the march pays compliments to the left or right in the following way:

- a. *In Slow Time.* The following are the words of command:
 - (1) **"BY THE RIGHT, EYES - RIGHT!"**. This is given as the right foot touches the ground. A 750 mm (30 inches) pace is taken with the left foot and as it touches the ground, the head is turned through 90 degrees to the right, and marching continues in this position. Common faults are:
 - (a) Shortening the length of pace and losing balance and direction.
 - (b) Leaning back.
 - (c) Not looking upwards and at the person being paid the compliment.
 - (2) **"EYES - FRONT!"**. This is given as the right foot reaches the ground, when the body of men is past the object of the 'Eyes - Right'. A 750 mm (30 inches) pace is taken with the left foot and as it touches the ground the head is turned to the front and marching continues in this position.

Note. The right hand man or right guide will look to his front throughout and officers and NCOs in command of men will salute.

- b. *In Quick Time.* Using the same words of command:
 - (1) **"BY THE RIGHT, EYES - RIGHT!"**. This is given as the left heel strikes the ground. When the left heel next strikes, turn the head through 90 degrees to the right, continue to swing the arms throughout. Common faults and notes are as for Slow Time.
 - (2) **"EYES - FRONT!"**. This is given as the left heel strikes the ground. When the left heel next strikes turn the head to the front.

Individually

02236. **Saluting when in Plain Clothes and without Head Dress.** A soldier, without head dress, whether in uniform or plain clothes, salutes an officer in the following ways:

- a. When he passes an officer he will return his arms to the position of Attention and turn his head in the direction of the officer on the left foot. He will take five paces in this position and return his head to the front on the sixth pace.
- b. When he meets an officer or is passed by one he will stand to Attention facing that officer.

Note: If a soldier is in plain clothes with head dress, he removes it and acts as above.

02237. **Saluting with the Left Hand.** A soldier who has injured his right hand or arm will salute with the left hand.

02238. *Instructors should teach their squads these procedures for Compliments at this stage of training, at a convenient time in the lessons.*

02239. *Reserved.*

LESSON 11 - DISMISSING AND FALLING OUT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02240. **Aim.** *To teach Dismissing and Falling Out.*

02241. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

02242. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

02243. **Dress and Stores.** No.2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.

02244. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02245. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

02246. *Explain:* The next stage in foot drill is to learn to Dismiss and Fall Out from parade. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of men to dismiss or fall out from a parade in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Dismiss/Fall Out

02247. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "DISMISS/FALL OUT!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain:* The actions for both movements are the same, broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Dismiss/Fall Out - One

02248. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "DISMISSING/FALLING OUT, BY NUMBERS, DISMISS/FALL OUT - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head, shoulders, body and right foot are forced to the right through an angle of 90 degrees by means of pivoting on the right heel and left toes. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of the movement the squad will call out "ONE".

02249. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground, the left toes are on the ground with the heel raised.
- b. Both knees are braced with the remainder of the body held erect and square to the front.

02250. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practise.*

Dismiss/Fall Out - Two

02251. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground, with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced to the ground beside the right. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "TWO".

02252. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees front centre of the body with both knees braced.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02253. *Adopt the last position and confirm by practice.*

Squad - Forward

02254. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - FORWARD!”, at the same time calling out “LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches). At the same time, the left arm is forced to the rear and the right arm forward. The instructor continues to march in quick time for three full marching paces and then breaks off. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT”.

02255. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left heel strikes the ground first.
- b. The right arm is forced forward level and in line with the shoulder, the left arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible, whilst marching at the regulation rate of 116 paces to the minute.
- c. The remainder of the body is frozen in this position.

02256. *Adopt the last position and confirm by practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement and Procedures

02257. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of the Turn, the squad will call out “ONE - TWO THREE - ONE”.*

02258. **Note.** *Explain:* The follow up actions to be carried out by the squad on “Dismiss/Fall out” are as follows:

- a. *On the Dismiss.* The squad will always be dismissed in Open Order when without rifles. If an officer is present the squad will salute before stepping off. When the squad break-off in quick time they will remain in step within individual groups, until they leave the parade ground.
- b. *On the Fall Out.* No salute is necessary as troops will not leave the vicinity of the parade.

Conclusion

02259. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the Side Pace movement to be taught in the next lesson.*

02260. *Reserved*

LESSON 12 - THE SIDE PACE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02261. **Aim.** *To teach the Side Pace.*

02262. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

02263. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02264. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02265. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02266. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02267. *Explain:* The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Side Pace. The reason the movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of men to Side Pace in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Side Pace - To the Left

02268. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "ONE PACE, LEFT CLOSE - MARCH!", at the same time calling out "ONE TWO" as the movement is executed. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Left Close March - One

(see Fig 12)

02269. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "LEFT CLOSE MARCHING, BY NUMBERS, LEFT CLOSE MARCH - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left leg is kept straight. The left foot is then placed to the ground 300 mm (12 inches) from the right foot. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "ONE".

02270. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, with a distance of 300 mm (12 inches) between the heels.
- b. Both knees are braced and the remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02271. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practise.*

Left Close March - Two

(see Fig 12)

02272. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground with the right foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced down to the ground beside the left foot. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "TWO".

02273. **Points to Note.** The body is now in the correct position of Attention, 300 mm (12 inches) to the left of its last position and is held erect and square to the front.

02274. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02275. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "ONE TWO".*

02276. **Note.** *Explain:*

- a. Only eight side paces may be ordered at any one time. Further distance requires the squad to be turned and marched.
- b. To side pace RIGHT, the right leg is kept straight and placed 300 mm (12 inches) to the right and the left leg is bent to resume the position of Attention.

02277. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

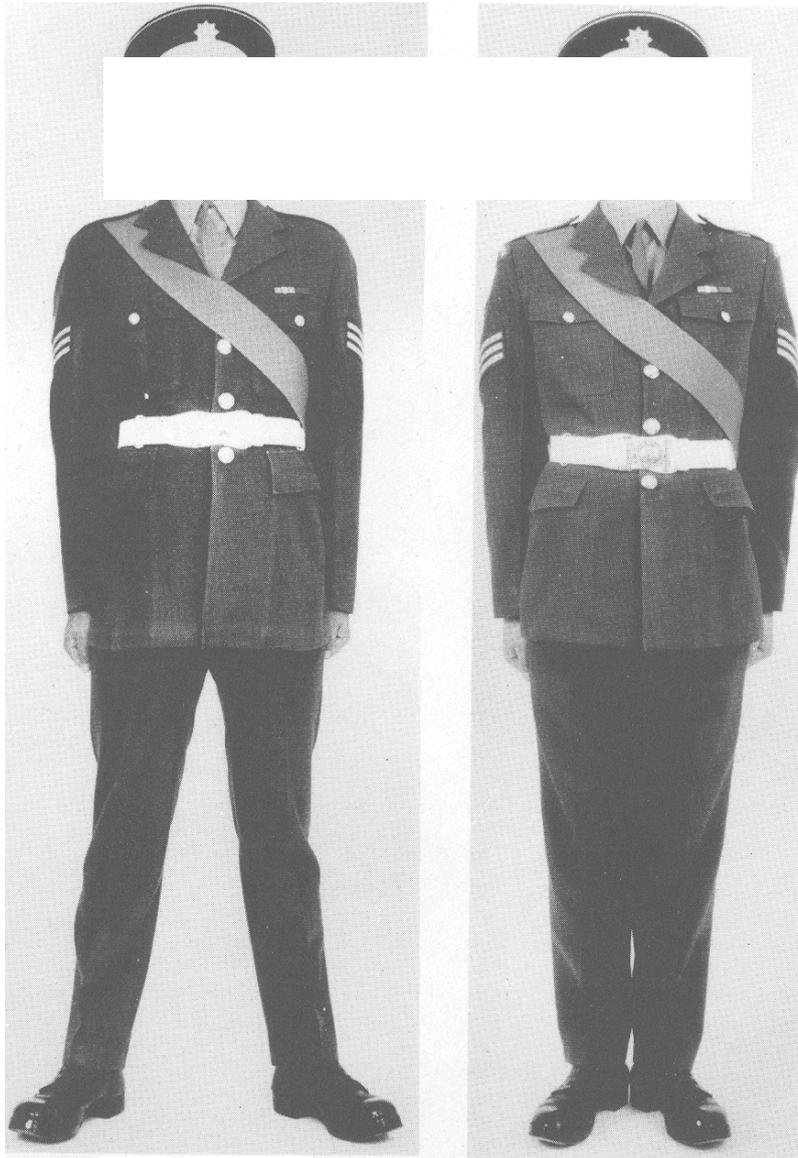
Conclusion

02278. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include a look forward to Marching to be taught in the next lesson.*

02279-02280. *Reserved.*

FIG 12 - SIDE PACE LEFT



First Position

Second Position

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES - MARCHING

Rates of Marching

02281. The British Army drills on the move by marching in either Quick or Slow Time. The quick march is normally carried out at 116 paces to the minute, although recruits should start their training by marching at up to 140 paces to the minute to encourage agility and alertness. The slow march is carried out at 65 paces to the minute and is used primarily in ceremonial.

02282. Throughout the army, units have their traditional rates of quick marching, which they may use unless several units, who have different rates of marching, are on the same parade, then all will march at 116 paces to the minute, except Light Division Regiments who will march past at 140 paces to the minute if practicable. On mixed ceremonial parades, Light Infantry Regiments are prepared to forego their position of seniority and march past last at the regulation Light Infantry pace.

02283. *Reserved.*

LESSON 13 - MARCHING AND HALTING IN QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02284. **Aim.** *To teach Marching and Halting in Quick Time.*

02285. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

02286. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02287. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02288. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02289. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02290. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn Marching and Halting in QuickTime. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of men to march at the regulation rate of 116 paces per minute and to halt in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Marching and Halting in Quick Time

02291. *The instructor is to demonstrate both complete movements, giving the words of command "QUICK - MARCH!", at the same time calling out "LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT", for 11 paces. The instructor is then to halt, at the same time calling out "ONE TWO" as the movement is being executed. Explain: Dealing firstly with Marching in Quick Time. For instructional purposes this movement is broken down into numbered parts. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Quick March - One

(see Fig 13)

02292. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "MARCHING, BY NUMBERS, QUICK MARCH - ONE!", at the same time calling "LEFT" as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward, a full 750 mm (30 inches) marching pace. At the same time, the right arm is forced forward and the left arm to the rear. The body is frozen in this position.*

02293. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground. The left heel is on the ground with the toes raised. Both knees are braced; the right arm is forced forward in line and level with the right shoulder.
- b. The fingers are clenched to form a fist with the thumb forcing down on the index finger, to assist in locking the arm in at the elbow, with the knuckles facing outwards.
- c. The left arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible. The fingers are clenched to form a fist with the thumb forcing down on the index finger, to assist in locking the arm in at the elbow, with knuckles facing outwards.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02294. *Adopt the position of Attention and confirm by practice.*

Quick March - Two

(see Fig 13)

02295. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "RIGHT" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right foot is forced forward a full 750 mm (30 inch) marching pace, bending the knee sufficiently to pass through the correct position of Attention, at the same time alternating the arms. The body is frozen in this position.

02296. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground. The right heel is on the ground with the toes raised, both knees are braced.
- b. The left arm is forced forward in line and level with the left shoulder, the fingers are clenched to form a fist with the thumb forcing down on the index finger to assist in locking the arm in at the elbow, with the knuckles facing outwards.
- c. The right arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible. The fingers are clenched to form a fist with the thumb forcing down on the index finger to assist in locking the arm in at the elbow with the knuckles facing outwards.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02297. *Adopt the last position and confirm by practice.*

Quick March - Three

02298. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "LEFT" as the movement is executed. Explain:* The movement is the same as in "Squad Two" only with the left foot and on the execution of the movement the squad will call out "LEFT".

02299. **Practice:** *After final collective practice, bring the squad to Attention. The instructor is then to step the squad off at the regulation pace of 116 paces to the minute calling out "LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT" for 11 paces at least. Explain:* As "LEFT" is called out it is the left heel that strikes the ground first, the right arm is at the top of its forward swing, level and in line with the right shoulder and the left arm is forced fully to the rear as far as physically possible. When "RIGHT" is called out it is the right heel that strikes the ground, the left arm is at the top of its forward swing, level and in line with the left shoulder, and the right arm is forced fully to the rear as far as physically possible. *Continue practice then order the squad to "Stand Easy".*

The Halt

02300. *Explain:* For instructional purposes the Halt movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part*

Squad Halt - One

(see Fig 14)

02301. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "HALTING, BY NUMBERS, SQUAD HALT - ONE!", at the same time calling "FREEZE" as the movement is*

executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, as the left heel strikes the ground, a further marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) is taken with the right foot, at the same time as the arms are alternated. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "FREEZE".

02302. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground. The left toes are on the ground with the heel raised and both knees braced.
- b. The left arm is forced forward in line and level with the shoulder and the right arm is forced to the rear as far as physically possible.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02303. *The squad is to be brought to Attention, the order "Quick March" given and the movement practised.*

Squad Halt - Two

(see Fig 14)

02304. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "ONE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward 375 mm (15 inches), placing the foot flat and firmly on the ground, at the same time alternating the arms. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out "ONE".

02305. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground.
- b. The right toes are on the ground with the heel raised, both knees are braced, the right arm is forced forward in line and level with the shoulder.
- c. The left arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02306. *Adopt the last position and confirm by practice.*

Squad Halt - Three

(see Fig 1)

02307. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "TWO" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right knee is bent and forced in front of the body, so that the thigh is parallel to the ground, with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced to the ground to resume the correct position of Attention, at the same time forcing both arms into the side of the body in a scissor-like manner. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "TWO".

02308. **Points to Note.** The body is now in the correct position of Attention, erect and square to the front.

02309. *Adopt the last position and confirm by practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02310. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of both movements. On the execution of the Halt the squad will call out "ONE TWO" on the last two movements. Common faults are:*

- a. *Stepping a pace more or less than 750 mm (30 inches).*
- b. *Not keeping the arms, wrists and hands straight.*
- c. *Not pulling the arms fully to the rear.*
- d. *Allowing the feet to come to the ground with the knee bent.*

- e. *Not swinging the arm in a straight line from front to rear.*

02311. *The squad is to practise the whole movement.*

Conclusion

02312. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include Getting on Parade to be taught in the next lesson.*

02313-02314. *Reserved.*

FIG 13 - MARCHING IN QUICK TIME

Amdt No. 1/Nov/91

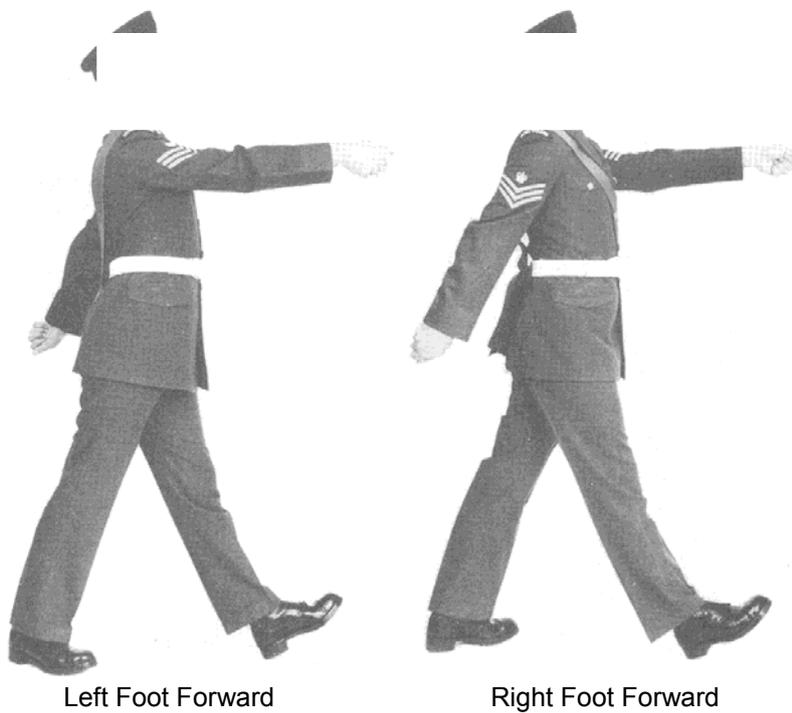
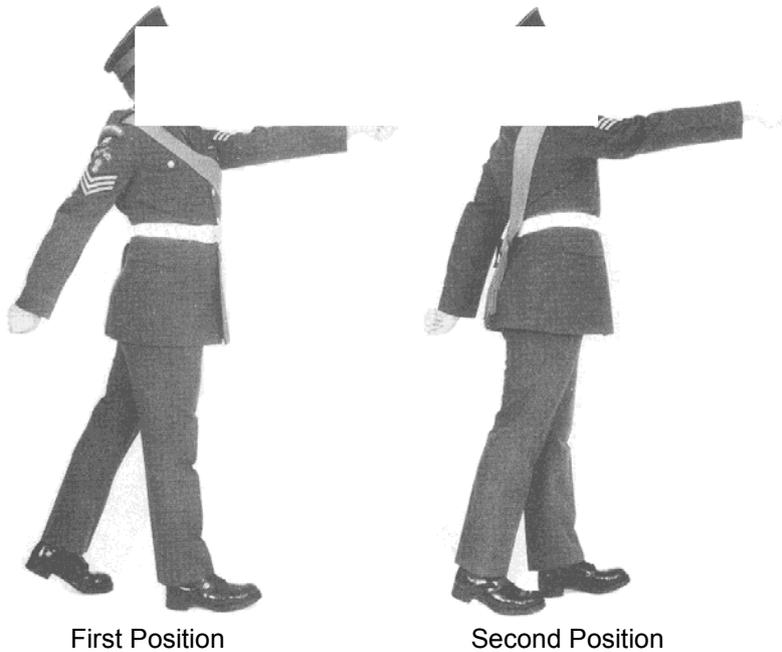


FIG 14 - HALTING IN QUICK TIME



First Position

Second Position

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES - GETTING ON PARADE, NUMBERING, PROVING, AND SIZING

Introduction

02315. The procedures described in this section are for the information of instructors at this stage of recruit training. They should be incorporated in lessons depending on squad progress in the basic drill movements taught so far. The movements can be taught within-15 minutes, therefore an instructor should be able to teach them outside of a normal lesson.

Getting on Parade

02316. To practise this movement the squad is to be Standing Easy, in three ranks, in Close Order, with the front rank facing the direction in which they will get on parade. The right guide or right hand man of the front rank acts as the right marker. The commands are:

- a. **“RIGHT - MARKER!”**.
 - (1) On the command **“RIGHT”** the whole squad comes to the 'At Ease' position.
 - (2) On the command **“MARKER!”** the right marker stands to Attention, marches forward and halts on the fifteenth pace, and stands At Ease.
- b. **“GET ON - PARADE!”**.
 - (1) Both the right marker and the squad stand to Attention. The squad march forward, halt on the fifteenth pace, look to their right and get their dressing. All these movements have the regulation pause between them.
 - (2) When the squad are dressed correctly they will look to their front and stand At Ease in succession from the right.

Note: The distance which the squad comes forward may be shortened if there is not enough space.

Numbering and Proving

02317. **Numbering.** A squad will always be 'numbered' from the right in order that a member of it may be addressed as Number of Rank. To achieve this, the command is **"FROM THE RIGHT - NUMBER!"**.

- a. Each man in the front rank will call out his number in succession from the right, keeping his head and eyes still.
- b. The men in the centre and rear ranks will take the number of their equivalent in the front rank
- c. If an error in the numbering is made the instructor will call out **"AS YOU WERE!"**, followed by the last correct number given. The soldier so named will call out his number again and the front rank will take up the numbering from him.

02318. **Proving.** If a squad is to be divided into two parts, the instructor will first number the squad. He will then select the left hand man of the right half squad, by calling out his number as follows:

- a. **"NUMBER - TWELVE!"**.
 - (1) The man so indicated raises his left forearm to the horizontal, keeping the left elbow still, palm of the hand facing to the right, fingers straight and together.
 - (2) If the instructor requires more than two parts or divisions, he will call out **"NUMBER SIX, TWELVE AND EIGHTEEN"**, and the men so indicated act as above.
- b. **"LEFT OF THE RIGHT HALF - SQUAD!"** or **"LEFT OF NUMBER**
DIVISION!". On the executive word of command the left hand man of the right half squad or the left hand men of divisions force their forearm to their sides.

Sizing

02319. A body of men drills better together and gives a better impression to the spectator if it is correctly sized. A recruit squad will be sized early in its training. Level ground should be used for sizing.

02320. A body of men is sized either *"Tallest on the right, shortest on the left"* *"Tallest on the left, shortest on the right"* or *"Tallest on the flanks, shortest in the centre"*. It is done by forming everyone into a single rank and grading them using the top of the head dress as a guide.

02321. The sequence for *"Tallest on the flanks, shortest in the centre"* is:

- a. **"TALLEST ON THE RIGHT, SHORTEST ON THE LEFT, IN SINGLE RANK - SIZE!"**. The squad turn to their right, count the regulation pause and then break off and obey the command. When the instructor has sized everyone into his correct position he will continue.
- b. **"FROM THE RIGHT - NUMBER!"**.
- c. **"ODD NUMBERS ONE PACE FORWARD, EVEN NUMBERS ONE PACE BACKWARDS - MARCH!"**. The instructor must check this movement.
- d. **"STAND STILL THE RIGHT HAND MAN, FRONT RANK TO THE RIGHT, REAR RANK TO THE LEFT, RANKS RIGHT AND LEFT - TURN!"**.
- e. **"FORM THREE RANKS - QUICK MARCH!"**.
 - (1) The even numbers wheel through 180 degrees and follow the last odd number.
 - (2) No. 1 remains as right hand man, No. 3 becomes right hand man of the centre rank, No. 5 the right hand man of the rear rank, No. 7 becomes No. 2 of the front rank, etc.
 - (3) On halting in position each man turns to his front, takes up his own dressing by the right and remains at Attention.

02322. The sequence for *"Tallest on the right, shortest on the left"* remains the same as sub paragraphs **a.** and **b.** above but then is:

- a. **“STAND STILL THE RIGHT HAND MAN, REMAINDER, RIGHT - TURN!”**.
- b. **“FORM THREE RANKS - QUICK MARCH!”**. In this case No. 1 remains the right hand man, No. 2 and No. 3 become right hand men of the centre and rear ranks respectively, No. 4 becomes No. 2 of the front rank, etc.

02323. **Two Ranks**. When a body of troops is about to parade in two ranks but requires three ranks in the preparatory stages, they should be sized in two ranks and then allotted their positions in three ranks, as opposed to being sized in three ranks and then ordered to **“FORM TWO RANKS!”**.

02324. *Reserved.*

LESSON 14 - TURNINGS TO THE RIGHT AND LEFT FLANK IN QUICK TIME AND INCLINING

A. INSTRUCTOR’S NOTES

02325. **Aim**. *To teach Turnings to a Flank in Quick Time, the Right and Left Turn, and Inclining.*

02326. **Timings**. *One 40 minute period.*

02327. **Method**. *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02328. **Dress and Stores**. *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02329. **Preparation**. *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02330. **Squad Formation**. *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02331. **Explain**: The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Right and Left Turns in Quick Time. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of men to turn through an angle of 90 degrees to the right or left without first being hailed, in a smart, uniform manner. *The instructor is to order the squad to “Stand Easy” and then give a demonstration of the left and right turns explaining that the right turn will be taught first finishing with the Inclining.*

The Right Turn

02332. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command “TURNINGS, RIGHT - TURN!”. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Right Turn - One

02333. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “TURNINGS, BY NUMBERS, RIGHT TURN - ONE!”, calling out “FREEZE” as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command “ONE!” - given on the left foot - a 750 mm (30 inches) pace is taken with the right foot, at the same time swinging the left arm forward and the right arm to the rear. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “FREEZE”.*

02334. **Points to Note**. These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground, the right knee braced. The toes of the left foot are on the ground, with the left heel raised.
- b. The left arm is forward, level and in line with the left shoulder. The right arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02335. *The squad is to be brought to Attention, the order "Quick March" given and the movement practised.*

Right Turn - Two

(see Fig 15)

02336. *The instructor will demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, both arms are forced into the side of the body in a smart, scissor-like movement. At the same time, the left leg is bent in front of the body. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "TWO".

02337. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground, the right knee braced. The left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel with the ground and the left foot is hanging naturally below the knee.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02338. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Right Turn - Three

(see Fig 15)

02339. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head and eyes, shoulders, body and right foot is forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right by means of pivoting on the right heel. At the same time, the left foot is forced down beside the right. As the left foot contacts with the ground the right foot is forced forward a short pace of 375 mm (15 inches). The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "THREE".

02340. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground. The right foot is just clear of the ground with the toes pointing upward.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front

02341. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Right Turn - Forward

02342. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command "FORWARD!", at the same time calling out "FORWARD" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right foot is forced forward a further 375 mm (15 inches) to complete a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches). At the same time the left arm is swung forward and the right arm to the rear and the march continues in Quick Time. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "FORWARD".

02343. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The heel of the right foot touches the ground first.
- b. The left arm is swung forward level and in line with the left shoulder, the right arm is swung to the rear as far as is physically possible, whilst marching at the regulation rate of 116 paces to the minute.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02344. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02345. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of this movement the squad are not required to call out any timings.*

The Left Turn

(see Fig 16)

02346. *The instructor is to demonstrate the Left Turn again and explain: The movement is the same as for the Right Turn, except that the legs and body movements are opposite, the executive command "ONE!" or "TURN!" being given as the right foot strikes the ground. Order the squad to practise and confirm both movements.*

Inclining

02347. *Explain: This movement enables a squad to turn through 45 degrees. A common fault is lack of dressing. A Left Incline uses the same method as a Left Turn; a Right Incline the same as a Right Turn. The executive words of command are "DIAGONAL MARCH, LEFT/RIGHT - INCLINE!"*

02348. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

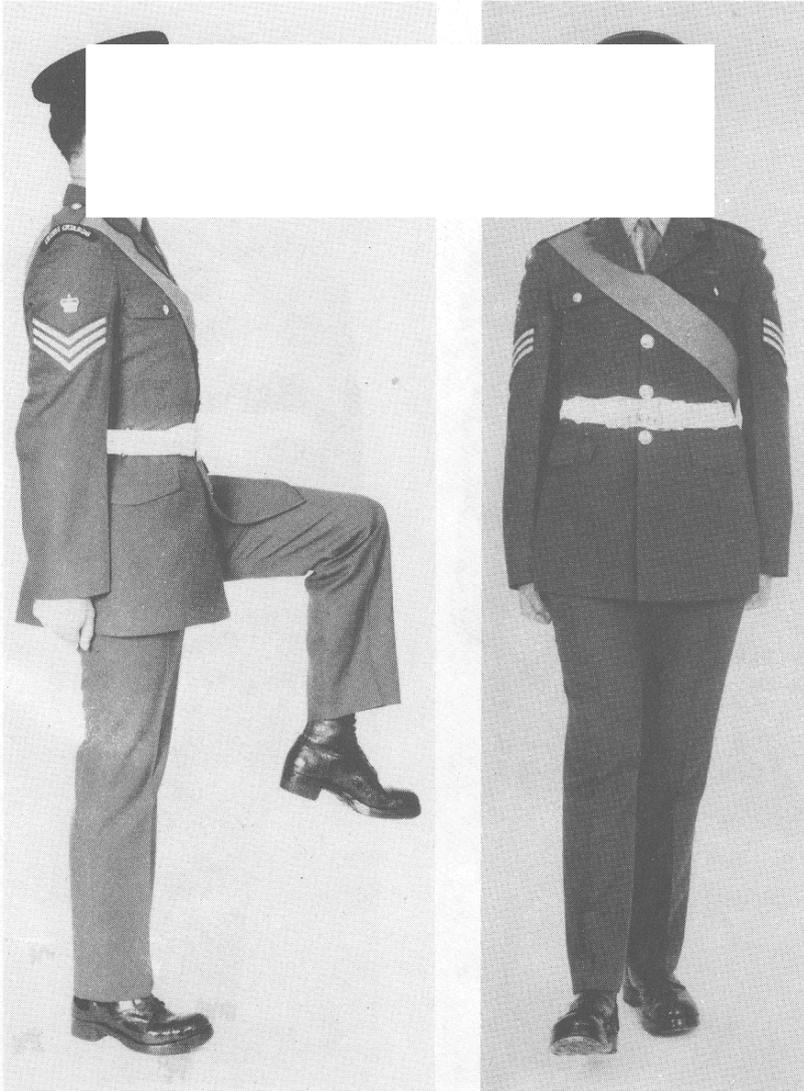
Conclusion

02349. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the About Turn movement to be taught in the next lesson.*

02350-02351. *Reserved.*

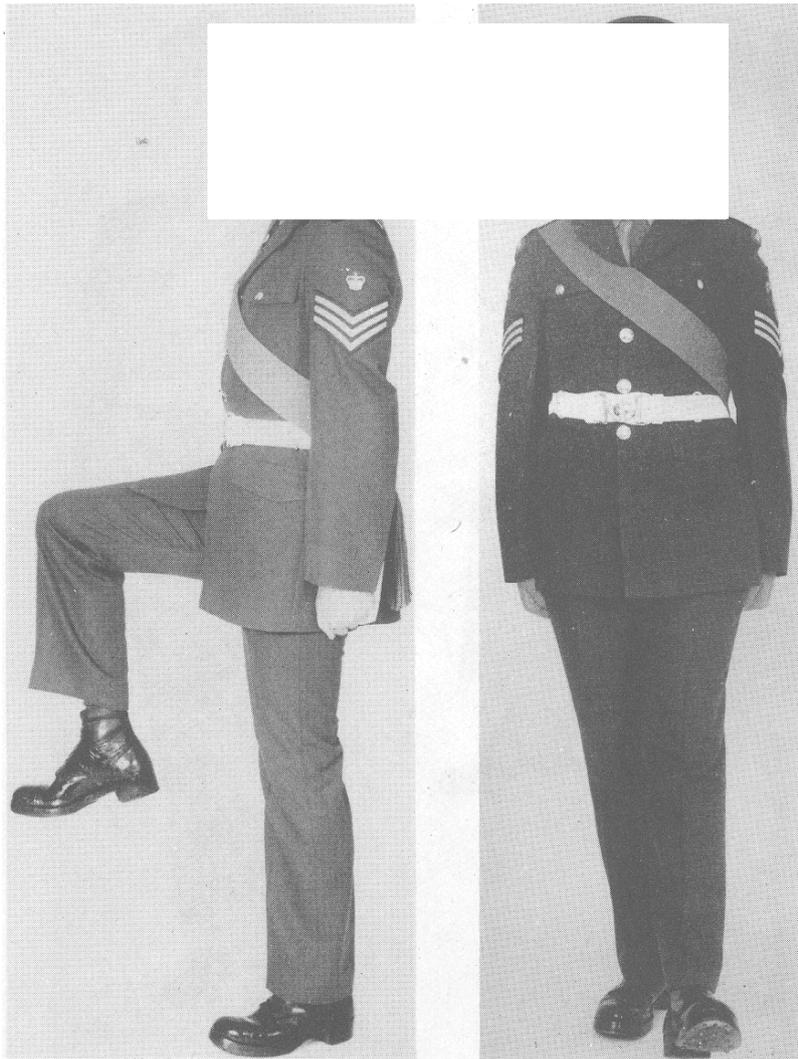
FIG 15 - RIGHT TURN IN QUICK TIME



Second Position

Third Position

FIG 16 - LEFT TURN IN QUICK TIME



Second Position

Third Position

LESSON 15 - THE ABOUT TURN IN QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02352. **Aim.** To teach the About Turn in Quick Time.

02353. **Timings.** One 40 minute period.

02354. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

02355. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.

02356. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02357. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

02358. *Explain:* The next stage in foot drill is to learn the About Turn in Quick Time. The reason the movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of men to turn through an angle of 180 degrees without first being halted, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

About Turn in Quick Time

02359. *The instructor will demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, ABOUT - TURN!", at the same time calling out "IN - LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT - FORWARD" as the movement is executed. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching as you demonstrate each part.*

About Turn - One

(see Fig 17)

02360. *The instructor will demonstrate this movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, BY NUMBERS, ABOUT TURN - ONE!", at the same time calling out "IN" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command "**ONE!**", which is given as the right heel strikes the ground, a further 750 mm (30 inches) pace is taken with the left foot, at the same time alternating the arms. A short pace of 375 mm (15 inches) is then taken with the right foot, at the same time forcing the arms into the side of the body in a sharp, scissor-like movement. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "IN".

02361. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, at an angle of 30 degrees front centre of the body.
- b. The right heel is against and touching the left instep.
- c. Both knees are braced.
- d. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02362. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practise.*

About Turn - Two

02363. *The instructor will demonstrate this movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "LEFT" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head, eyes, shoulders, body and right foot are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right by means of pivoting on the right heel. At the same time, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced down to the ground beside the right. The body is then frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "LEFT".

02364. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees, front centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02365. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

About Turn - One (Combination)

(see Fig 17 - Second Position)

02366. *Explain:* For ease and simplicity of instruction, 'About Turn - One' and 'Squad Two' are combined to form a new 'About Turn - One'. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate the combined movement.*

02367. *The instructor will demonstrate this movement, giving the words of command “TURNINGS, ABOUT TURN - ONE!”, at the same time calling out “IN - LEFT” as the movement is executed. Explain:* On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “IN - LEFT”.

02368. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practise.*

About Turn - Two

(see Fig 16 - Second Position)

02369. *The instructor will demonstrate this movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - TWO!”, at the same time calling out “RIGHT” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head, shoulders, body and left foot are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right (completing a full 180 degrees turn) by means of pivoting on the left heel. At the same time, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground with the right foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is forced down beside the left. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “RIGHT”.

02370. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The body is now facing its new direction. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, at an angle of 30 degrees front centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02371. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

About Turn - Three

02372. *The instructor will demonstrate this movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - THREE!”, at the same time calling out “LEFT” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body, so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced down to the ground beside the right. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “LEFT”.

02373. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees front centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02374. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

About Turn - Forward

02375. *The instructor will demonstrate this movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - FORWARD!”, at the same time calling out “FORWARD” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right foot is forced forward a 750 mm (30 inches) marching pace. At the same time, the left arm is swung forward and the right arm is swung to the rear whilst continuing to march in Quick Time. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “FORWARD”.

02376. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right heel strikes the ground first and the left arm is swung forward level and in line with the left shoulder.
- b. The right arm is swung to the rear as far as is physically possible whilst marching at the regulation rate of 116 paces to the minute.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front

02377. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02378. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of the movement the squad will call out "IN - LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT - FORWARD".*

02379. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

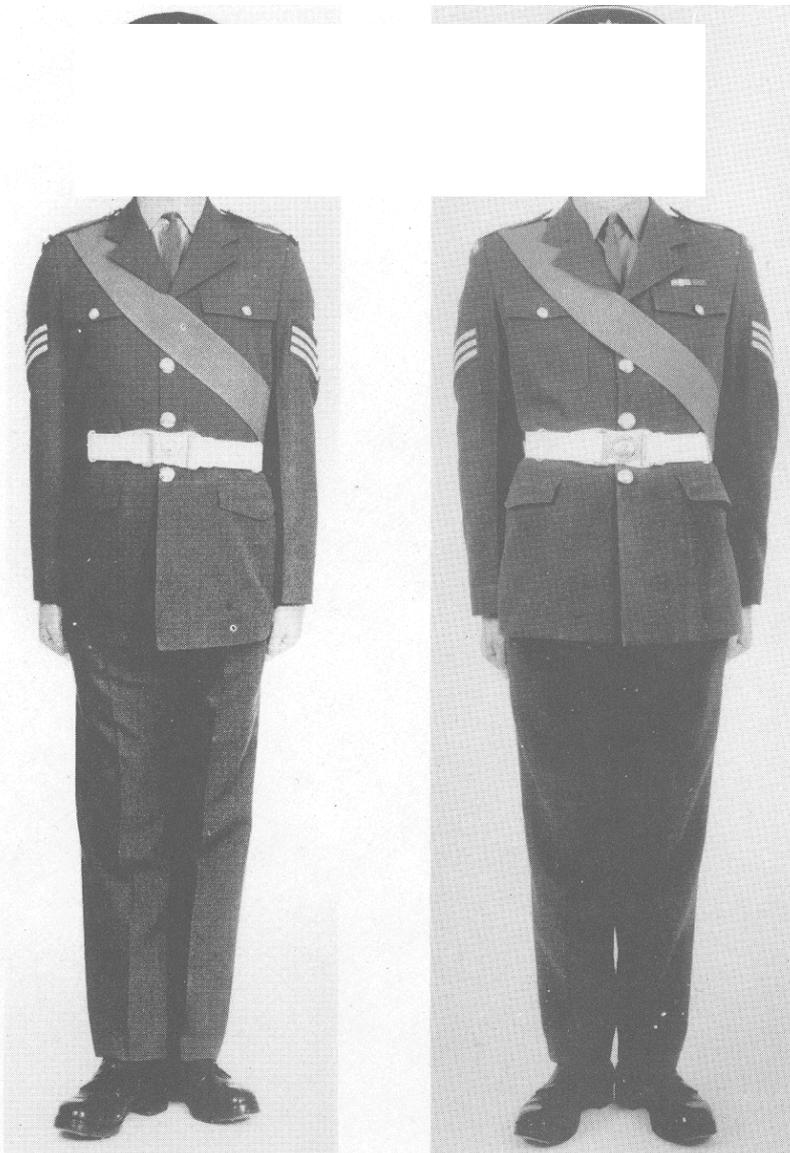
Conclusion

02380. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the Change Step in Quick Time to be taught in the next lesson.*

02381-02382. *Reserved.*

FIG 17 - ABOUT TURN IN QUICK TIME



First Position

Second Position

LESSON 16 - THE CHANGE STEP IN QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02383. **Aim.** To teach the Change Step in Quick Time.

02384. **Timings.** One 40 minute period.

02385. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

02386. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.

02387. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02388. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

02389. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Change Step in Quick Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of men to regain a lost step in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.

The Change Step

02390. **The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "CHANGING STEP, CHANGE - STEP!", at the same time calling out "LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT" as the movement is executed. Explain:** For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.

Change Step - One

02391. **The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "CHANGING STEP, BY NUMBERS, CHANGE STEP - ONE!", at the same time calling out "LEFT" as the movement is executed. Explain:** Immediately on the command, which is given as the right heel strikes the ground, a full 750 mm (30 inches) pace is taken with the left foot, at the same time alternating the arms. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "LEFT".

02392. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground, the left knee braced. The right toes are on the ground, the heel raised.
- b. The right arm is forward, level and in line with the right shoulder. The left arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02393. **The squad is to be brought to Attention, the order "Quick March" given and the movement practised.**

Change Step - Two

(see Fig 18)

02394. **The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "RIGHT" as the movement is executed. Explain:** Immediately on the command, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground, with the right foot hanging naturally below the knee. At the same time, the arms are forced into the side of the body in a sharp, scissor-like motion and the right foot is forced down behind the left foot.

The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement, which is carried out in double time, the squad will call out "RIGHT".

02395. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground with the right instep against and touching the left heel.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02396. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Change Step - Three

02397. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "LEFT" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward a full 750 mm (30 inches) marching pace. At the same time, the right arm is swung forward and the left arm forced to the rear and the march in Quick Time is continued. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "LEFT".

02398. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left heel strikes the ground first and the right arm is swung forward level and in line with the right shoulder.
- b. The left arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible, whilst marching at the regulation rate of 116 paces to the minute.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02399. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02400. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. On the execution of this movement the squad will call Out "LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT". A common fault is not to return the arms to the sides in the second movement.*

02401. **Note.** *Explain:* The words of command "**CHANGE - STEP!**" are given on consecutive left and right feet; "**CHANGE**" on the left and "**STEP**" on the right.

02402. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02403. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include Marking Time and Halting to be taught in the next lesson.*

02404. *Reserved.*

FIG 18 - CHANGE STEP IN QUICK TIME



Second Position

LESSON 17 - MARKING TIME IN QUICK TIME AT THE HALT - HALTING FROM MARKING TIME IN QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02405. **Aim.** To teach Marking Time in Quick Time at the Halt and to Halt from Quick Mark Time.

02406. **Timings.** One 10 minute period.

02407. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

02408. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.

02409. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02410. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02411. *Explain:* The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Mark Time at the Halt in Quick Time and the Halt from Marking Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of men to remain in the same position whilst on the march. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Mark Time in Quick Time at the Halt and the Halt

02412. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "QUICK MARK - TIME!", "SQUAD - HALT!". Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Quick Mark - Time

02413. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "QUICK MARK - TIME!", at the same time calling out the regulation rate of march as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The foot is then lowered to the ground. As the left leg takes the weight of the body, the right leg is bent and the instructor continues to mark time in Quick Time. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out any timings.

02414. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left leg is bent first whilst marking time at the regulation rate of 116 paces to the minute.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02415. *Adopt the position of Attention and confirm by practice.*

Halt from Mark Time

02416. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - HALT!". Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is given as the left knee is at its highest point, the left foot is lowered to the ground, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced to the ground beside the left. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out.

02417. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, both knees are braced to assume the position of Attention.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02418. *The squad is to be brought to Attention, the order "Quick Mark Time" given and the movement practised.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02419. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement reminding the squad that it does not call out.*

02420. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02421. *End of Lesson Drill*

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the Marking Time and Halting and Forward in Quick Time to be taught in the next lesson.*

02422-02423. *Reserved.*

LESSON 18 - MARKING TIME IN QUICK TIME - FORWARD FROM MARKING TIME IN QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02424. *Aim. To teach the Mark Time in Quick Time and Forward from Marking Time.*

02425. *Timings. One 15 minute period.*

02426. *Method. A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02427. *Dress and Stores. No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02428. *Preparation. Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02429. *Squad Formation. The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02430. *Explain:* The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Mark Time and Forward in Quick Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of men to Mark Time and then continue marching in Quick Time in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Mark Time and Forward

02431. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "MARK TIME!" "FORWARD!". Explain:* For instructional purposes these movements are taught by demonstration and explanation. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate.

The Mark Time

02432. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "MARK - TIME!", at the same time calling out "IN" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is given as the right heel strikes the ground, a full 750 mm (30 inches) pace is taken with the left foot, at the same time alternating the arms. A short pace of 150 mm (6 inches) is then taken with the right, at the same time forcing the arms into the side of the body in a sharp, scissor-like motion. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "IN".

02433. *Points to Note.* These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, at an angle of 30 degrees front centre of the body.
- b. The right heel is against and touching the left instep.
- c. The knees are braced.

- d. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02434. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practise.*

Mark Time - Two

02435. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!". Explain: Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then lowered to the ground, toes touching first. As the left foot takes the weight of the body the right leg is bent in front and the instructor continues to mark time in Quick Time. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out.*

02436. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left leg is bent first whilst marking time at the regulation rate of 116 paces to the minute.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02437. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Forward

02438. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command "FORWARD!". Explain: Immediately on the command, which is received as the left knee is at its highest point, on the next right foot, the foot is forced to the ground beside the left foot. As the right foot strikes the ground the left foot is forced forward a full 750 mm (30 inches) marching pace. The right arm is swung forward and the left arm is swung to the rear and the march in Quick Time continues. The squad will not call out.*

02439. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is forced to the ground. The left foot takes the first 750 mm (30 inches) pace.
- b. The right arm is swung forward and level and in line with the right shoulder. The left arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible.
- c. Whilst marching the remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02440. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02441. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movements reminding the squad that it does not call out.*

02442. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02443. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. Questions from the squad on the lesson.
- b. Further confirmation by practice as time permits.
- c. Summary. To include the Change Step to be taught in the next lesson.

02444-02445. *Reserved.*

LESSON 19 - CHANGING STEP WHILST MARKING TIME AT THE HALT IN SLOW AND QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02446. **Aim.** To teach Changing Step Whilst Marking Time at the Halt in Slow and Quick Time.

02447. **Timings.** One 15 minute period.

02448. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

02449. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.

02450. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02451. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

02452. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Change Step Whilst Marking Time at the Halt in Slow and Quick Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of men to regain a lost step whilst marking time, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Change Step Whilst Marking Time

02453. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "MARK TIME, CHANGING STEP, CHANGE - STEP!", at the same time calling out the regulation time as the movement is executed. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught by demonstration and explanation. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate.*

Change Step

(see Fig 18)

02454. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement in Slow time, giving the words of command "CHANGING STEP, CHANGE - STEP!", at the same time calling out "LEFT - LEFT - RIGHT" as the movement is executed. Explain: Immediately on the command, which is given on consecutive left and right feet, the instructor marks time with the LEFT leg twice then continues to mark time as normal. On the execution of the movement the squad will call out "LEFT - LEFT - RIGHT".*

02455. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. It is the left leg that is bent twice whilst marking time at the regulation rate.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02456. *The squad is to be brought to Attention, the order "Slow Mark Time" given and the movement practised; followed by practice in "Quick March Time".*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02457. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movements reminding the squad to call out "LEFT - LEFT - RIGHT" in Slow and Quick Time.*

02458. **Note.** *Explain:* The words of command "CHANGE - STEP!" are given on consecutive left and right feet, "CHANGE" on the left and "STEP" on the right.

02459. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02460. *End of Lesson Drill.*

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include Marching and Halting in Slow Time to be taught in the next lesson.*

02461. *Reserved.*

LESSON 20 - MARCHING AND HALTING IN SLOW TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02462. *Aim.* To teach Marching and Halting in Slow Time.

02463. *Timings.* One 40 minute period.

02464. *Method.* A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

02465. *Dress and Stores.* No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.

02466. *Preparation.* Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02467. *Squad Formation.* The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

02468. *Explain:* The next stage in foot drill is to learn Marching and Halting in Slow Time. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of men to march at the regulation rate of 65 paces per minute in Slow Time and to halt in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Marching and Halting in Slow Time

02469. *The instructor is to demonstrate both complete movements, giving the words of command "SLOW - MARCH!", at the same time calling out the correct rate of march, "LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT" for 11 paces. The instructor is then to give the command "SQUAD - HALT!", calling out "ONE TWO" on the last two movements of the Halt. Explain:* This lesson is broken down into two parts, first marching in Slow Time. For instructional purposes the movement is taught by balanced step. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate.*

Slow March - One

(see Fig 19)

02470. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SLOW MARCH, BY BALANCED STEP, LEFT FOOT - FRONT!", at the same time calling out "FRONT" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward a short pace of 375 mm (15 inches). The body is frozen in this position.

02471. *Points to Note.* These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground. The left foot is just clear of the ground with the toes pointing downwards and outwards.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02472. *Confirm by questions.*

Left Foot - Forward

(see Fig 19)

02473. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “LEFT FOOT - FORWARD!”, at the same time calling out “FORWARD” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward a further 375 mm (15 inches) to complete a full 750 mm (30 inches) marching pace with the left foot. The body is frozen in this position.

02474. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The outside edge of the foot touches the ground first. The left foot is then flat and firm on the ground, the left knee braced.
- b. The toes of the right foot are on the ground with the right heel raised.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02475. *Confirm by questions.*

Right Foot - Forward

(see Fig 20)

02476. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “RIGHT FOOT - FORWARD!”, at the same time calling out “RIGHT” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right foot is forced forward a full marching 750 mm (30 inches) pace, bending the knee sufficiently to allow the foot to pass through the correct position of Attention.

02477. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The outside edge of the right foot touches the ground first. The right foot is now flat and firm on the ground.
- b. The right knee is braced, the toes of the left foot are on the ground with the left heel raised.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

Left Foot - Forward

02478. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “LEFT FOOT - FORWARD!”, at the same time calling out “LEFT” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward a full marching 750 mm (30 inches) pace, bending the knee sufficiently to allow the foot to pass through the correct position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “FRONT - FORWARD - RIGHT - LEFT”.

02479. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The outside edge of the left foot touches the ground first. The left foot is then flat and firm on the ground.
- b. The left knee is braced, the toes of the right foot are on the ground with the right heel raised.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02480. *Confirm by questions then turn the squad to the left, and from the position of Attention practise.*

Combination

02481. *The instructor is to step the squad off at the regulation rate of 65 paces to the minute. Explain:* As the instructor calls out “LEFT”, the squad must ensure the outside edge of the left foot touches the ground. As the instructor calls out “RIGHT”, the squad must ensure the outside edge of their right foot touches the ground for at least 11 paces.

02482. *Confirm by questions then practise.*

The Halt

(see Fig 21)

02483. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - HALT!”, at the same time calling out “ONE TWO” on the last two movements of the Halt. Explain: Immediately on the command, which is given as the left foot passes the right, the left foot completes a short pace of 375 mm (15 inches), and is placed flat and firm on the ground. The right knee is then bent in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel with the ground, the right foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced down to the ground to resume the correct position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of the last two movements of the Halt the squad will call out “ONE TWO”.*

02484. **Points to Note.** *The body is now in the correct position of Attention, and is held erect and square to the front.*

02485. *Confirm by questions then practise.*

Final Demonstration of Both the Complete Movements

02486. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movements reminding the squad that it must call out “ONE TWO”. Common faults are:*

- a. *Leaning back and not being able to adopt the correct position with the feet, i.e., outside of the boot touching the ground first.*
- b. *Allowing the arms and fists to slacken, thus not assuming the correct position of Attention.*

02487. *Confirm by questions then practise.*

Conclusion

02488. **End of Lesson Drill**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include Turnings in Slow Time to be taught in the next lesson.*

02489-02491. *Reserved.*

FIG 19 - MARCHING IN SLOW TIME - LEFT FOOT

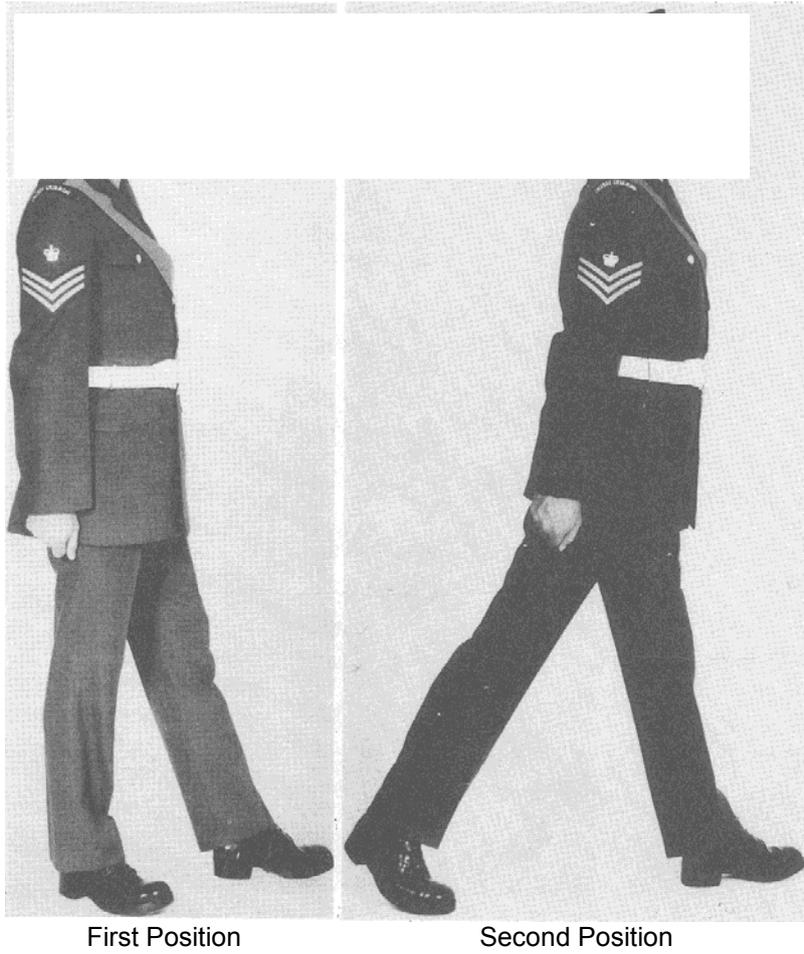
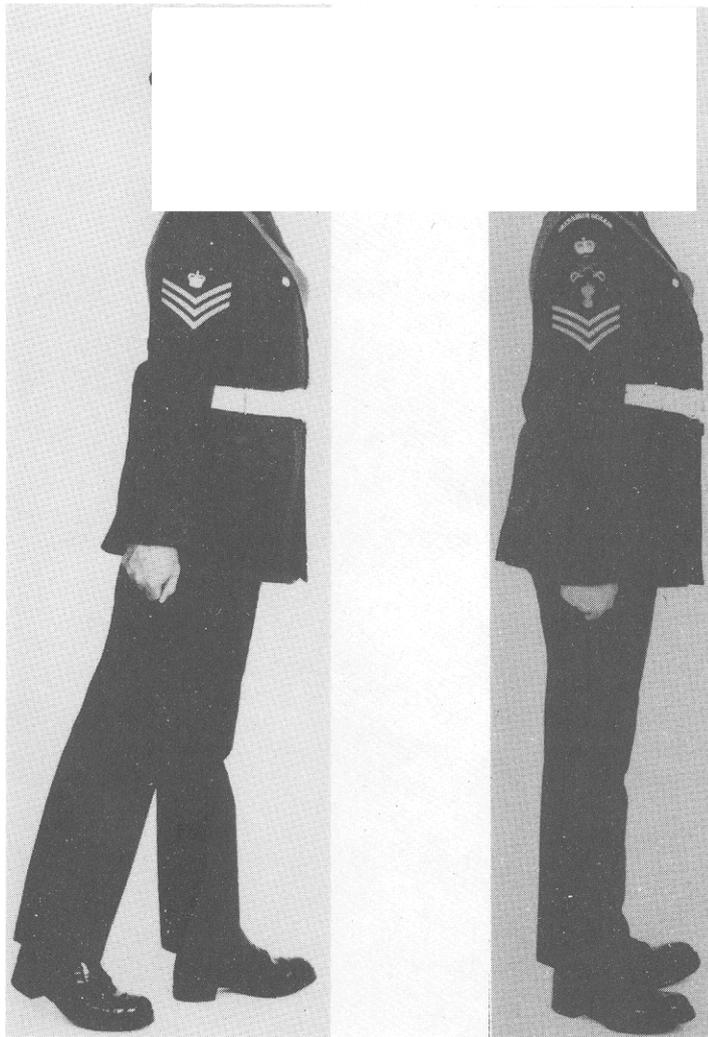


FIG 20 - MARCHING IN SLOW TIME - RIGHT FOOT



FIG 21 - HALTING IN SLOW TIME



First Position

Second Position

LESSON 21 - TURNINGS TO THE RIGHT AND LEFT FLANK IN SLOW TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02492. **Aim.** To teach the Right and Left Turn in Slow Time.

02493. **Timings.** One 40 minute period.

02494. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

02495. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.

02496. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02497. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

02498. *Explain:* The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Right and Left Turns in Slow Time. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of men to turn through an angle of 90 degrees to the right or left without first being halted, in a smart, uniform manner. The right turn will be taught first. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Right Turn

02499. *The instructor will demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, RIGHT - TURN!". Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Right Turn - One

(see Fig 22)

02500. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, BY NUMBERS, RIGHT TURN - ONE!", at the same time calling out "FREEZE" on the execution of the movement. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is given as the right foot passes the left, the right foot completes its full marching 750 mm (30 inches) pace. The left leg is bent in front of the body. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "FREEZE".

02501. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground, the right knee braced. The left knee is bent in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground and the foot hanging naturally below the knee.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

02502. *Confirm by questions then bring the squad to Attention, turn right and practise.*

Right Turn - Two

(see Fig 22)

02503. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head and shoulders, body and right foot are forced through an angle of 90 degrees, by means of pivoting on the right heel. At the same time, the left foot is forced down to the ground beside the right foot. As the left foot contacts the ground the right foot is forced forward a short pace of 375 mm (15 inches). The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "TWO".

02504. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground with the left knee braced.
- b. The right foot is just clear of the ground with the toes pointing downwards and outwards.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02505. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Right Turn - Forward

02506. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command "FORWARD!", at the same time calling out "FORWARD" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right foot is forced forward a further 375 mm (15 inches), thereby completing a full 750 mm (30 inches) pace and marching in slow time continues.

02507. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. It was the outside edge of the right foot which touched the ground first, whilst marching at the regulation rate of 65 paces to the minute.

- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02508. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Right Turn Movement

02509. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement reminding the squad that now they are not required to call out.*

The Left Turn

(see Fig 23)

02510. *The instructor is now to teach and practise the squad in the Left Turn, using the opposite leg and body movements.*

02511. *Confirm by questions then practise both movements.*

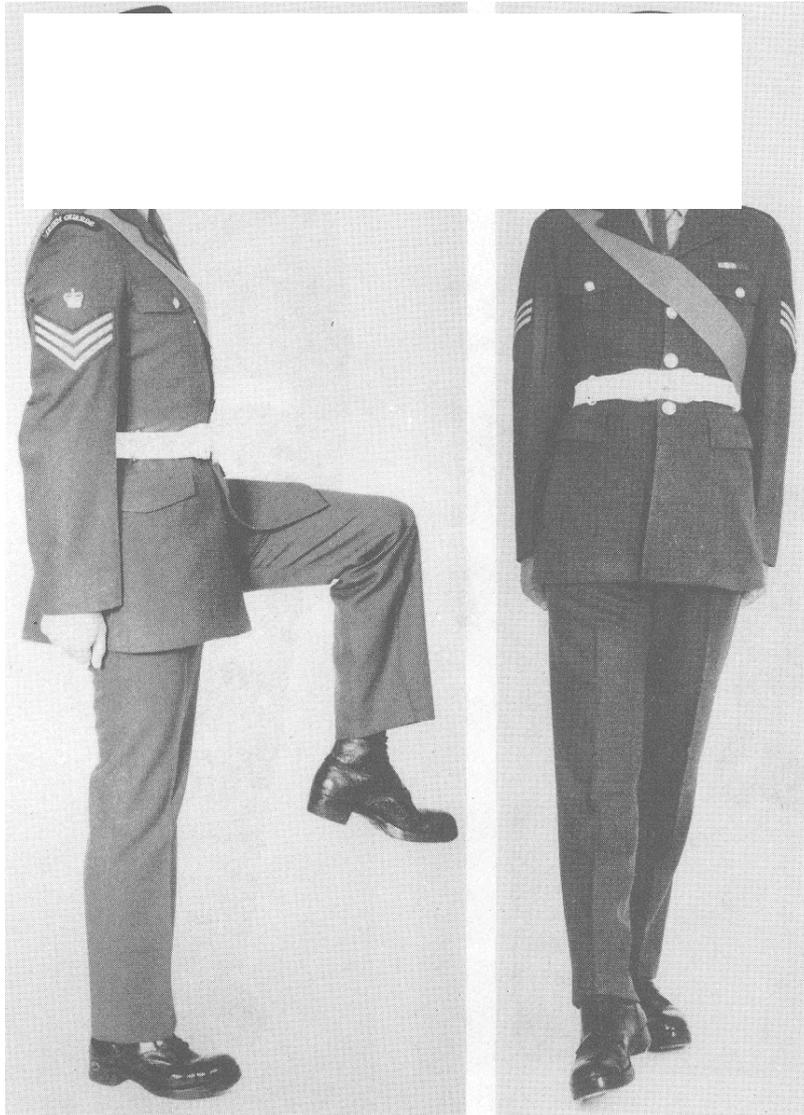
Conclusion

02512. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the About Turn in Slow Time to be taught in the next lesson.*

02513-02514. *Reserved.*

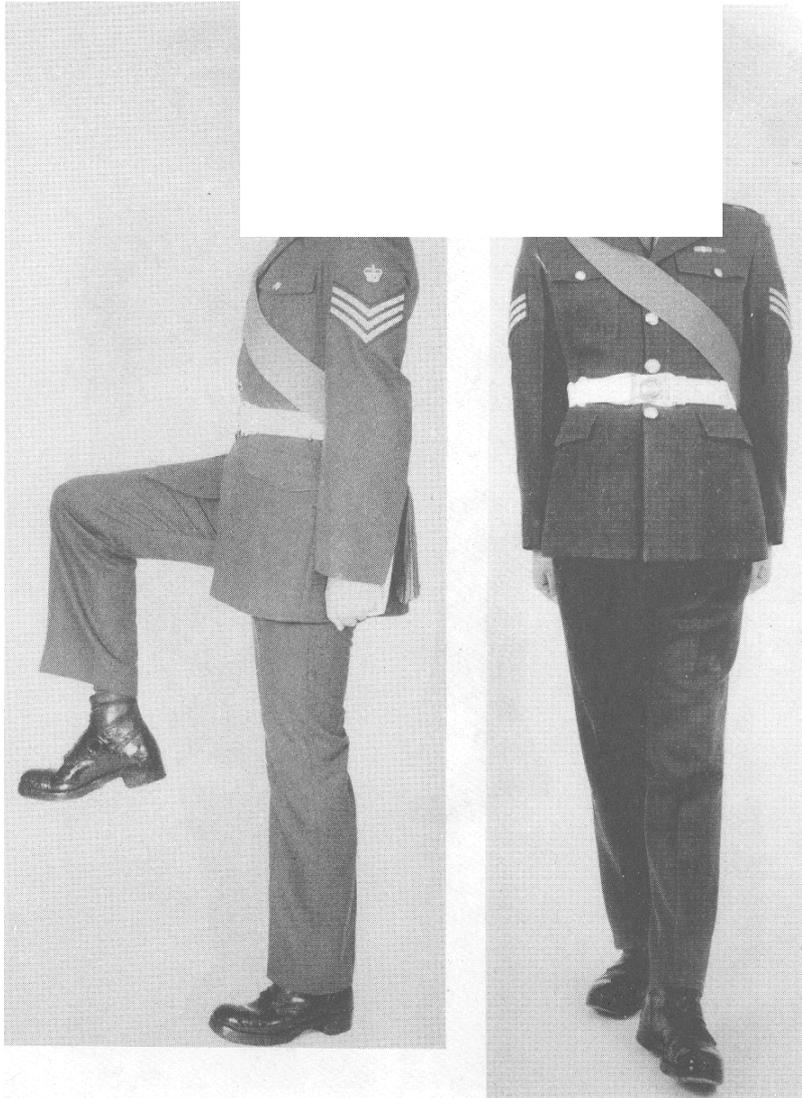
FIG 22 - RIGHT TURN IN SLOW TIME



First Position

Second Position

FIG 23 - LEFT TURN IN SLOW TIME



First Position

Second Position

LESSON 22 - THE ABOUT TURN IN SLOW TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02515. **Aim.** To teach the About Turn in Slow Time.

02516. **Timings.** One 40 minute period.

02517. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

02518. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.

02519. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02520. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

02521. *Explain:* The next stage in foot drill is to learn the About Turn in Slow Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of men to turn through an angle of 180 degrees to the right, without first being halted, in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.

The About Turn

02522. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, ABOUT - TURN!", at the same time calling out "ONE STOP - TWO STOP - THREE STOP - FORWARD" as the movement is executed. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part*

About Turn - One

(see Fig 24)

02523. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "TURNINGS, BY NUMBERS, ABOUT TURN - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE STOP" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is given as the right foot passes the left, the right foot completes a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches). The head, shoulders, body and right foot are then forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right by means of pivoting on the right heel. At the same time, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground, with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced down to the ground beside the right foot. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out "ONE STOP".

02524. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees from a line front, centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02525. *Confirm by questions then form up the squad ready to Slow March to the left and practise.*

About Turn - Two

(see Fig 24)

02526. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO STOP" as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the head, shoulders, body and left foot are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right (completing the full 180 degrees turn) by means of pivoting on the left heel. At the same time, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground with the right foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced down to the ground beside the left foot. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "TWO STOP".

02527. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The body is facing its new direction.
- b. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, at an angle of 30 degrees front, centre of the body.
- c. Both knees are braced.
- d. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02528. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

About Turn - Three

02529. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE STOP” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel with the ground, with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced down beside the right. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “THREE STOP”.

02530. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees to the front, centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02531. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

About Turn - Forward

02532. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - FORWARD!”, at the same time calling out “FORWARD” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right foot is forced forward a full 750 mm (30 inches) marching pace and the March in Slow Time is continued. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “FORWARD”.

02533. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The outside edge of the right boot touches the ground first, whilst marching at the regulation rate of 65 paces to the minute.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02534. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02535. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement reminding the squad that they have to call out “ONE STOP - TWO STOP - THREE STOP - FORWARD”.*

02536. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

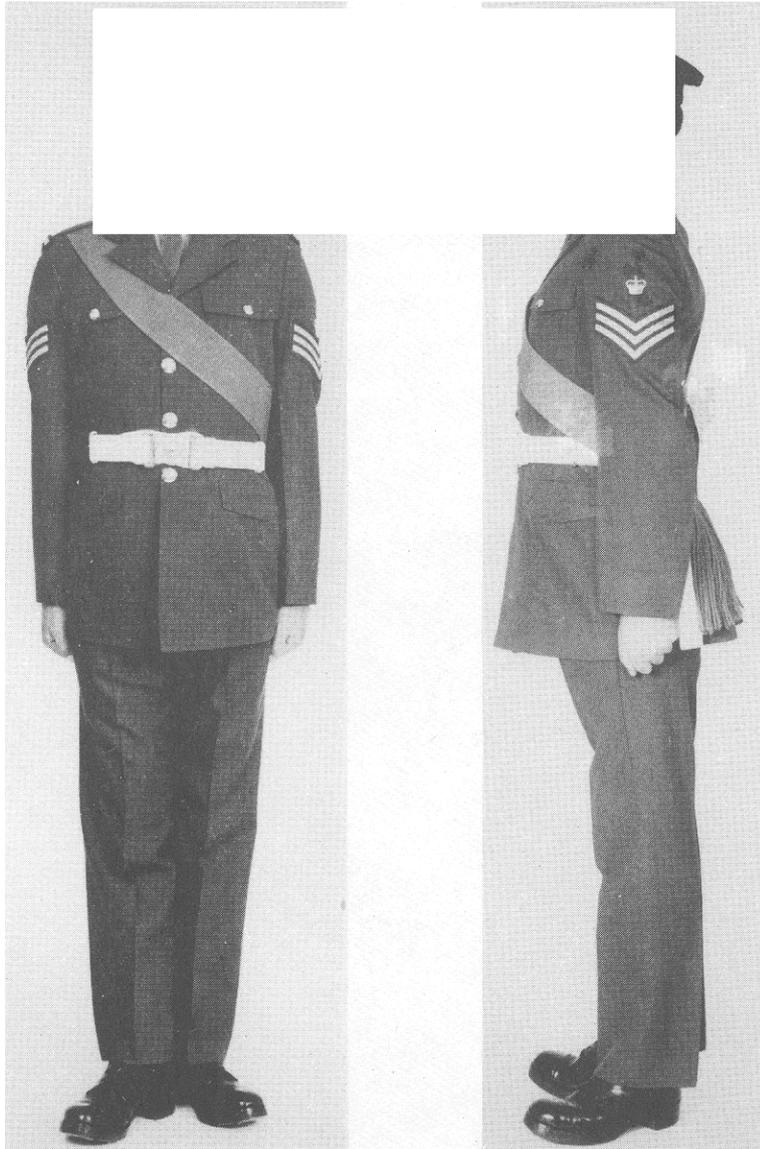
Conclusion

02537. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the Change Step in Slow Time to be taught in the next lesson.*

02538-02539. *Reserved.*

FIG 24 - ABOUT TURN IN SLOW TIME



First Position

Second Position

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES - INCLINING AND WHEELING IN SLOW AND QUICK TIME

Inclining

02540. **Execution.** This movement enables a squad to march diagonally without losing its formation. The order "**DIAGONAL MARCH, LEFT - INCLINE!**" is given as the right foot passes the left. There is no need to teach this initially by numbers. The squad will turn through 45 degrees using the same method as in the Left Turn.

02541. **Common Fault.** The most common fault is a loss of dressing.

Wheeling in Slow and Quick Time

02542. **Introduction.** Wheeling is a method by which a body of men with a frontage of not more than six ranks or files, may change direction, whilst retaining dressing within those ranks or files. The order "**RIGHT - WHEEL!**" is given over one complete pace. The squad are to act as follows:

- a. The right hand man of the leading rank or file will change direction through 90 degrees on the circumference of a circle with a radius of about 600 mm (24 inches). He must

regulate his length of pace to allow those to his left to change direction without losing dressing.

b. Those to his left change direction through 90 degrees by lengthening their pace, without losing their interval or dressing.

c. Those behind the leading rank or file will follow on covering the same ground as them.

02543. **Common Faults.** These are:

a. Those behind the leading rank or file not covering the same ground as them.

b. Slovenly arm swinging among the inner men.

c. A tendency to increase the rate of marching among the outer men.

02544. **Variations.** The following should be noted:

a. If the body of men is halted or ordered to mark time when only part of its number have wheeled, those who have not wheeled will immediately cover off those who have.

b. If the wheel is to be through more than 90 degrees, the word of command will be given a second time; if through less than 90 degrees, the word of command "**FORWARD!**" will be given.

Squad Instruction

02545. *These movements may be incorporated in the lessons at a time judged to be suitable by the instructor.*

02546. *Reserved.*

LESSON 23 - CHANGE STEP IN SLOW TIME ON THE MARCH

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02547. **Aim.** *To teach the Change Step in Slow Time.*

02548. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

02549. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02550. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02551. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02552. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02553. **Explain:** The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Change Step in Slow Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of men to regain a lost step in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.

The Change Step

02554. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "CHANGING STEP, CHANGE - STEP!", at the same time calling out "LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT" as the movement is executed. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.

Change Step - One

(see Fig 25)

02555. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “CHANGING STEP, BY NUMBERS, CHANGE STEP - ONE!”, at the same time calling out “LEFT” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is given as the right foot contacts the ground, a 750 mm (30 inches) pace is taken with the left foot placing the foot flat and firm on the ground. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “LEFT”.

02556. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground, the left knee braced.
- b. The right toes are on the ground, the heel raised.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02557. *Confirm by questions then Slow March and practise.*

Change Step - Two

(see Fig 25)

02558. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - TWO!”, at the same time calling out “RIGHT” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground, with the right foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced down behind the left foot. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement, which is carried out in Quick Time, the squad will call out “RIGHT”.

02559. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees front centre of the body.
- b. The right instep is against and touching the left heel, both knees are braced.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02560. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Change Step - Three

02561. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - THREE!”, at the same time calling out “LEFT” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward a full 750 mm (30 inches) pace to continue the march in Slow Time. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “LEFT”.

02562. **Points to Note.** The outside edge of the left foot touches the ground first, whilst marching at the regulation rate of 65 paces to the minute.

02563. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02564. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement. Remind the squad they are to call out “LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT” and that common faults are not taking a 750 mm (30 inches) pace with the left foot and failing to bend the knee quickly enough.*

02565. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

02566. **Note.** *Explain:* The words of command “CHANGE - STEP!” are given on consecutive left and right feet, “CHANGE” on the left and “STEP” on the right.

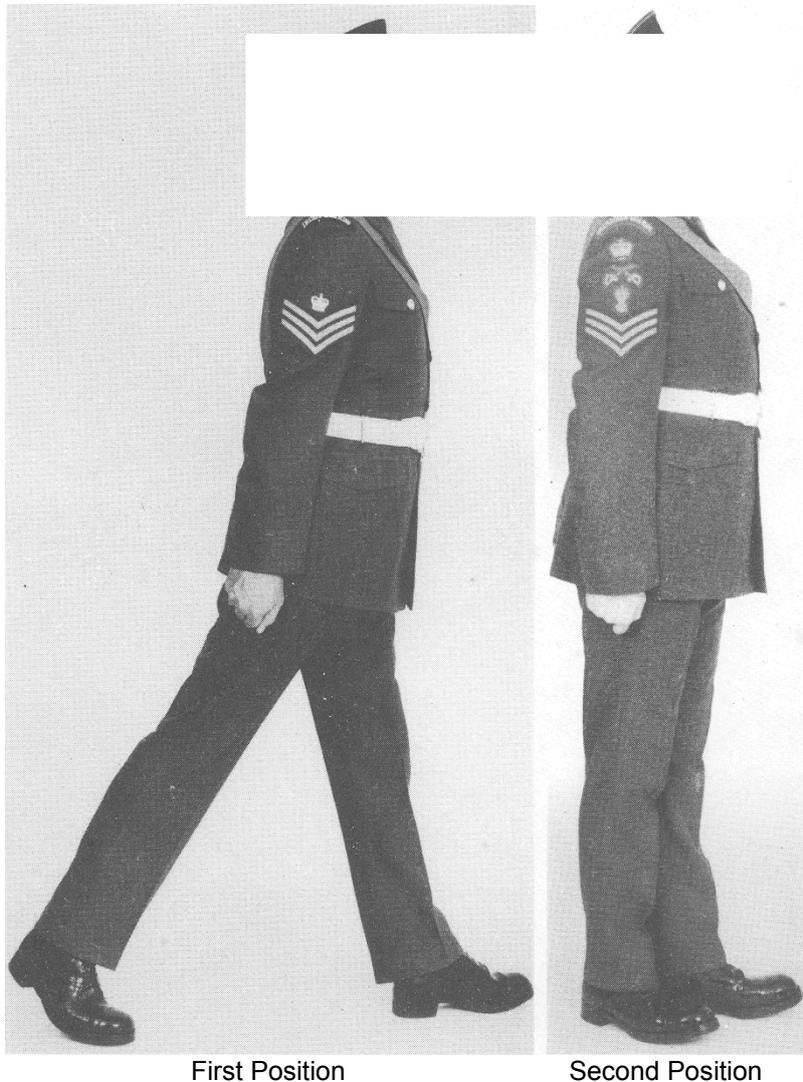
Conclusion

02567. **End of Lesson Drill**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*

- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
 - c. *Summary. To include Marking Time and Halting in Slow Time to be taught in the next lesson.*
02568. *Reserved.*

FIG 25 - CHANGE STEP IN SLOW TIME



FIGS 26 - 29 - RESERVED.

LESSON 24 - MARKING TIME AND HALTING FROM MARKING TIME IN SLOW TIME AT THE HALT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02569. **Aim.** *To teach Marking Time in Slow Time from the Halt and Halting from Marking Time in Slow Time at the Halt.*

02570. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

02571. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02572. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.

02573. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02574. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.

Introduction

02575. *Explain:* The next stage in foot drills is to learn the Mark Time in Slow Time at the Halt and Halting Whilst Marking Time at the Halt. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of men to remain in the same position whilst on the march and to halt when commanded in a smart, uniform manner. *Dealing firstly with Mark Time, order the Squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Mark Time

02576. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "MARK - TIME!", at the same time calling out the regulation rate of march as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then lowered to the ground beside the right. When the left foot is flat and firm on the ground the same action is carried out with the right foot. The individual continues to mark time in Slow Time. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out.

02577. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left leg is bent first, the toes of the feet touch the ground first when lowering the leg.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02578. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practise.*

The Halt

02579. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - HALT!". Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is received as the left foot strikes the ground, the right foot is forced down beside the left foot to assume the correct position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out.

02580. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02581. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02582. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movements.*

02583. **Note.** *Explain:* If marching to music the right foot is not forced down on the halt, but lowered in time to the music.

02584. *Confirm by practice.*

Conclusion

02585. **End of Lesson Drill**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the next lesson in Marking Time.*

02586-02587. *Reserved.*

LESSON 25 - MARKING TIME IN SLOW TIME AND FORWARD FROM MARKING TIME IN SLOW TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02588. **Aim.** *To teach Marking Time in Slow Time and Forward from Marking Time in Slow Time.*

02589. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

02590. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02591. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02592. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02593. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02594. **Explain:** *The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Mark Time from Slow Time and Forward from Mark Time in Slow Time. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of men to Mark Time in Slow Time and to continue the march in Slow Time on the word of command "FORWARD!" in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Mark Time and Forward

02595. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movements, giving the words of command "MARK - TIME!" "FORWARD!". Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught first by demonstration and explanation. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate.*

Mark Time

02596. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "MARK - TIME!", at the same time calling out the regulation rate of march when marking time. Explain: Immediately on the command, which is given over the complete right pace, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The foot is then lowered in time to the rate of march. The right leg is then bent in front of the body and the Mark Time continues. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out.*

02597. **Points to Note.** *These are:*

- a. *The left leg is bent in front of the body first whilst marking time, at the regulation rate of 65 paces to the minute.*
- b. *The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.*

02598. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practise.*

Forward

02599. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command "FORWARD!", at the same time calling out the regulation rate of march when stepping off. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is received as the left foot strikes the ground, the right foot is forced down to the ground beside the left. As the foot strikes the ground, the left foot is forced forward a full 750 mm (30 inches) pace and the march in Slow Time continues. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out.

02600. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is forced to the ground whilst marching at the regulation rate of 65 paces to the minute.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02601. *Confirm by practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

02602. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movements reminding the squad that it does not call out.*

02603. **Note.** *Explain:* If marching to music the right foot is not forced to the ground on "Forward" but moved in time to the music.

02604. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02605. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include Breaking into Slow Time from Quick Time to be taught in the next lesson.*

02606. *Reserved.*

LESSON 26 - BREAKING INTO SLOW TIME FROM QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02607. **Aim.** *To teach Breaking into Slow Time from Quick Time.*

02608. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

02609. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02610. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02611. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02612. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02613. **Explain:** *The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Breaking into Slow Time from Quick Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of men to Break into Slow Time*

from Quick Time in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to “Stand Easy” and watch your demonstration.

The Break into Slow Time

02614. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement giving the words of command “BREAK INTO SLOW TIME, SLOW - MARCH!”. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts. *Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate each part.*

Break into Slow Time - One

02615. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “BREAK INTO SLOW TIME, SLOW MARCH - ONE!”, at the same time calling out “FREEZE” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, which is received as the right heel strikes the ground, a 750 mm (30 inches) pace is taken with the left foot, at the same time alternating the arms. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “FREEZE”.

02616. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground. The right toes are on the ground, heel raised.
- b. The right arm is forward, level and in line with the right shoulder. The left arm is forced to the rear as far as is physically possible.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02617. *Order the squad to Quick March and confirm by practice.*

Break into Slow Time - Two

02618. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh comes parallel to the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The right foot is then forced down behind the left foot. The arms are forced into the side of the body in a sharp, scissor-like motion. The body is frozen in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “TWO”.

02619. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, the right instep is against and touching the left heel. Both knees are braced.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02620. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Squad - Forward

02621. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - FORWARD!”, at the same time calling out “FORWARD” as the movement is executed. Explain:* Immediately on the command, the left foot is forced forward a full marching pace, pointing the toes downwards and outwards and the march in Slow Time is commenced. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out “FORWARD”.

02622. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The outside edge of the left foot touches the ground first, whilst marching at the regulation rate of 65 paces to the minute.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02623. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02624. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement, reminding the squad that now they do not call out.*

02625. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02626. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the Breaking into Quick Time from Slow Time to be taught in the next lesson.*

02627-02628. *Reserved.*

LESSON 27 - BREAKING INTO QUICK TIME FROM SLOW TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02629. **Aim.** *To teach Breaking into Quick Time from Slow Time.*

02630. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

02631. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02632. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02633. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02634. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.*

Introduction

02635. **Explain:** *The next stage in foot drill is to learn the Break into Quick Time from Slow Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of men to break into Quick Time from Slow Time in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Break into Quick Time

02636. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "BREAK INTO QUICK TIME, QUICK - MARCH!", at the same time calling out the regulation rate of march when stepping off. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught by demonstration and explanation. Order the squad to continue watching while you demonstrate.*

Break into Quick Time, Quick - March

02637. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "BREAK INTO QUICK TIME, QUICK - MARCH!", at the same time calling out the regulation rate of march when stepping off in Quick Time. Explain: Immediately on the command, which is received on consecutive left and right feet, a 750 mm (30 inches) pace is taken with the left foot, forcing the left heel into the ground. At the same time, the right arm is swung forward and the left arm to the rear and the march in Quick Time continues. On the execution of this movement the squad will not call out.*

02638. **Points to Note.** *These are:*

- a. The left heel strikes the ground first.
- b. The right arm is swung forward, level and in line with the right shoulder. The left arm is forced to the rear as far as physically possible whilst marching at the regulation rate of 116 paces to the minute.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02639. *Confirm by questions then order Slow March and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02640. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement, reminding the squad that now they do not call out.*

02641. **Note.** *The words of command are given as follows "BREAK - INTO - QUICK - TIME", given on consecutive left and right feet, starting on the left foot. There is then a pause of four full marching paces followed by "QUICK - MARCH!", given on consecutive left and right feet. The instructor must call out the regulation rate of march immediately the first left heel strikes the ground in Quick Time.*

02642. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

02643. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To include the movements to be revised in the next lesson, as decided by the instructor.*

02644. *Reserved.*

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES - DRILL IN LINE

Introduction

02645. The following drill movements are described in this section:

- a. Marching in Line in Slow and Quick Time.
- b. Open and Close Order in Slow Time.
- c. Changing Direction by Forming.
- d. The Blank File.
- e. Forming from the Halt to the Halt.
- f. Forming from Marching to the Halt.
- g. Forming on the March.
- h. Marching Off in Single File and Reform on the March.
- i. Forming Squad.
- j. Forming Three Ranks from Two Ranks and Two Ranks from Three Ranks (Advanced Method).

02646. Instructors should plan their own lessons depending on the state of training of the troops and other training priorities. Only trained soldiers can be expected to be proficient in these movements and only then by revision, particularly for special parades such as Presentation of Colours ceremonies.

Marching in Line in Slow and Quick Time

02647. Line is the basic formation in ceremonial drill. Marching in line is taught first in Slow Time. The instructor should demonstrate and practise the squad in:

- a. Advancing in a straight line.
- b. Maintaining interval and distance.
- c. Regaining dressing gradually.
- d. Stepping off with a 750 mm (30 inches) pace and halting correctly so that Dressing is not lost.
- e. It is advisable for the instructor to become the right hand man and turn his pace stick, thus controlling the dressing, length of pace and rate of march.

Open and Close Order in Slow Time

02648. This movement is only done in Slow Time and is used when a squad is about to be given 'Eyes Right' in line.

- a. The order, "**OPEN - ORDER!**" is given with the executive word of command drawn out over the right pace. The squad act as follows:
 - (1) Centre Rank - Mark time one pace and lead on with the right foot.
 - (2) Rear Rank - Mark time two paces and lead on with the left foot.
 - (3) In two ranks only the rear rank marks time one pace and leads on with the right foot.
- b. The order, "**CLOSE - ORDER!**" is given with the executive word of command drawn out over the right pace. The squad act as follows:
 - (1) Front Rank - Mark time two paces and lead on with the left foot.
 - (2) Centre Rank - Mark time one pace and lead on with the right foot.
 - (3) In two ranks, only the front rank marks time one pace and leads on with the left foot.

Changing Direction by Forming

02649. The 'Form' enables a body of troops of over six files to change their direction to the right or left whilst remaining in line. It will be taught first in Slow Time to individual files from the Halt to the Halt and then practised by the whole squad. It will be carried out in Close Order.

The Blank File

02650. A squad must not have a man missing from the rank that is to the front when it is about to 'Form'. Therefore, when the squad is ordered to "**ABOUT TURN!**":

- a. At the halt, the blank file will take three paces forward after the command "**TURN!**".
- b. When marching, the blank file will mark time for two paces between "**ABOUT**" and "**TURN!**".

Forming from the Halt to the Halt

02651. The following words of command are used:

- a. "**CHANGE DIRECTION RIGHT, AT THE HALT, RIGHT - FORM!**"
 - (1) The right hand man turns to his right.
 - (2) The remainder of the front rank incline to their right.
 - (3) The remainder of the squad stand still.

- b. **“SLOW - MARCH!”**.
 - (1) The right hand man slow marches five paces forward and halts.
 - (2) The right hand men of the centre and rear ranks Slow March to their positions one and two paces directly behind the right hand man respectively and halt.
 - (3) The remainder of the squad Slow March into position halting in line with, and at the correct interval from, the man on their right.
- c. *Common Faults*. These are:
 - (1) Not halting with the correct interval between files.
 - (2) Increasing the length of pace and rate of marching.
- d. This movement should then be taught in Quick Time.

Forming from Marching to the Halt

02652. Teach this movement first in Slow Time.

- a. **“CHANGE DIRECTION RIGHT, AT THE HALT, RIGHT - FORM!”**. Given as the left foot is about to reach the ground.
 - (1) The right hand man pivots through 90 degrees to the right, slow marches five paces forward and halts.
 - (2) The remainder of the leading rank pivot through 45 degrees to their right, Slow March to their positions and halt.
 - (3) The remainder of the squad follow round to their positions and halt.
- b. *Common Faults*. The leading rank not pivoting on the command **“FORM!”**.
- c. This movement should then be taught in Quick Time. The word of command **“FORM!”** is given as the left foot passes the right.

Forming on the March

02653. If the command **“AT THE HALT”** is omitted the squad will mark time after forming.

Marching Off In Single File and Reform on the March

02654. This movement is used to manoeuvre a body of men through a narrow space. The squad will be facing a flank; any sequence of ranks may be used.

- a. *From the Halt*. The words of command are:
 - (1) **“FRONT RANK, QUICK - MARCH!”**.
 - (2) **“CENTRE RANK, QUICK - MARCH!”**. Given in step with the front rank as its rear passes the head of the centre rank. Centre rank follow the rear of the front rank.
 - (3) **“REAR RANK, QUICK - MARCH!”**. Given as above.
- b. *From the March*. The words of command are:
 - (1) **“FORM SINGLE FILE, CENTRE AND REAR RANKS, MARK - TIME!”**. Front rank continues to march.
 - (2) **“CENTRE RANK - FORWARD!”**.
 - (3) **“REAR RANK - FORWARD!”**.
- c. *Reforming at the Halt*. The words of command are:
 - (1) **“REFORM THREE RANKS ON THE FRONT RANK, CENTRE AND REAR RANKS, QUICK - MARCH!”**. The centre and rear ranks march towards their correct positions.
 - (2) **“CENTRE RANK - HALT!”**.

- (3) **“REAR RANK - HALT!”**.
- d. *Reforming from the March.* The words of command are:
 - (1) **“REFORM THREE RANKS ON THE FRONT RANK, AT THE HALT, FRONT RANK - HALT!”**. Centre and rear ranks march towards their correct positions.
 - (2) **“CENTRE RANK - HALT!”**.
 - (3) **“REAR RANK - HALT!”**.
- e. *Reform on the March.* If the command **“AT THE HALT”** is omitted the squad will mark time on reforming.

Forming Squad

02655. A squad which is marching to a flank in Threes may change its formation to that of Line, without changing direction, by ‘Forming Squad’. Teach this movement in Slow Time first to individual files from the Halt to the Halt and then practise the whole squad. It should be carried out in Close Order.

02656. **Forming Squad from the Halt to the Halt.**

- a. **“AT THE HALT, ON THE LEFT, FORM - SQUAD!”**. The squad, except for the left hand man of the leading file (pivot man), incline to the left.
- b. **“SLOW - MARCH!”**.
 - (1) The pivot man slow marches five paces forward and halts.
 - (2) The centre and right hand men of the leading file Slow March to their position, one and two paces directly behind the pivot man respectively, and halt.
 - (3) The remaining files Slow March to positions to the left of, and in line with, the leading file and halt taking their interval and dressing from their right
- c. *Common Faults.* These are:
 - (1) Not halting with the correct interval between files.
 - (2) Increasing the length of pace and rate of marching.
- d. Next teach the movement in Quick Time.

02657. **Forming Squad from Marching to the Halt.** Teach this movement first in Slow Time.

- a. **“AT THE HALT, ON THE LEFT, FORM - SQUAD!”**. Given as for the left turn. The pivot man ‘bends the right knee’, slow marches five paces forward and halts.
- b. Now teach this movement in Quick Time. The word of command **“SQUAD!”** is given as for the left turn.

02658. **Forming Squad on the March.** If the command **“AT THE HALT”** is omitted the squad will mark time after forming squad.

Forming Three Ranks from Two Ranks and Two Ranks from Three Ranks (Advanced Method)

(and see Lesson 28)

02659. The squad should be in two ranks in Close Order and sized tallest on the flanks. The squad should then be numbered.

02660. Front Rank.

- a. Numbers 1, 4, 7, 10, etc., will stand still during all movements.
- b. Numbers 2, 5, 8, 11, etc., will form part of the centre rank moving as taught.
- c. Numbers 3, 6, 9, 12, etc., are required to take a side pace right on forming, and a side pace left when reforming. It should be noted that the side pace is taken on the last two movements when forming ranks.

d. To avoid confusion in the numbering, numbers 1, 2, 3, etc., can be detailed as follows:

“Stand Still” - “Centre” - “Side Pace Right” etc.

02661. **Rear Rank.** Although having adopted the same number as the front rank they have to complete different movements:

- a. Numbers 1, 4, 7, 10, etc., will stand still during all movements.
- b. Numbers 2, 5, 8, 11, etc., will take a side pace left on forming, and a side pace right when reforming. Again it should be noted that the side pace is taken on the last two movements when forming ranks.
- c. Numbers 3, 6, 9, 12, etc., will form part of the centre rank moving as taught.
- d. To avoid confusion in the numbering, numbers 1, 2, 3, etc., can be detailed as follows:

“Stand Still” - “Side Pace Left” - “Centre”, etc.

02662. **Blank Files.** When numbering in two ranks, any blank file man when forming three ranks takes place, must appear in the front rank. The procedure is as follows:

- a. First divide the total number of men in the two ranks, e.g., (20 x 2) 40, by three to assess the final number in each of the three ranks, e.g., (40 ÷ 3) 13 plus 1. If the final number of three's leaves a remainder, in this case 13 plus 1, a special drill is required as follows:
 - (1) The left hand man of the front rank, e.g., No. 20, who would normally move back and to his right - he will now stand still.
 - (2) The left hand man of the rear rank irrespective of his number will move forward and to the right.
- b. Dressing will be correctly taken up during *“Dressing at the Halt”* and/or by gradual adjustment on the march.
- c. When reforming two ranks the reverse action is taken, i.e., the original left hand man of the rear rank in two ranks will move to his left and rear. The original left hand man of the front rank will remain standing still.

02663-02664. *Reserved.*

LESSON 28 - FORMING THREE RANKS FROM TWO RANKS AND TWO RANKS FROM THREE RANKS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

02665. **Aim.** *To teach Forming Three Ranks from Two Ranks and Two Ranks from Three Ranks.*

02666. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

02667. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

02668. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress.*

02669. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

02670. **Squad Formation.** *The squad in two ranks correctly sized, tallest on the flanks, shortest in the centre and in Close Order.*

Introduction

02671. *Explain:* The final stage in foot drill is to learn Forming Three Ranks from Two Ranks and Two Ranks from Three Ranks. The reason these movements are taught is to enable a body of men to form two or three ranks prior to a drill spectacle or ceremonial parade in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Forming Three Ranks from Two Ranks (Front Rank)

02672. *The instructor is to explain and demonstrate the movements carried out, first by a member of the front rank, who will form the centre rank when forming three ranks from two. Give the words of command "FORM THREE - RANKS!", at the same time calling out "LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT" as the movement is completed. Explain:* For instructional purposes these movements are broken down into numbered parts. *Demonstrate the actions to be carried out by a member of the front rank forming the centre rank when forming three ranks from two.*

Form Three Ranks - One

02673. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "FORM THREE RANKS - ONE!", at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain:* Immediately on the command, force the left foot backwards 450 mm (18 inches) and freeze in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "LEFT".

02674. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground.
- b. Both knees are braced whilst the remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02675. *Confirm by practice.*

Form Three Ranks - Two

02676. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "RIGHT". Explain:* Immediately on the command, take a pace to the rear with the right foot 300 mm (12 inches) behind and 600 mm (24 inches) to the right of the left heel and freeze in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "RIGHT".

02677. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground.
- b. Both knees are braced whilst the remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02678. *Confirm by practice.*

Form Three Ranks - Three

02679. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain:* Immediately on the command, bend the left leg to resume the position of Attention and freeze in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "LEFT".

02680. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, at an angle of 30 degrees front centre.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02681. *Confirm by practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

02682. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement, reminding the squad that they must call out "LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT". Emphasize that those members of the centre*

rank returning to the front rank when reforming two's from three's, are to carry out the following movements:

- a. Take a pace forward with the left foot 300 mm (12 inches) in front of and 600 mm (24 inches) to the left of the right heel.
- b. Take a 450 mm (18 inches) pace forward with the right foot.
- c. Bend the left leg and resume the correct position of Attention with the left foot.

02683. When proficient in this movement the instructor is to continue with Forming Three Ranks from Two Ranks.

Forming Three Ranks from Two Ranks (Rear Rank)

02684. The instructor is to demonstrate the actions to be carried out by those members of the rear rank, who form the centre rank when forming three's from two's, by giving the words of command "**FORM THREE - RANKS!**", at the same time calling out "LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT". Explain: For instructional purposes these movements are broken down into numbered parts. Demonstrate the actions to be carried out by those members of the rear rank forming the centre rank when forming three ranks from two.

Form Three Ranks - One

02685. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**FORM THREE RANKS - ONE!**", at the same time calling out "LEFT". Explain: Immediately on the command, take a 450 mm (18 inches) pace forward with the left foot and freeze in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "LEFT".

02686. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground.
- b. Both knees are braced whilst the remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

02687. Confirm by practice.

Form Three Ranks - Two

02688. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**SQUAD - TWO!**", at the same time calling out "RIGHT". Explain: Immediately on the command, take a 300 mm (12 inches) pace forward with the right foot and 600 mm (24 inches) to the right of the left toe and freeze in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "RIGHT".

02689. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground.
- b. Both knees are braced whilst the remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front

02690. Confirm by questions and practice.

Form Three Ranks - Three

02691. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**SQUAD - THREE!**", at the same time calling out "RIGHT". Explain: Immediately on the command, bend the left leg and force the left foot down beside the right foot and freeze in this position. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out "LEFT".

02692. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground having resumed the correct position of Attention.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

c. Note that those members of the centre rank returning to the rear rank when reforming two's from three's are to carry out the following:

- (1) Take a pace to the rear with the left foot 300 mm (12 inches) behind and 600 mm (24 inches) to the left of the right heel.
- (2) Take a 450 mm (18 inches) pace backwards with the right foot.
- (3) Bend the left leg and resume the correct position of Attention with the left foot.

02693. *Confirm by questions and practice. When competent in these drills the squad does not have to call out.*

Conclusion

02694. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson.*
- b. *Further confirmation by practice as time permits.*
- c. *Summary. To state that this lesson concludes all Foot Drill to be taught and that the next lessons will be Rifle Exercises.*

Chapter 3

RIFLE AND CARBINE EXERCISES

PART 1 L85A2 RIFLE EXERCISES

INTRODUCTION

General

0301. The arms drill for the rifle L85A2 has been devised following five basic principles:
- a. The drill must be the same for all three Services, excluding minor regimental variations.
 - b. The rifle must be ready for use: for example, the sight should not be removed.
 - c. The rifle has to be sustainable during long parades by all servicemen: hence positions adopted have to be comfortable and relieve the weight of the rifle at appropriate times.
 - d. The drill should cause as little damage to uniforms and medals as possible.
 - e. The drill should be smart and safe.
0302. The arms drill has been developed for use with the rifle fitted with the iron or optic (SUSAT) sight.
0303. The scabbard issued with the rifle cannot be used for the fixing and unfixing of bayonets. It is therefore suggested that if units wish to carry out parades with bayonets fixed, this should be done informally before and after troops march on and off parade. For those units issued with flexible bayonet frogs, the drill laid down in this manual should be carried out.
0304. For inspections, soldiers should be at the position of Attention, although whether the rifle is held at the Shoulder or the Slope will depend on the custom. It should be borne in mind that it is difficult to retain the L85A2 rifle fitted with the iron sight at the shoulder for long periods. Inspecting officers, when inspecting soldiers at the slope, should also be aware of the bayonet protruding over the left shoulder when inspecting the rear of any particular rank.
0305. Because of the size and weight of the rifle, frequent 'change arms' will be necessary both at the halt and on the march, at the discretion of the parade commander.
0306. When the rifle is carried across the body with the sling (for instance a tactical sentry within barracks), compliments should be paid by saluting with the hand.

Exercises for the Rifle L85A2

0307. This chapter contains the rifle exercises for the rifle L85A2, as far as possible laid out in the order of priority. The exercises to be taught are laid down in the Common Military Syllabus. Commanding Officers may use their discretion as to how many of the other rifle exercises are taught. Those exercises used solely on funeral duty are in Chapter 9.
0308. All rifle exercises are first taught by numbers and then by judging the regulation pause between movements. The word of command for movements judging the time will be as for numbers, but "**ARMS!**" becomes the executive, e.g., "**SLOPE ARMS - ONE!**" becomes "**SLOPE - ARMS!**".
0309. Good rifle drill is a combination of the following:
- a. Sharp, decisive handling of the rifle.
 - b. No fidgeting between movements.
 - c. Keeping the upper arm and elbow close to the body throughout.
 - d. Control of the rifle during all movements.
0310. When the rifle is described as being vertical it is the barrel, not the butt, which is vertical.

RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 1 - POSITIONS OF ATTENTION, STAND AT EASE AND STAND EASY WITH THE RIFLE AT THE SHOULDER

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0311. **Aim.** To teach the positions of Attention, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy with the rifle at the Shoulder.
0312. **Timings.** One 40 minute period.
0313. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.
0314. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).
0315. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0316. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.
0317. **Squad Formation.** Position the squad in a half circle, At Ease, with their rifles held in both hands across the body, parallel to the ground. This position from now on is referred to as the 'Relax' position.
0318. **Revision.** Nil.

Introduction

0319. **Explain:** To introduce rifle exercises the positions of Attention, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy are taught first. These movements enable an individual or body of men to form a base, from which all future rifle exercises can originate in a smart and uniform manner. The position of Attention is taught first. *Order the squad to watch your demonstration.*

The Position of Attention

(see Fig 3-1-1)

0320. *The instructor is to demonstrate the position of Attention. Explain:* In the correct position, force the rifle to the rear in the right shoulder, with the magazine square to the front, whilst ensuring the thumb of the right hand is in line with the seam of the trousers. Other points to note are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees from a line front centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced, the right hand has a cup-like grip on the butt plate with the thumb curled around the front. The right arm is fully extended with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Common faults are the rifle not forced back into the shoulder and the barrel tipping forward.

0321. *Confirm by questions and practice first by ordering the squad to adopt the correct position of Attention with the rifle. At the end of the practice the squad is to readopt the Relax position.*

The Stand at Ease from the Attention

(see Fig 3-1-2)

0322. *The squad is to be in the Relax position. The instructor is to demonstrate the Stand at Ease from the Attention, calling out "ONE" as he does so. Explain:* Immediately on the command "**STAND AT - EASE!**", the left leg is bent in front of the body, until the thigh is parallel to the ground, with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. The left foot is then forced to the ground at a distance of 300 mm (12 inches) to the left of the right foot and the body is frozen in this position. Other points to note are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, heels approximately 300 mm (12 inches) apart with both knees braced.
- b. The rifle, right and left arms do not move throughout the execution of this movement, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

0323. *Confirm by questions and practice with the squad calling out "ONE" on each movement. End the practice with the squad in the Stand at Ease position.*

The Stand Easy

(see Fig 3-1-3)

0324. *The squad is to be in the Relax position. The instructor is to demonstrate the Stand Easy position giving the word of command "**STAND - EASY!**". Explain:* On the word of command both arms are brought forward in a graceful quarter circle movement and **not forced**, as this could cause the rifle to fall forward. The hands meet in the centre of the body so that the palm of the left hand has covered the back of the right hand. The rifle is positioned across the body with the magazine facing to the left, whilst the remainder of the body is relaxed and remains still in this position. Other points to note are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, heels 300 mm (12 inches) apart with both knees braced.
- b. The rifle is positioned across the centre of the body with the magazine facing to the left. The left hand has a full grasp of the right hand, fingers and thumb together. The right hand has retained its cup-like grip on the butt plate. The remainder of the body is relaxed and still.
- c. Common faults are moving the feet and fidgeting after completion of the movement.

0325. *Confirm by questions and practice. End the practice with the squad in the Stand Easy position.*

Stand at Ease from Stand Easy

0326. *The squad is to be in the Relax position. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the command "**SQUAD!**". Explain:* On the word of command, brace the body and return the rifle to resume the correct position of Stand at Ease and freeze in this position. Points to note are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, heels 300 mm (12 inches) apart with both knees braced.
- b. The rifle resumes the correct position of Stand at Ease, via a graceful quarter circle movement and **not forced** as this will cause the rifle to fall forward. The rifle should end in a vertical position on the right hand side of the body with the thumb in line with the seam of the trousers, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

0327. *Confirm by questions and practice. End the practice with the squad in the Stand at Ease position.*

Attention from the Stand at Ease

0328. *The squad is to be in the Relax position. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**SQUAD - SHUN!**". Explain:* On the command, the left leg is bent until the thigh is parallel to the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. It is then forced down beside the right foot to resume the correct position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. Other points to note are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, heels 300 mm (12 inches) apart at an angle of 30 degrees from a line, front centre of the body.
- b. Both knees are braced, and the rifle and left arm do not move throughout the movement. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. The squad is to call out "ONE" on the execution of the movement.

0329. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

0330. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of all the movements and then to practise the squad for the remainder of the period.*

Conclusion

0331. ***End of Lesson Drill***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of these basic movements as the foundation of further arms drill.
 - (2) The squad to always call out 'ONE" when standing At Ease and standing to Attention.
 - (3) A look forward to the Change Arms at the Shoulder to be taught in the next lesson.

0332. *Reserved.*

FIG 3-1-1 - POSITION OF ATTENTION AT THE SHOULDER



FIG 3-1-2 - STAND AT EASE

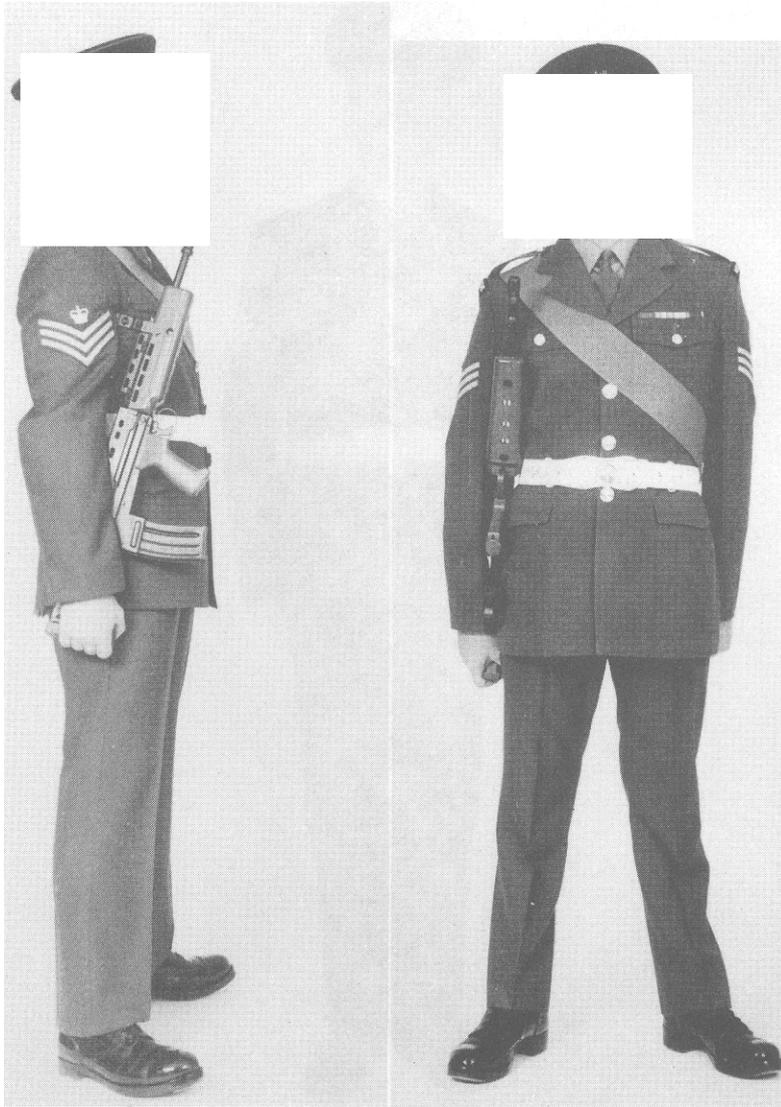
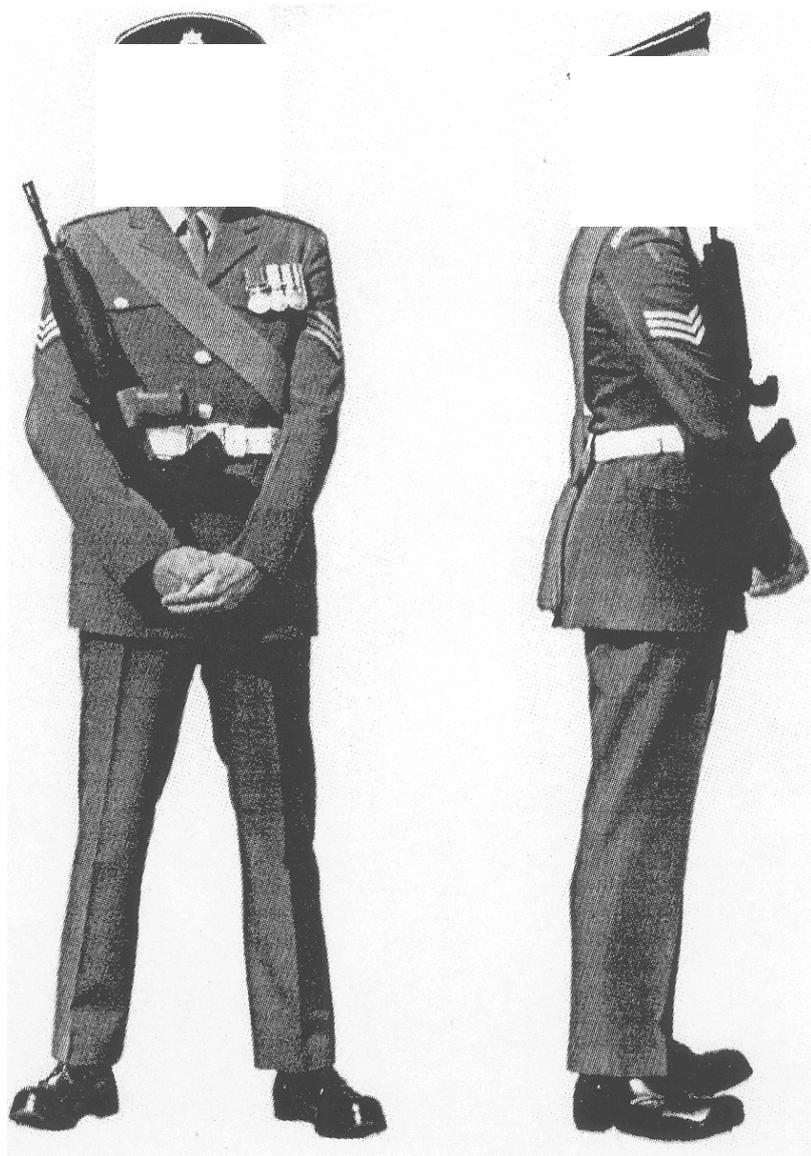


FIG 3-1-3 - STAND EASY



RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 2 - THE CHANGE ARMS AT THE SHOULDER

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0333. **Aim.** *To teach the Change Arms at the Shoulder.*
0334. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*
0335. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
0336. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).*
0337. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0338. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*
0339. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.*
0340. **Revision.** *Revise the positions taught in the previous lesson.*

Introduction

0341. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn the Change Arms at the Shoulder. The movement is taught to enable an individual or a body of men to rest a limb or to provide a spectacle at a military display in a smart, uniform manner. The change from the right to the left shoulder is taught first. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Change Arms

0342. **The instructor is to demonstrate the Change Arms, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, CHANGE - ARMS!", at the same time calling out the time.** *Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.

Change Arms - One

(see Fig 3-2-1)

0343. **The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, CHANGE ARMS - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE".** *Explain:* On the command, force the rifle into the front centre of the body with the right hand. At the same time the left hand comes across the body by the shortest route to strike, seize and grip the stock, just above the trigger guard. The body is then frozen in this position.

0344. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical and approximately 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) from the front centre of the body, with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right arm is at its fullest extent, with the right hand retaining its grip on the butt plate, the right wrist, forearm and elbow is forced well into the body.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the stock just above the trigger guard with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well into the body.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front
- e. Call out "ONE".

0345. Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practise.

Change Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-2-1)

0346. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", then calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, release the grip with the right hand and force it up the side of the rifle by the shortest route, to strike, seize and grip the stock just above the left hand and then freeze in this position.*

0347. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move during the movement.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the stock with the little finger of the right hand touching the index finger of the left hand. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "TWO".

0348. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Change Arms - Three

(see Fig 3-2-2)

0349. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", then calling out "THREE". Explain: On the command, release the grip with the left hand and at the same time force the rifle by the shortest route to the vertical position on the left side. Strike, seize and grip the base of the butt plate with the left hand and freeze in this position.*

0350. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is now in the vertical position on the left side of the body.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "THREE".

0351. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Change Arms - Four

(see Fig 3-2-2)

0352. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - FOUR!", then calling out "FOUR". Explain: On the command, release the grip with the right hand, force it across the body by the shortest route to resume the position of Attention. At the same time, force the rifle back into the left side and freeze in this position.*

0353. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is now in the correct position of the Shoulder Arms on the left side of the body.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "FOUR".

0354. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

0355. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement calling out "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE", etc., only moving on the "ONE's". The squad is to practise the complete movement, calling the time at the regulation rate.*

Change Arms from Left to Right Shoulder

0356. *The squad must now be taught how to Change Arms from the left shoulder to the right. This is done by demonstration and explanation.*

Conclusion

0357. *End of Lesson Drill*

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) *The importance of striking, seizing and gripping the rifle.*
 - (2) *Calling out the time.*
 - (3) *A look forward to the Slope Arms from the Shoulder to be taught in the next lesson.*

0358-0359. *Reserved.*

FIG 3-2-1 - CHANGE ARMS



One



Squad Two

FIG 3-2-2 - CHANGE ARMS



Squad Three



Squad Four

RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 3 - THE SLOPE ARMS FROM THE SHOULDER

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0360. **Aim.** *To teach the Slope Arms from the Shoulder.*
0361. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*
0362. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
0363. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).*
0364. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0365. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*
0366. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.*
0367. **Revision.** *Revise the Change Arms at the Shoulder.*

Introduction

0368. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn the Slope Arms from the Shoulder. The movement is taught to enable an individual or a body of men to rest a limb or to provide a spectacle at a military display in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Slope Arms

0369. *The instructor is to demonstrate the Slope Arms, using the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, SLOPE - ARMS!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.*

Slope Arms - One

(see Fig 3-3-1)

0370. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the order "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, SLOPE ARMS - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain: On the command, force the rifle to the vertical position, under control of the right hand, at the same time release the grip of the right hand and force it up the rifle by the shortest route to strike, seize and grip the small of the butt in a 'Y' like grip. The left hand is forced across the body by the shortest route to strike and grip the stock just above the trigger guard. The body is then frozen in this position.*

0371. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' grip on the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the stock of the rifle just above the trigger guard, with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "ONE".

0372. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of the Shoulder and practise.*

Slope Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-3-1)

0373. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", then calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, force the rifle up and across the body by the shortest route and place it on the left shoulder under control of the right hand. At the same time, change the grip of the right hand to a full grip, whilst the left hand releases its full grip and is forced down the rifle by the shortest route to strike, seize and grip the butt plate with a 'cup' like grip. The body is then frozen in this position.*

0374. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The stock of the rifle is on the left shoulder with the magazine to the left, the left hand has a 'cup' like grip on the butt plate with the left wrist and forearm parallel to the ground, the left elbow forced well into the body.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt, with the right wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "TWO".

0375. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Slope Arms - Three

(see Fig 3-3-2)

0376. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", then calling out "THREE". Explain: On the command, force the right arm down by the shortest route to resume the correct position of Attention. Freeze the body in this position.*

0377. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. This is the correct position of Slope Arms.
- b. The rifle, left wrist, forearm and elbow do not move during the movement.
- c. Call out "THREE".

0378. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

0379. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement calling out "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE", etc. The squad is to practise the complete movement calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

Conclusion

0380. **End of Lesson Drill**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of striking, seizing and gripping the rifle.
 - (2) Calling out the time.
 - (3) A look forward to the Shoulder Arms from the Slope to be taught in the next lesson.

0381-0382. *Reserved.*

FIG 3-3-1 - SLOPE ARMS



One

Squad Two

FIG 3-3-2 - SLOPE ARMS - SQUAD THREE



**RIFLE EXERCISES
LESSON 4 - THE SHOULDER ARMS FROM THE SLOPE**

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0383. **Aim.** *To teach the Shoulder Arms from the Slope.*
0384. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*
0385. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*
0386. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).*
0387. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0388. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.

0389. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

0390. **Revision.** Revise the Slope Arms from the Shoulder.

Introduction

0391. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn the Shoulder Arms from the Slope. The movement is taught to enable an individual or a body of men to rest a limb or to provide a spectacle at a military display in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Shoulder Arms

0392. *The instructor is to demonstrate the Shoulder Arms using the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, SHOULDER - ARMS", at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.

Shoulder Arms - One

(see Fig 3-4-1)

0393. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, SHOULDER ARMS - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, the right hand is forced across the body by the shortest route to strike, seize and grip the small of the butt with a full grip, then freeze in this position.

0394. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left wrist, forearm and elbow do not move during the movement.
- b. The right hand fully grips the small of the butt, and the forearm is parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

0395. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of the Slope and practise.*

Shoulder Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-4-1)

0396. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", then calling out "TWO". Explain:* On the command, the rifle is forced down by the shortest route to a vertical position, on the right side of the body, under control of the right hand. At the same time the grip of the right hand is changed to a 'Y' like grip on the small of the butt. The left hand releases its grip and is forced up the rifle by the shortest route to strike, seize and grip the stock with a full grip, just above the trigger guard. Then freeze in this position.

0397. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' like grip on the small of the butt, with the right arm at its fullest extent, the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip of the stock, just above the trigger guard, with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "TWO".

0398. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Shoulder Arms - Three

(see Fig 3-4-2)

0399. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", then calling out "THREE". Explain: On the command, release the grip of the right hand and force it down to strike, seize and grip the butt plate with a 'cup' like grip. Then freeze in this position.*

03100. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right hand has a 'cup' like grip on the butt plate with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- b. The rifle, left wrist and forearm do not move.
- c. Call out "THREE".

03101. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Shoulder Arms - Four

(see Fig 3-4-2)

03102. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - FOUR!", then calling out "FOUR". Explain: On the command, force the rifle back under control of the right hand. At the same time release the grip of the left hand and force it across the body by the shortest route to resume the correct position of Attention. Then freeze in this position.*

03103. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is now in the correct position of the Shoulder Arms.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front
- c. Call out "FOUR".

03104. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03105. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement, calling out "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE", etc., moving only on the "ONE's". The squad is then to practise the complete movement calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

Conclusion

03106. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of striking, seizing and gripping the rifle.
 - (2) A look forward to the Change Arms at the Slope to be taught in the next lesson.

03107-03108. *Reserved.*

FIG 3-4-1 - SHOULDER ARMS



One



Squad Two

FIG 3-4-2 - SHOULDER ARMS



Squad Three



Squad Four

RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 5 - THE CHANGE ARMS AT THE SLOPE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03109. **Aim.** *To teach the Change Arms at the Slope.*

03110. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

03111. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

03112. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).*

03113. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03114. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*

03115. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.*

03116. **Revision.** *Revise the Shoulder Arms from the Slope.*

Introduction

03117. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn the Change Arms at the Slope. The movement is taught to enable an individual or body of men to rest a limb or to provide a spectacle at a military display in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Change Arms

03118. *The instructor is to demonstrate the Change Arms using the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, CHANGE - ARMS!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.

Change Arms - One

(see Fig 3-5-1)

03119. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, CHANGE ARMS - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, force the right hand across the body by the shortest route to strike, seize and grip the small of the butt with a full grip, then freeze in this position.

03120. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left wrist, forearm and elbow do not move during the movement.
- b. The right hand fully grips the small of the butt, and the forearm is parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

03121. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of the Slope and practise.*

Change Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-5-1)

03122. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", then calling out "TWO". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle down and across the front centre of the body under control of the right hand. At the same time release the grip on the butt by the left hand, and restrike and seize the rifle in a full grip just above the trigger guard. Then freeze in this position.

03123. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical and approximately 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) from the centre of the body, with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The hand retains its full grip on the butt, with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in, with the left hand having a full grip on the stock just above the trigger guard, and the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. Call out "TWO".

03124. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Change Arms - Three

(see Fig 3-5-2)

03125. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", then calling out "THREE". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle across onto the right shoulder under control of the left hand. At the same time release the grip on the small of the butt, and restrike and grip the buff plate with a 'cup' like grip. Then freeze in this position.

03126. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is on the right shoulder with the magazine square to the right.
- b. The right hand has a 'cup' like grip on the butt plate.
- c. The right forearm is parallel to the ground with the elbow forced well in.
- d. The left hand retains its grip on the stock with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- e. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- f. Call out "THREE".

03127. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Change Arms - Four

(see Fig 3-5-2)

03128. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - FOUR!", then calling out "FOUR". Explain:* On the command, force the left arm across the body by the shortest route to resume the position of Attention and freeze in this position.

03129. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is now in the correct position of the Slope Arms on the right shoulder.
- b. The rifle, left wrist, forearm and elbow do not move during the movement.
- c. The body remains erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "FOUR".

03130. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03131. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement calling out "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE", etc., moving only on the "ONE's" and still on the others. The squad is then to practise, calling out the time.*

Change Arms from the Right Shoulder to the Left

03132. *The squad must now be taught how to Change Arms from the right shoulder to the left. This is done by demonstration and explanation.*

Conclusion

03133. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

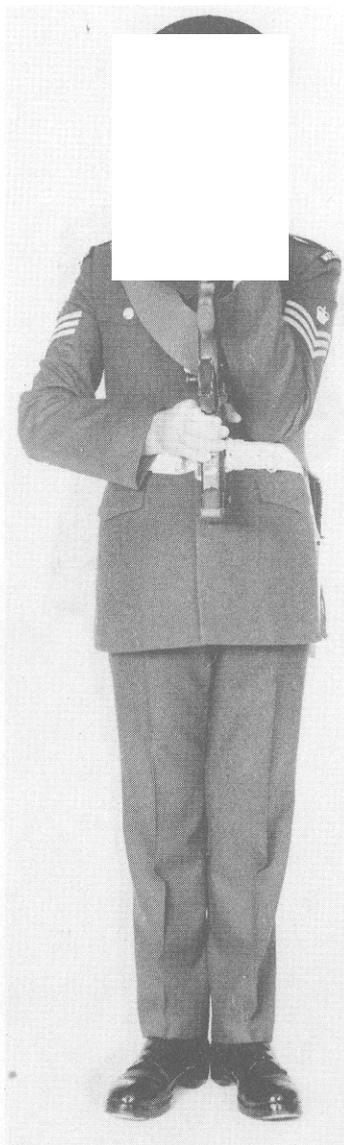
- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) *The importance of timing.*
 - (2) *The need to strike, seize and grip the rifle.*
 - (3) *A look forward to the Present Arms from the Slope, to be taught in the next lesson.*

03134-03135. *Reserved.*

FIG 3-5-1 - CHANGE ARMS



One



Squad Two

FIG 3-5-2 - CHANGE ARMS



Squad Three



Squad Four

RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 6 - THE PRESENT ARMS FROM THE SLOPE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03136. **Aim.** To teach the Present Arms from the Slope.

03137. **Timings.** One 30 minute period.

03138. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

03139. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).

03140. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03141. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.

03142. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

03143. **Revision.** Revise the Change Arms at the Slope.

Introduction

03144. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Present Arms from the Slope. This movement is taught to enable an individual or a body of men to pay the highest compliment with a rifle in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Present Arms

03145. *The instructor is to demonstrate the Present Arms using the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, PRESENT - ARMS!", at the same time calling out the time.*
Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.

Present Arms - One

(see Fig 3-6-1)

03146. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, PRESENT ARMS - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE".*
Explain: On the command force the right hand across the body by the shortest route to strike and grip the rifle in a full grip, on the area of the small of the butt, then freeze in this position.

03147. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move during the movement.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt, with the arm parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

03148. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of the Slope and practise.*

Present Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-6-1)

03149. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO”. Explain:* On the command, force the rifle across and up to the front centre of the body with the right hand, at the same time releasing the grip with the left hand and forcing the left arm approximately 150 mm (six inches) from the rifle, extending the fingers and thumb. Then restrike the rifle with the left fingers, palm, wrist, forearm and elbow and freeze in this position.

03150. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical with the magazine square to the front and approximately 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) from the front centre of the body.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt, with the right wrist, forearm and elbow well forced in.
- c. The left fingers are together and running vertically up the side of the rifle, with the thumb in line with the mouth.
- d. The left wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well into the rifle, with the elbow touching the fingers of the right hand.
- e. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- f. Call out “TWO”.

03151. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Present Arms - Three

(see Fig 3-6-2)

03152. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE”. Explain:* On the command, force the rifle down the front centre of the body by fully extending the right arm. At the same time, change the grip with the right hand to a ‘Y’ like grip on the small of the butt. At the same time, force the left hand approximately 150 mm (six inches) from the rifle to strike and seize the stock with a full grip. The exception is the thumb which is vertical to the rifle. At the same time also, bend the right knee in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground and the foot is hanging naturally below it, then force the right foot down just behind the left and freeze in this position.

03153. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical, approximately 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) from the front centre of the body with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a ‘Y’ like grip on the small of the butt.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the stock, except for the thumb, which is vertical to the rifle.
- d. The left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- e. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees, with the instep of the right boot touching the heel of the left. Both knees are braced and the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- f. Call out “THREE”.

03154. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03155. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement, calling out “ONE - TWO THREE - ONE”, etc., moving only on the “ONE’s” and to practise the squad, calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

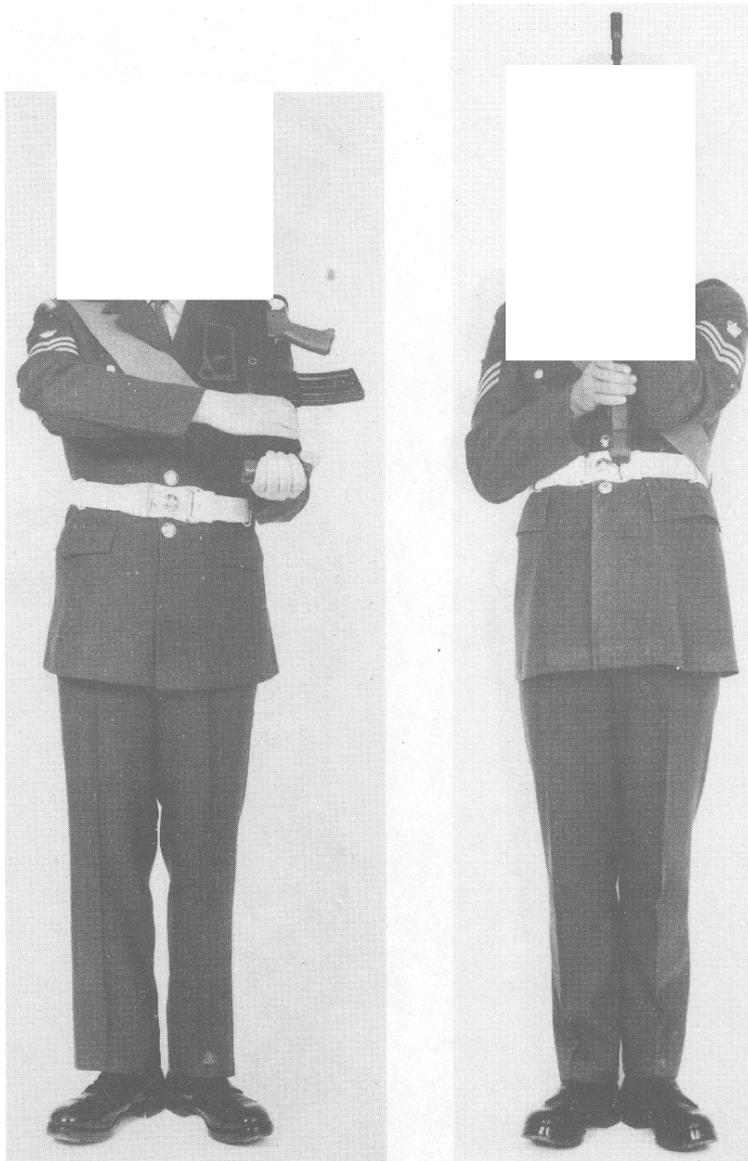
Conclusion

03156. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of timing.
 - (2) The need to strike, seize and grip the rifle.
 - (3) A look forward to the Slope Arms from the Present to be taught in the next lesson.

03157-03158. *Reserved.*

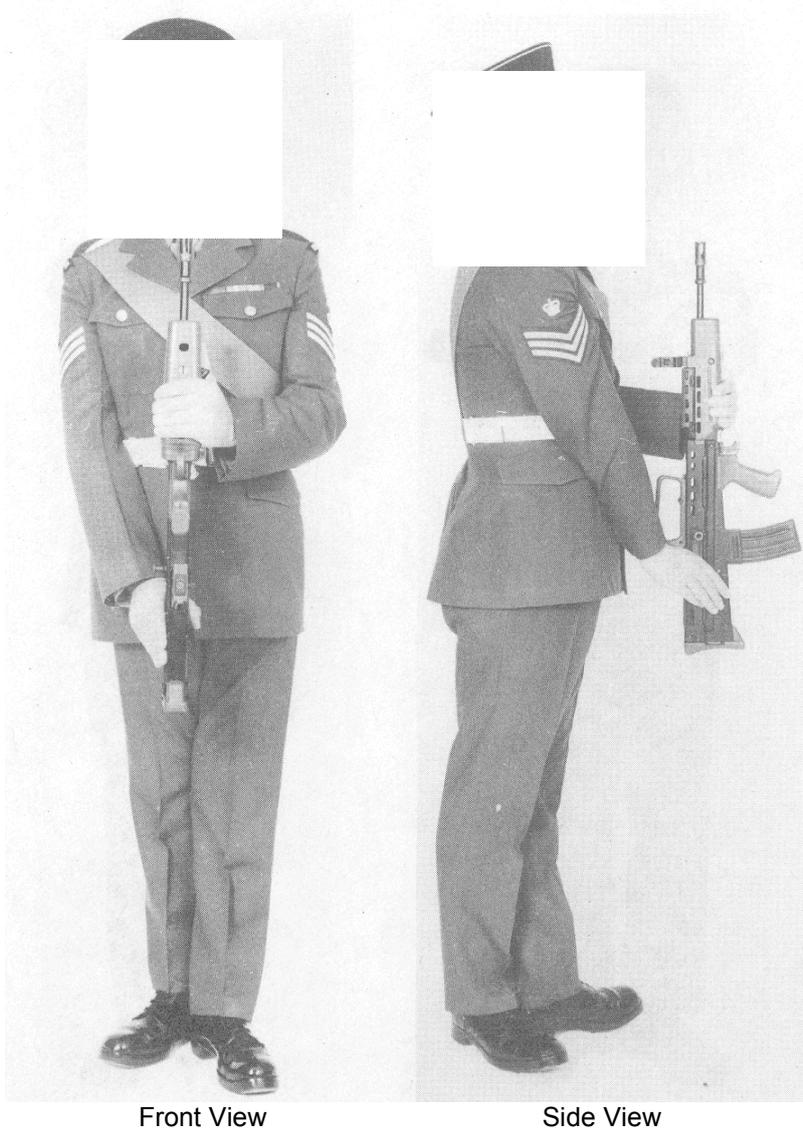
FIG 3-6-1 - PRESENT ARMS



One

Squad Two

FIG 3-6-2 - PRESENT ARMS - SQUAD THREE



Front View

Side View

RIFLE EXERCISES LESSON 7 - THE SLOPE ARMS FROM THE PRESENT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03158. **Aim.** To teach the Slope Arms from the Present

03159. **Timings.** One 30 minute period.

03160. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

03161. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).

03162. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03163. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.

03164. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

03165. **Revision.** Revise the Present Arms from the Slope.

Introduction

03166. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn the Slope Arms from the Present, to enable an individual or body of men to return to the Slope having paid the highest compliment with the rifle in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.

Slope Arms

03167. The instructor is to demonstrate the Slope Arms from the Present position, using the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME - SLOPE - ARMS!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.

Slope Arms - One

(see Fig 3-7-1)

03168. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, SLOPE ARMS - ONE!**", at the same time calling out "ONE". **Explain:** On the command, force the rifle across the body on to the left shoulder under control of the right hand. At the same time, change the grip of the right hand to a full grip. The left hand releases the grip on the stock and restrikes and grasps the butt plate with a 'cup' like grip, then freeze in this position.

03169. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The stock of the rifle is now on the left shoulder with the magazine square to the left.
- b. The left hand has a 'cup' like grip on the butt plate, with the wrist and forearm parallel to the ground with the elbow forced well in.
- c. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt, with the wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "ONE".

03170. Confirm by questions then order the squad to Slope Arms and Present Arms then practise.

Slope Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-7-1)

03171. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**SQUAD - TWO!**", at the same time calling out "TWO". **Explain:** On the command, force the right hand across the body by the shortest route to resume the position of Attention. At the same time, bend the right knee in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground, the foot hanging naturally below the knee, then force the right foot down beside the left and freeze in this position.

03172. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The correct position of Slope Arms has now been resumed.
- b. The rifle, left wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- c. Call out "TWO".

03173. Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.

Final Demonstration and Practice

03174. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement, calling out "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE", etc., moving only on the "ONE's". The squad is to practise the complete movement, calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

Conclusion

03175. End of Lesson Drill

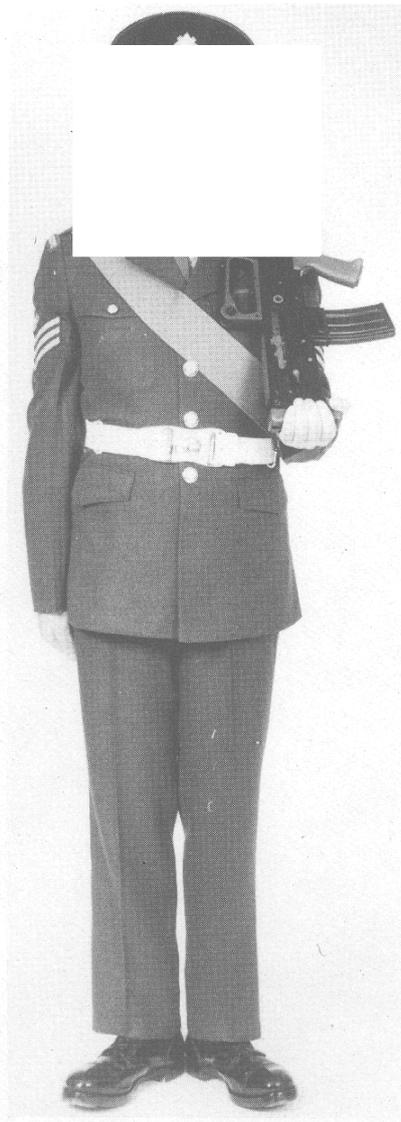
- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) *The importance of timing.*
 - (2) *The need to strike, seize and grip the rifle.*
 - (3) *A look forward to the Fixing of Bayonets to be taught in the next lesson.*

03176-03177. *Reserved.*

FIG 3-7-1 - SLOPE ARMS FROM THE PRESENT



One



Squad Two

RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 8 - THE FIXING OF BAYONETS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03178. *Aim.* To teach the Fixing of Bayonets.

03179. *Timings.* One 20 minute period.

03180. *Method.* A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

03181. *Dress and Stores.* No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle, bayonet and scabbard.

03182. *Preparation.* Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03183. *Safety Precautions.* Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.

03184. *Squad Formation.* Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

03185. *Revision.* Revise the Slope Aims from the Present if taught as the last period.

Introduction

03186. *Explain:* The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to fix bayonets in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.

Fixing and Unfixing the Bayonets

03187. The instructor is to demonstrate the fixing and unfixing of bayonets using the words of command "**SQUAD WILL FIX BAYONETS, FIX - BAYONETS - SHUN!**" followed by "**SQUAD WILL UNFIX BAYONETS, UNFIX - BAYONETS - SHUN!**". *Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is taught in named parts and the Fix Bayonets is taught first.

Fix Bayonets - Fix

(see Fig 3-8-1)

03188. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**SQUAD WILL FIX BAYONETS - FIX!**", but do not call out any time. *Explain:* On the command, the left hand is forced to the rear to grasp the bayonet handle with a full grip. It is then rotated anti-clockwise and forced out of the scabbard by forcing the right arm towards the ground to its fullest extent to a position where the blade points directly to the right and is parallel to the ground with the cutting edge uppermost. At the same time the rifle is forced to the vertical position on the right side of the body and the body is then frozen in this position.

03189. *Points to Note.* These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- b. The left arm is forced into the side of the body at its fullest extent.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the bayonet handle, the blade pointing directly to the right, with the cutting edge uppermost.
- d. Do not call out.

03190. Order the squad to Shoulder Arms then confirm by questions and practice.

Bayonets

(see Fig 3-8-2)

03191. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the command “BAYONETS!”. Explain.* On the command, the bayonet is forced across the body by the shortest route to engage the flash eliminator of the rifle, at the same time forcing the wrist to bend away from the body, so the bayonet blade is directly to the front. The head and eyes are forced across the right shoulder and look at the bayonet. Once the bayonet is engaged onto the rifle, the left hand changes its grip from a full one on the bayonet handle to a ‘Y’ grip, by straightening the fingers to point directly behind the rifle. Then freeze in this position.

03192. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical on the right side of the body. The left hand has a ‘Y’ grip on the bayonet handle, with the fingers closed and pointing directly to the rear.
- b. The left wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in with the head and eyes forced square across the right shoulder and looking at the bayonet blade.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

03193. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Shun

(see Fig 3-8-2)

03194. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement by giving the command “SHUN!”. Explain:* On the command, the left hand releases its grip of the bayonet and is forced across the body by the shortest route to resume the position of Attention. At the same time, the head and eyes are forced directly to the front and the rifle is forced to the rear to resume the correct position of Shoulder Arms.

03195. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is now in the correct position of the Shoulder Arms, bayonet fitted.
- b. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground with the knees braced, the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Do not call out.

03196. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03197. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration and then practise the squad.*

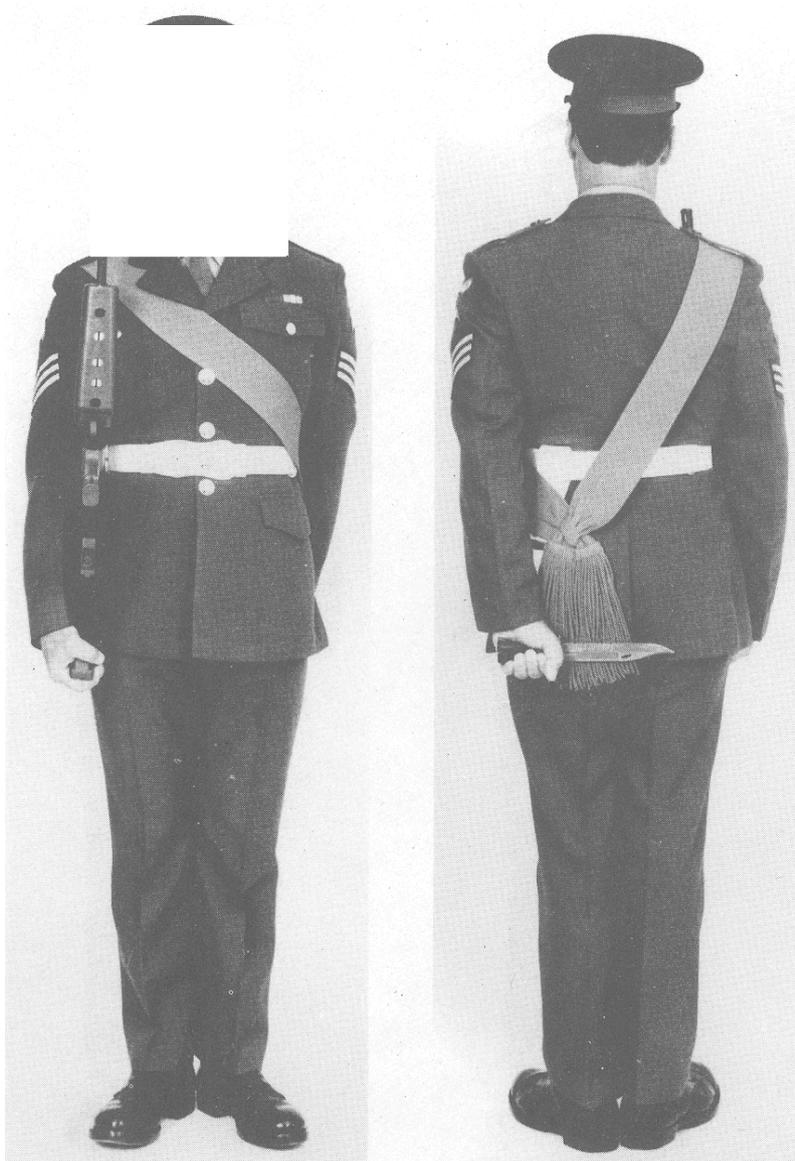
Conclusion

03198. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of concentration to ensure that the bayonet is fixed first time.
 - (2) The need for a firm hold on the bayonet so it is not dropped.
 - (3) The importance of ensuring that the bayonet is withdrawn from the scabbard by extending the left arm towards the ground.
 - (4) A look forward to the Unfixing of Bayonets to be taught in the next lesson.

03199-03200. *Reserved.*

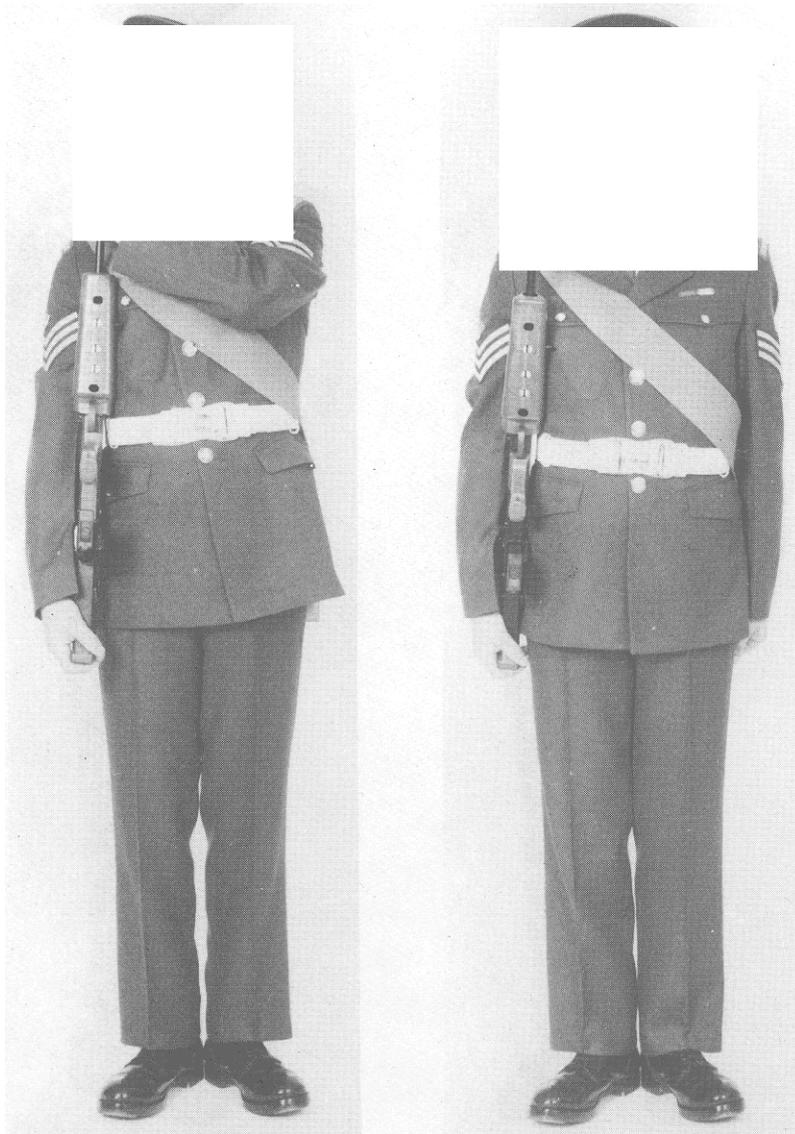
FIG 3-8-1 - FIX BAYONETS - FIX



Front View

Rear View

FIG 3-8-2 - FIX BAYONETS



Bayonets

Shun

RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 9 - THE UNFIXING OF BAYONETS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03201. **Aim.** To teach the Unfixing of Bayonets.

03202. **Timings.** One 20 minute period.

03203. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

03204. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle, bayonet and scabbard.

03205. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03206. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.

03207. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

03208. **Revision.** Revise the Fix Bayonets and retain them on the rifles.

Introduction

03209. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to unfix bayonets in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.

The Unfixing of Bayonets

03210. **The instructor is to demonstrate the unfixing of bayonets using the words of command "SQUAD WILL UNFIX BAYONETS, UNFIX - BAYONETS - SHUN!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain:** For instructional purposes the movement is taught in named parts.

Unfix Bayonets - Unfix

(see Fig 3-9-1 and 3-9-2)

03211. **The instructor is to demonstrate the movement again calling out the time "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE". Explain:** On the command, the left arm is forced across the body by the shortest route to grasp the stock of the rifle in a full grip. Then observe the regulation pause and force the rifle across and down the front centre of the body, at the same time bending the knees sufficiently to be able to grip the rifle in the area between the pistol grip and the magazine. The right hand comes across the body by the shortest route to strike and grasp the bayonet handle in a full grip. Then observe a further regulation pause and release the grip with the left hand to strike and grasp the barrel in a full grip, with the index finger depressing the bayonet release catch. The bayonet is gently eased just clear of the flash eliminator. Then freeze in this position (see Fig 3-9-2).

03212. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground with the heels together.
- b. The rifle is gripped between the knees with the barrel forced well in to the body, with the magazine square to the front.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the barrel and the right hand has a full grip of the bayonet handle.
- d. Both wrists, forearms and elbows are forced well in.
- e. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

- f. Call out the time.

03213. *Order the squad to Shoulder Arms then confirm by questions and practice.*

Bayonets

(see Fig 3-9-3)

03214. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the command “BAYONETS!”, but do not call out Explain:* On the command, the left hand is forced to the rear by the shortest route to strike and grasp the bayonet scabbard in a full grip. At the same time, the right hand forces the bayonet across the body by the shortest route rotating the handle to the left within the hand and striking the bayonet scabbard. The right hand changes its grip from a full grip to a ‘Y’ grip, and then engages the bayonet into the scabbard, so that the cutting edge is uppermost. At the same time, the head and eyes are forced across the left shoulder looking down at the bayonet. Then freeze in this position.

03215. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is gripped between the knees and forced well in to the body.
- b. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground with the heels together.
- c. The left hand has a full grip of the bayonet scabbard with the right hand having a ‘Y’ like grip on the bayonet handle.
- d. The head and eyes are forced square across the left shoulder and are looking down at the bayonet.
- e. The remainder of the body is erect.
- f. Do not call out.

03216. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Shun

(see Fig 3-9-4)

03217. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the command “SHUN”, and calling out the time “ONE - TWO THREE - ONE”. Explain:* On the command, the right hand releases its grip on the bayonet and is forced, by the shortest route, to the right side of the body. At the same time, the left hand releases its grip on the bayonet scabbard to strike and grasp the barrel of the rifle in a full grip and the head and eyes are forced square to the front. Observe the regulation pause then force the rifle under control of the left hand up and across the body to the right shoulder, whilst the right hand is brought approximately 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) away from the rifle to strike and grasp the butt of the rifle in a cup like grip and the knees are braced and the head and eyes are forced square to the front. Then observe the regulation pause after which the left hand releases its grip of the rifle and is forced, by the shortest route, to the left side of the body, at the same time the rifle is forced to the rear. Then freeze in this position.

03218. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground with the heels together.
- b. The rifle is in the correct position of the Shoulder Arms.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out the time.

03219. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03220. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration and then to practise the squad, ensuring they call out the regulation time, moving only on the “ONE’s”.*

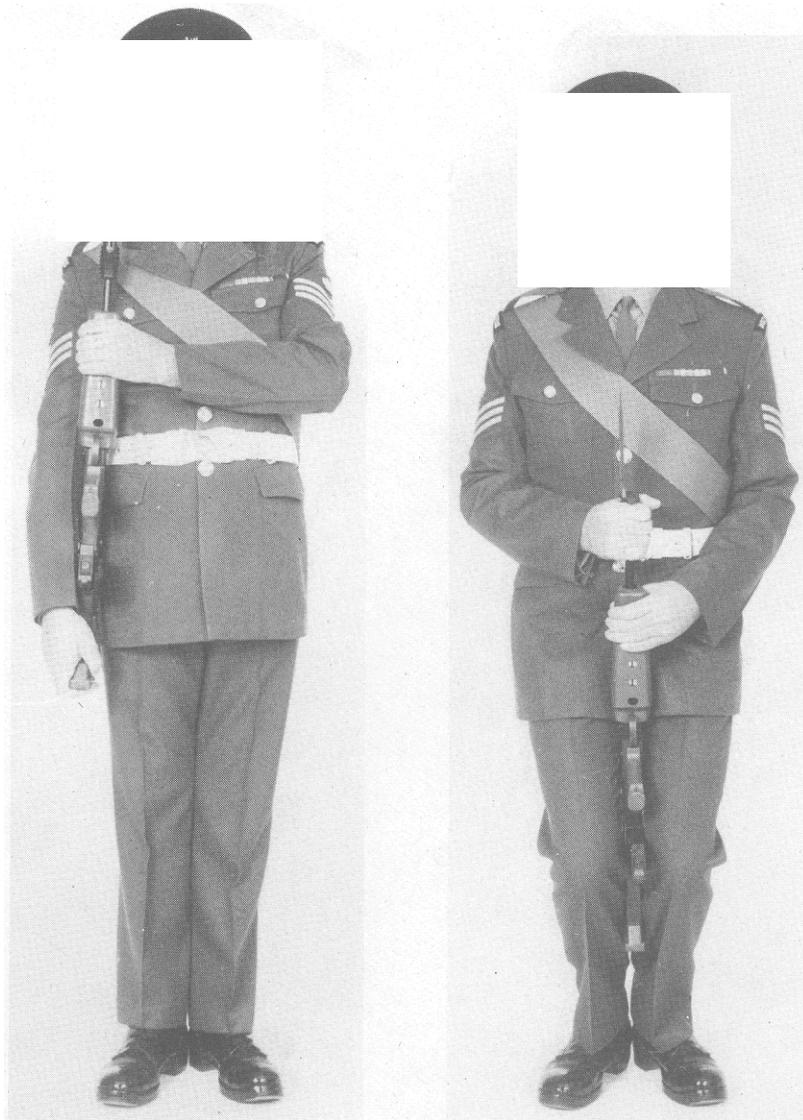
Conclusion

03221. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of holding the bayonet firmly.
 - (2) The importance of timing.
 - (3) A look forward to the Ground Arms from the Shoulder to be taught in the next lesson.

03222-03223. *Reserved.*

FIG 3-9-1 - UNFIX BAYONETS - UNFIX



First Movement

Second Movement

FIG 3-9-2 - UNFIX BAYONETS



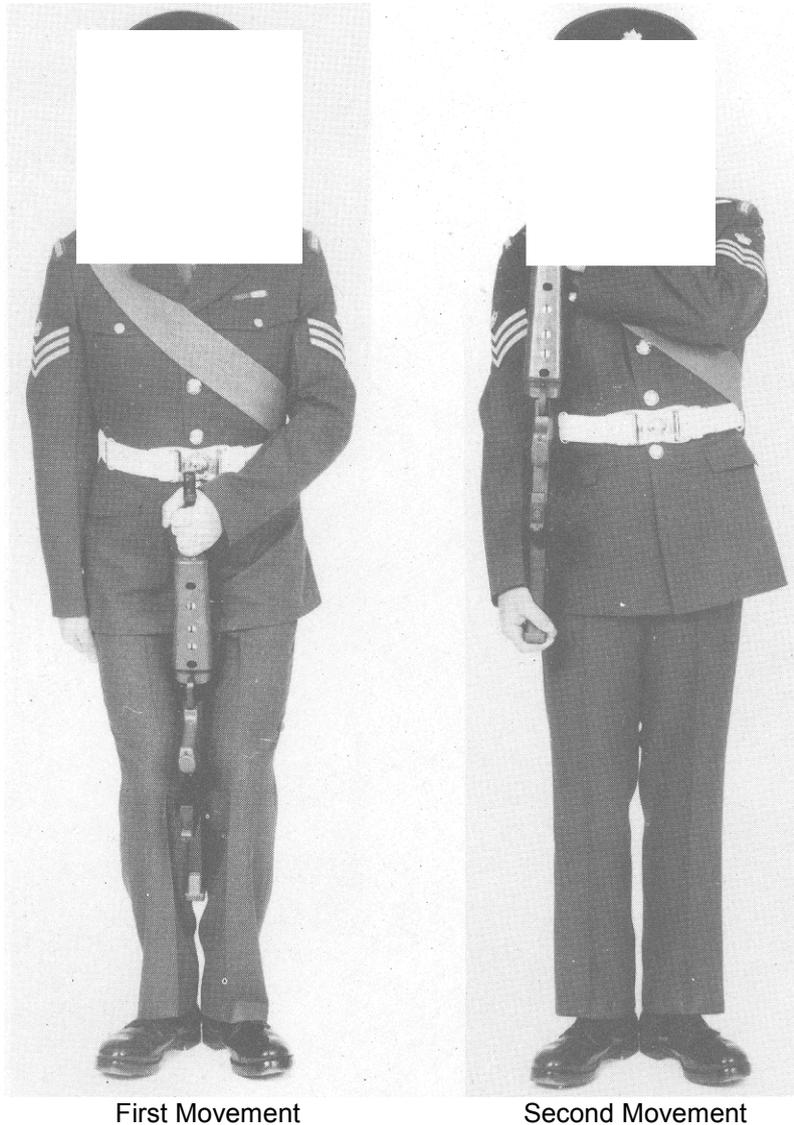
Third Movement

FIX 3-9-3 - UNFIX BAYONETS



Bayonets

FIG 3-9-4 - UNFIX BAYONETS - SHUN



RIFLE EXERCISES
LESSON 10 - THE GROUND ARMS FROM THE SHOULDER

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03224. **Aim.** To teach the Ground Arms from the Shoulder.

03225. **Timings.** One 20 minute period.

03226. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

03227. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).

03228. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03229. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.

03230. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

03231. **Revision.** Revise rifle exercises taught earlier.

Introduction

03232. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Ground Arms from the Shoulder in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.

Ground Arms

03233. **The instructor is to demonstrate the Ground Arms, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, GROUND - ARMS!" at the same time calling out the time.**

Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.

Ground Arms - One

(see Fig 3-10-1)

03234. **The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, GROUND ARMS - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE".** **Explain:**

On the command, force the rifle forward to the vertical position under control of the right hand. At the same time, force the left hand across the body by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the stock of the rifle, then freeze in this position.

03235. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical on the right side of the body with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand retains its 'cup' like grip on the butt plate with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the stock of the rifle, with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. The left forearm is parallel to the ground.
- e. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- f. Call out "ONE".

03236. **Order the squad to Shoulder Arms then confirm by questions and practice.**

Ground Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-10-1)

03237. **The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO".** **Explain:** On the command, release the grip with the right hand, force the hand approximately 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) away from the rifle bending the elbow, to strike and grasp the rifle between the magazine housing and the pistol grip, then freeze in this position.

03238. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the execution of the movement.
- b. The right hand has a 'cup' like grip, with the exception of the thumb, between the magazine housing and the pistol grip, with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

- d. Call out "TWO".

03239. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Ground Arms - Three

(see Fig 3-10-2)

03240. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE". Explain:* On the command, release the grip with the left hand and force it across the body by the shortest route to the correct position of Attention. At the same time, force the rifle down to the right side of the body, under control of the right hand, then freeze in this position.

03241. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right arm is at its fullest extent with the rifle barrel square to the front and parallel to the ground.
- b. The left arm is in the correct position of Attention.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "THREE".

03242. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Ground Arms - Four

(see Fig 3-10-2)

03243. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - FOUR!", at the same time calling out "FOUR". Explain:* On the command, take a short pace of 375 mm (15 inches) with the left foot, placing the flat of the foot on the ground. Then bend both knees and lower the rifle to the ground, twisting the wrist of the right hand, to force the magazine to the right, then freeze in this position.

03244. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is square to the front with the magazine pointing to the right.
- b. The heel of the butt plate is in line with the front edge of the right boot.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "FOUR".

03245. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Ground Arms - Five

(see Fig 3-10-3)

03246. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - FIVE!", at the same time calling out "FIVE". Explain:* On the command, release the grip of the rifle with the right hand. Take a pace of 375 mm (15 inches) to the rear with the left foot. Straighten the body to resume the correct position of Attention, then freeze in this position.

03247. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is square to the front with the butt plate in line with the front edge of the right boot.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "FIVE".

03248. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03249. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement and then to practise the squad, ensuring they call out the regulation time, moving only on the "ONE's".*

Conclusion

03250. *End of Lesson Drill.*

- a.** *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b.** *Safety precautions.*
- c.** *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for good timing.
 - (2) The importance of ensuring that the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front, whilst both knees are bent.
 - (3) A look forward to the Take Up Arms to be taught in the next lesson.

03251-03252. *Reserved.*

FIG 3-10-1 - GROUND ARMS FROM THE SHOULDER



One



Squad Two

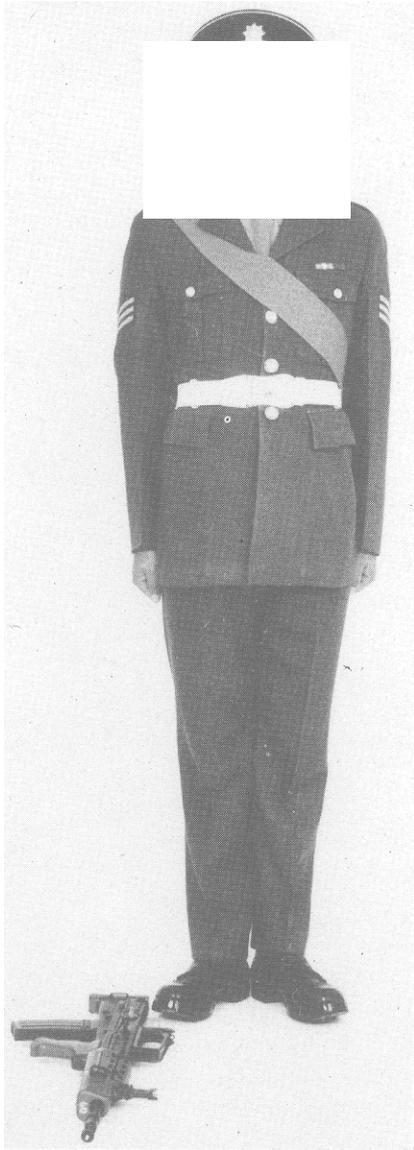
FIG 3-10-2 - GROUND ARMS FROM THE SHOULDER



Squad Three

Squad Four

FIG 3-10-3 - GROUND ARMS - FINAL POSITION



RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 11 - THE TAKE UP ARMS FROM THE GROUND ARMS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03253. **Aim.** To teach the Take Up Arms from the Ground Arms position.

03254. **Timings.** One 20 minute period.

03255. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

03256. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).

03257. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03258. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.

03259. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

03260. **Revision.** Revise the Ground Arms.

Introduction

03261. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Take Up Arms from the ground in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.

Take Up Arms

03262. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, TAKE UP - ARMS!**", at the same time calling out the time. **Explain:** For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.

Take Up Arms - One

(see Figs 3-10-3 and 3-10-2)

03263. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, TAKE UP ARMS - ONE!**", at the same time calling out "ONE". **Explain:** On the command, take a short, 375 mm (15 inches) pace with the left foot, place the flat of the boot on the ground, then bend both knees and grasp the rifle with a 'cup' like grip with the right hand, between the magazine housing and the pistol grip. Then freeze in this position.

03264. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground, the toes of the right foot are on the ground with the heel raised.
- b. The rifle remains on the ground under control of the right hand.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

03265. Order the squad to Ground Arms then confirm by questions and practice.

Take Up Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-10-1)

03266. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO”. Explain:* On the command, the body is raised by straightening the legs and returning the feet to the correct position of Attention. At the same time, the rifle is rotated downwards by the right wrist and kept horizontal to the ground, with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced into the side of the body. The body is frozen in this position.

03267. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees front centre of the body and both knees are braced.
- b. The rifle is horizontal with the magazine square and downwards.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out “TWO”.

03268. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Take Up Arms - Three

(see Fig 3-10-1)

03269. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE”. Explain:* On the command, force the rifle to a vertical position on the right side of the body under control of the right hand. At the same time, force the left hand across the body by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the stock of the rifle, then freeze in this position.

03270. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical on the right side of the body, the right hand retains its ‘cup’ like grip on the rifle with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- b. The left hand has a full grip on the stock of the rifle, with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. The left forearm is parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out “THREE”.

03271. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Take Up Arms - Four

(see Fig 3-10-1)

03272. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - FOUR!”, at the same time calling out “FOUR”. Explain:* On the command, release the grip with the right hand and force the hand 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) from the rifle to re-strike and grasp the butt plate with a ‘cup’ like grip, then freeze in this position.

03273. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the execution of this movement.
- b. The right arm is fully extended with a ‘cup’ like grip on the butt plate.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out “FOUR”.

03274. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Take Up Arms - Five

03275. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - FIVE!”, at the same time calling out “FIVE”. Explain:* On the command, release the grip with the left hand and force it across the body by the shortest route to resume the correct position of Attention. At the same time, force the rifle back to the correct position of the Shoulder Arms and freeze in this position.

03276. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is now in the correct position of the Shoulder Arms.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "FIVE".

03277. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03278. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement and then to practise the squad, ensuring they call out the regulation time, moving only on the "ONE's".*

Conclusion

03279. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.
- b. Safety precautions.
- c. Summary. To include the following:
 - (1) The need for a good grip and timing.
 - (2) The importance of ensuring that the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front, whilst both knees are bent.
 - (3) A look forward to Saluting at the Halt to be taught in the next lesson.

03280-03281. *Reserved.*

RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 12 - SALUTING TO THE FRONT AT THE HALT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03282. **Aim.** To teach the Salute to the Front at the Halt.

03283. **Timings.** One 10 minute period.

03284. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

03285. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).

03286. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03287. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.

03288. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

03289. **Revision.** Revise the Taking Up of Arms if applicable.

Introduction

03290. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Salute to the Front at the Halt in order that an individual or body of men can pay the correct compliment to an officer, or uncased Colours, in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.

Salute to the Front

03291. The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "**SALUTING, SALUTE TO THE FRONT - SALUTE!**", at the same time calling out the time. Explain: For instructional purposes this movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Salute to the Front - One

(see Fig 3-12-1)

03292. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**SALUTING, BY NUMBERS, SALUTE TO THE FRONT - ONE!**", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain: On the command, force the right arm from the position of Attention across the body to strike the rifle in the area of the small of the butt and freeze in this position.

03293. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, both knees are braced and the rifle is in the correct position of the Slope Arms.
- b. The right hand with fingers extended and together are in the area of the small of the butt with the thumb touching the index finger.
- c. The wrist, forearm and elbow are straight and parallel to the ground whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

03294. Confirm by questions then order the squad to Slope Arms and practise.

Salute to the Front - Two

03295. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, force the right hand across the body by the shortest route, at the same time clenching the fingers to form a fist to resume the correct position of Attention at the right side of the body. Then freeze in this position.*

03296. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left arm and rifle do not move throughout the execution of this movement.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "TWO".

03297. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03298. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement and then to practise the squad, ensuring they call out the regulation time, moving only on the "ONE's".*

Conclusion

03299. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need to strike the butt firmly.
 - (2) A look forward to Saluting to a Flank at the Halt to be taught in the next lesson.

03300-03301. *Reserved.*

FIG 3-12-1 - SALUTE TO THE FRONT



RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 13 - SALUTING TO A FLANK AT THE HALT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03302. **Aim.** To teach the Salute to a Flank with the rifle at the Halt.

03303. **Timings.** One 10 minute period.

03304. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

03305. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).

03306. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03307. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.

03308. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

03309. **Revision.** Revise the Salute to the Front at the Halt.

Introduction

03310. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Salute to the Right and Left at the Halt. The reason the movement is taught is to introduce the Salute to the Flank on the March, so that the emphasis is placed on the actions to be carried out as the left heel strikes the ground. The salute to the right will be taught first. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Salute to the Right

03311. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, SALUTE TO THE RIGHT - SALUTE!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.*

Salute to the Right - One

(see Fig 3-13-1)

03312. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, BY NUMBERS, SALUTE TO THE RIGHT - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain: On the command, take a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) with the left foot. As the left heel strikes the ground force the right arm across the body by the shortest route into the correct position of the salute. At the same time, force the head and eyes square across the right shoulder, then freeze in this position.*

03313. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The heel of the left foot is on the ground, toes raised.
- b. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground, both knees are braced.
- c. The rifle, left arm, right hand, wrist, forearm, elbow, head and eyes are in the correct position of the salute whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out 'ONE'.

03314. *Order the squad to Slope Arms and confirm by questions and practice.*

Salute to the Right - Two

03315. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, return the left leg to the position of Attention. Force the left foot down beside the right. At the same time, force the right arm across the body by the shortest route to resume the correct position of Attention, and force the head and eyes to the front then freeze in this position.*

03316. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left arm and rifle do not move throughout the execution of this movement.
- b. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, both knees are braced whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "TWO".

03317. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03318. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement and then practise the squad, ensuring they call the time "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE".*

Salute to the Left at The Halt

(see Fig 3-13-2)

03319. *The instructor is then to teach the Salute to the Left at the Halt, in the same way, ensuring that the head and eyes are forced to look over the left shoulder.*

Conclusion

03320. **End of Lesson Drill**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) Stress the importance of the head and eyes forced square across the shoulder.
 - (2) Emphasize that the actions of the Salute are carried out as the left heel strikes the ground.
 - (3) A look forward to Saluting on the March with the Rifle to be taught in the next lesson.

03321-03322. *Reserved.*

FIG 3-13-1 - SALUTE TO THE RIGHT



FIG 3-13-2 - SALUTE TO THE LEFT



RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 14 - SALUTING TO A FLANK ON THE MARCH

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03323. **Aim.** To teach Saluting to a Rank on the March with the rifle.
03324. **Timings.** One 40 minute period.
03325. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.
03326. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).
03327. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03328. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.
03329. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in one single rank.
03330. **Revision.** Revise Saluting at the Halt.

Introduction

03331. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Salute to a Flank on the March, so that an individual or body of men can pay the correct compliment to an officer, or uncased Colours, whilst approaching from a flank in a smart, uniform manner. The Salute to the Right will be taught first. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Salute to the Right

03332. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, SALUTE TO THE RIGHT - SALUTE!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.*

Salute to the Right - One

(see Figs 3-14-1 and 3-14-2)

03333. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, BY NUMBERS, SALUTE TO THE RIGHT - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain: On the command, which is received as the left heel strikes the ground, take a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) with the right foot, at the same time force the right arm to the rear. Take a further marching pace with the left foot and as the left heel strikes the ground, force the right arm from the rear through the position of Attention and across the body to the position of the Salute. At the same time, force the head and eyes square over the right shoulder and freeze in this position.*

03334. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground.
- b. The left heel is on the ground with toes raised, both knees braced.
- c. The rifle is in the correct position of the Slope Arms. The right hand, wrist, forearm, elbow, head and eyes are in the correct position of the Salute to the Right
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "ONE".

03335. *Order the squad to Slope Arms and confirm by questions and practice.*

Salute to the Right - Two

(see Figs 3-14-1 and 3-14-2)

03336. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement by giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE". Explain: On the command, take a further four full marching paces of 750 mm (30 inches) and freeze in this position.*

03337. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right heel strikes the ground first.
- b. The right foot is flat and firm on the ground. The left heel is on the ground with the toes raised and both knees are braced.
- c. The rifle, right hand, wrist, forearm, elbow, head and eyes remain in the position of the salute to the right throughout the execution of these four paces.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front
- e. Call out the timing.

03338. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Salute to the Right - Six

(see Fig 3-14-2)

03339. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - SIX!", at the same time calling out "DOWN". Explain: On the command, take a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) with the right foot. As the right heel strikes the ground, force the right hand across the body to the correct position of Attention. At the same time, force the head and eyes square to the front and freeze in this position.*

03340. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground. The right heel is on the ground, the toes raised, with both knees braced.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "DOWN".

03341. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Squad - Forward

03342. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - FORWARD!", at the same time calling out "SWING". Explain: On the command, take a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) with the left foot. At the same time, force the right arm forward and continue to march in Quick Time.*

03343. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left heel strikes the ground first and the right arm is forced forward, level and in line with the right shoulder.
- b. Continue to march at the regulation rate of 116 paces to the minute.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "SWING".

03344. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03345. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement and then practise the squad, ensuring they call out the complete timing "ONE - TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE - DOWN - SWING".*

Salute to the Left on the March

03346. *The instructor is then to teach the Salute to the Left on the March. This is taught by demonstration and explanation. The actions remain the same with the exception of the head and eyes which are forced to look over the left shoulder.*

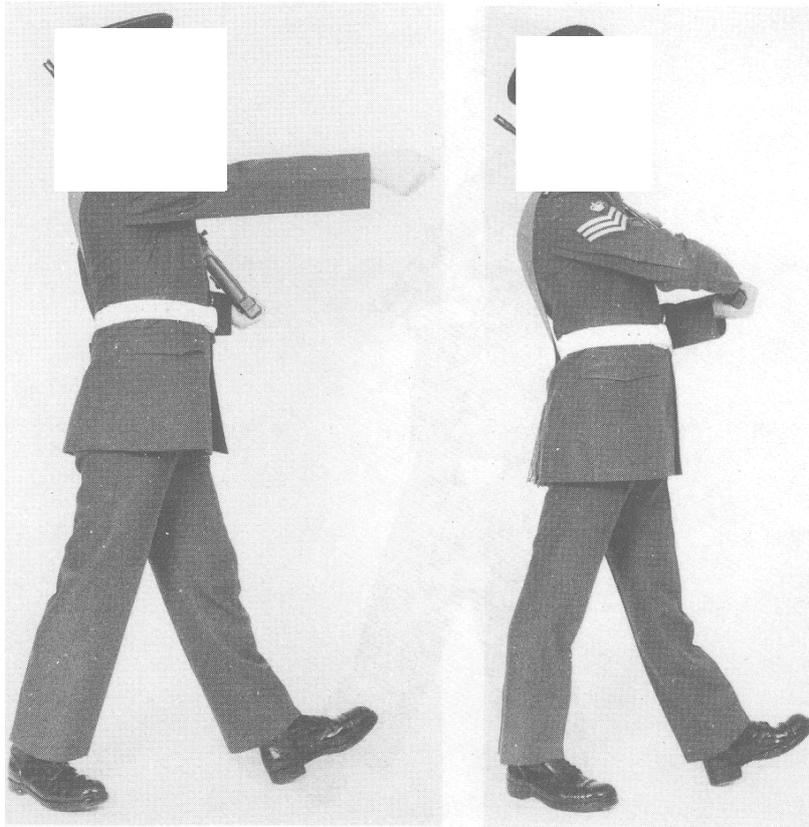
Conclusion

03347. *End of Lesson Drill.*

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) *The need for coordination of movement and the importance of actions taking place as the heels strike the ground.*
 - (2) *A look forward to the Recover Arms at the Slope to be taught in the next lesson.*

03348-03349. *Reserved.*

FIG 3-14-1 - SALUTE TO THE RIGHT ON THE MARCH



Squad One - Both Movements

FIG 3-14-2 - SALUTE TO THE RIGHT ON THE MARCH - SQUAD SIX



RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 15 - THE RECOVER ARMS FROM THE SLOPE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03350. **Aim.** To teach the Recover Arms from the Slope.

03351. **Timings.** One 10 minute period.

03352. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

03353. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).

03354. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03355. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.

03356. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

03357. **Revision.** Revise Saluting on the March if appropriate.

Introduction

03358. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn the Recover Arms from the position of Slope Arms. This is taught to enable an individual to Recover Arms, when acting as a marker on a parade, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Recover Arms

03359. *The instructor is to demonstrate the complete movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, RECOVER - ARMS!". Explain:* For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Recover Arms - One

(see Fig 3-15-1)

03360. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, RECOVER ARMS - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, force the right hand across the body by the shortest route to strike and grasp the small of the butt with a full grip. Freeze in this position.

03361. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle and left arm do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt just below the magazine housing with the right arm, wrist and elbow parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front
- d. Call out "ONE".

03362. *Order the squad to Slope Arms and confirm by questions and practice.*

Recover Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-15-1)

03363. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - TWO!”, at the same time calling out “TWO”. Explain: On the command, force the rifle to the front centre of the body under control of the right hand. At the same time, rotate both grips to ensure total control of the rifle. Freeze in this position.*

03364. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical with the magazine square to the front, the cocking handle in line with the mouth.
- b. The left hand has a ‘cup’ like grip of the butt plate with the thumb along the left side of the butt plate with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front
- d. Call out “TWO”.

03365. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03366. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement and then to practise the squad, ensuring they call out the time and move only on the “ONE’s”.*

Conclusion

03367. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of total control of the rifle with both hands on the second movement.
 - (2) A look forward to the Slope Arms from the Recover to be taught in the next lesson.

03368-03369. *Reserved.*

FIG 3-15-1 - RECOVER ARMS



One



Squad Two

RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 16 - THE SLOPE ARMS FROM THE RECOVER

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03370. **Aim.** To teach the Slope Arms from the Recover.

03371. **Timings.** One 10 minute period.

03372. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

03373. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).

03374. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03375. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up

03376. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

03377. **Revision.** Revise the Recover Arms.

Introduction

03378. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Slope Arms from the Recover position in a smart, uniform manner, having achieved the correct alignment on parade as a right marker. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.

Slope Arms

03379. The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement, giving the words of command "**RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, SLOPE - ARMS!**", at the same time calling out the time. **Explain:** For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Slope Arms - One

(see Fig 3-15-1)

03380. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, SLOPE ARMS - ONE!**", at the same time calling out "ONE". **Explain:** On the command, force the rifle back to the left shoulder to the position of the Slope Arms under control of the right hand. At the same time, rotate the grip of both hands to resume the 'Recover Arms - One' position and freeze in this position.

03381. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is in the correct position on the left shoulder with the magazine square to the left.
- b. The left hand has a 'cup' like grip on the butt with the thumb round the toe of the butt with the left wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt just below the magazine housing, with the right wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

03382. Confirm by questions then adopt the Recover Arms position and practise.

Slope Arms - Two

03383. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement by giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, force the right hand to the right side of the body by the shortest possible route and freeze in this position.*

03384. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle and left arm do not move throughout the execution of the movement.
- b. The right arm resumes the correct position of Attention with the remainder of the body erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "TWO".

03385. Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.

Final Demonstration and Practice

03386. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement and then practise the squad, ensuring they call out the time, moving only on the "ONE's".*

Conclusion

03387. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.
- b. Safety precautions.
- c. Summary. To include the following:
 - (1) The importance of total control of the rifle with both hands on the first movement.
 - (2) A look forward to the On Guard from the Slope to be taught in the next lesson.

03388-03389. *Reserved.*

RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 17 - THE ON GUARD FROM THE SLOPE ARMS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03390. **Aim.** *To teach the On Guard from the Slope.*

03391. **Timings.** *One 10 minute period.*

03392. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

03393. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle, bayonet and scabbard.*

03394. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03395. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up. Order the squad to "Fix Bayonets"*

03396. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.*

03397. **Revision.** *Revise the Slope Arms from the Recover if appropriate.*

Introduction

03398. *Explain:* The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn the On Guard position from the Slope, to enable an individual or body of men to challenge whilst on sentry duty in a smart manner. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

The On Guard

03399. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME - ON GUARD!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

On Guard - One

(see Fig 3-17-1)

03400. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, ON GUARD - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, force the right arm across the body by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the area of the small of the butt, then freeze in this position.

03401. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left hand and rifle do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow straight and parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

03402. *Order the squad to Slope Arms and confirm by questions and practice.*

On Guard - Two

(see Fig 3-17-1)

03403. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle under control of the right hand across the body to the right shoulder. At the same time, the left hand releases its grip on the butt plate to strike, seize and grasp the stock in a full grip, whilst the right hand changes to a 'Y' like grip. Then freeze in this position.

03404. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical in the right shoulder with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' like grip on the small of the butt.
- c. The left hand has a full grip of the stock with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "TWO".

03405. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

On Guard - Three

(see Fig 3-17-2)

03406. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle forward in front of the right shoulder under control of the left hand. At the same time, release the grip with the right hand to strike and grasp the pistol grip. Bend the left leg sufficiently to take a 750 mm (30 inches) pace to the front and freeze in this position.

03407. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground with both knees braced, the body weight forward over the left leg.

- b. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt placed on the right hip.
- c. The right hand has a full grip on the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger, which is placed on the trigger guard.
- d. The left hand retains its full grip on the stock with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "THREE".

03408. *Confirm by question then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03409. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement and then practise the squad, ensuring they call out the time, moving only on the "ONE's".*

Conclusion

03410. *End of Lesson Drill*

- a. Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.
- b. Safety precautions.
- c. Summary. To include the following:
 - (1) The need for simultaneous action on the third movement.
 - (2) The importance of striking, seizing and grasping the rifle.
 - (3) A look forward to the Slope Arms from the On Guard to be taught in the next lesson.

03411-03412. *Reserved.*

FIG 3-17-1 - ON GUARD FROM THE SLOPE



One

Squad Two

FIG 3-17-2 - ON GUARD FROM THE SLOPE



Squad Three

RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 18 - THE SLOPE ARMS FROM THE ON GUARD

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03413. **Aim.** To teach the Slope Arms from the On Guard.

03414. **Timings.** One 10 minute period.

03415. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

03416. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle, bayonet and scabbard.

03417. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03418. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up. Order the squad to "Fix Bayonets".

03419. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

03420. **Revision.** Revise the On Guard movement.

Introduction

03421. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Slope Arms from the On Guard position in a smart manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.

Slope Arms

(see Figs 3-17-1 and 3-17-2)

03422. The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement, giving the words of command "**RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, SLOPE - ARMS!**", at the same time calling out the time. **Explain:** For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Slope Arms - One

03423. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, SLOPE ARMS - ONE!**", at the same time calling out "ONE". **Explain:** On the command, force the rifle into the right shoulder under control of the left hand. At the same time, release the grip with the right hand to strike and grasp the small of the butt in a 'Y' like grip, whilst the left leg is bent until the thigh is parallel to the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee. Then force it in beside the right and freeze in this position.

03424. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground, both knees are braced and the rifle is in the vertical position in the right shoulder with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' like grip on the small of the butt. The left hand has a full grip of the stock with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

03425. Confirm by questions then adopt the On Guard position and practise.

Slope Arms - Two

03426. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, force the rifle across the body by the shortest route to the left shoulder, under control of the right hand. At the same time, change the grip of the right hand to a full grip, whilst the left hand releases its grip to strike and grasp the butt plate, then freeze in this position.*

03427. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is on the left shoulder with the magazine square to the left.
- b. The left hand has a 'cup' like grip on the butt plate with the left wrist and forearm parallel to the ground.
- c. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call Out "TWO".

03428. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Slope Arms - Three

03429. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE". Explain: On the command, force the right arm down by the shortest possible route to resume the correct position of Attention, then freeze in this position.*

03430. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The correct position of the Slope Arms has been adopted.
- b. The rifle, left wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- c. Call out "THREE".

03431. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03432. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement and then practise the squad, ensuring they call out the time "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE".*

Conclusion

03433. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.
- b. Safety precautions.
- c. Summary. To include the following:
 - (1) Timing and firm handling, with the foot movement well coordinated with that of the rifle.
 - (2) A look forward to the High Port Arms movement from the Slope Arms, to be taught in the next lesson.

03434-03435. *Reserved.*

RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 19 - THE HIGH PORT ARMS FROM THE SLOPE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03436. **Aim.** To teach the High Port Arms from the Slope.

03437. **Timings.** One 30 minute period.

03438. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

03439. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle, bayonet and scabbard.

03440. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03441. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up. Order the squad to "Fix Bayonets".

03442. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

03443. **Revision.** Revise the Slope Arms from the On Guard if appropriate.

Introduction

03444. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn the High Port Arms. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of men to High Port Arms, when safe carriage of the rifle with bayonets fixed is required, in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.

High Port Arms

03445. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, HIGH PORT - ARMS!**", at the same time calling out the time. **Explain:** For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

High Port Arms - One

(see Fig 3-19-1)

03446. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, HIGH PORT ARMS - ONE!**", at the same time calling out "ONE". **Explain:** On the command, force the right hand up across the body by the shortest route to strike and grasp the pistol grip in a full grip, then freeze in this position.

03447. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right hand has a full hold of the pistol grip.
- b. The wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

03448. Order the squad to Slope Arms and confirm by questions and practice.

High Port Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-19-1)

03449. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, force the rifle across the front centre of the body until it is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees in front of the chest. At the same time, extend the index finger along the trigger guard whilst the left hand releases its grip on the butt plate to restrike and grasp the stock in a full grip. Then freeze in this position.*

03450. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is held approximately 100 to 150 mm. (four to six inches) in front and at an angle of approximately 45 degrees across the chest.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the pistol grip, with the exception of the index finger which runs up and along the trigger guard.
- c. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in. The left hand has a full grip on the stock of the rifle with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "TWO".

03451. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03452. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement then practise the squad, ensuring they call out the time, moving only on the "ONE's".*

Conclusion

03453. **End of Lesson Drill**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need to strike, seize and grasp the rifle on both movements.
 - (2) A look forward to the Slope Arms from the High Port to be taught in the next lesson.

03454-03455. *Reserved.*

FIG 3-19-1 - HIGH PORT ARMS



One



Squad Two

RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 20 - THE SLOPE ARMS FROM THE HIGH PORT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03456. **Aim.** To teach the Slope Arms from the High Port.

03457. **Timings.** One 10 minute period.

03458. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

03459. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle, bayonet and scabbard.

03460. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03461. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up. Order the squad to "Fix Bayonets".

03462. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

03463. **Revision.** Revise the High Port Arms if appropriate.

Introduction

03464. **Explain:** The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Slope Arms from the High Port. The reason this movement is taught is to allow an individual or a body of men to Slope Arms from the High Port in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.

Slope Arms

(see Fig 3-19-1)

03465. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME. SLOPE - ARMS!**", at the same time calling out the time. **Explain:** For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Slope Arms - One

03466. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, SLOPE ARMS - ONE!**", at the time calling out "ONE". **Explain:** On the command, force the rifle up onto the left shoulder under control of the right hand. At the same time, change the right hand to a full grip whilst forcing the left hand away from the rifle to restrike and grasp the butt plate in a 'cup' like grip, then freeze in this position.

03467. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is on the left shoulder at an angle of approximately 45 degrees, with the magazine square to the left.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the pistol grip.
- c. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in and the left hand has a 'cup' like grip on the butt plate with the wrist and forearm parallel to the ground and the elbow forced well in.
- d. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "ONE".

03468. *Order the squad to Slope Arms then High Port Arms and confirm by questions and practice.*

Slope Arms - Two

03469. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, force the right hand across the body by the shortest route, forcing the fingers and thumb into a fist to resume the correct position of Attention, then freeze in this position.*

03470. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is now in the correct position of the Slope Arms with the body held erect and square to the front.
- b. Call out "TWO".

03471. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03472. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement then practise the squad, ensuring they call out the time, moving only on the "ONE's".*

Conclusion

03473. **End of Lesson Drill**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need to strike, seize and grasp the rifle.
 - (2) A look forward to the Reverse Arms from the Slope to be taught in the next lesson.

Chapter 3 RIFLE AND CARBINE EXERCISES

Part 2 L22A2 CARBINE EXERCISES

INTRODUCTION

General

03474. The arms drill for the L22A2 Carbine has been devised for ease of simplicity and standardisation with L85A2 Rifle drill. With the exception of changes to certain drill movements (as taught in the following lessons), the drill for the carbine remains exactly the same as the drill taught for the rifle. Therefore instructors should refer to the relevant rifle lesson if the lesson is not found in this section.

03475. For ease of compatibility, all words of command remain the same for L22A2 Carbine drill as those used with the L85A2 Rifle; this will facilitate the use of both weapons when used on formal drill parades together.

03476. The same principles apply for carbine arms drill as that devised for the rifle (see page 3-1 and 3-2).

03477. The bayonet cannot be fitted to the L22A2 Carbine.

03478. The L22A2 Carbine is not recommended for use for ceremonial drill as it cannot be fitted with a bayonet.

03479. The L22A2 Carbine is not to be used for funeral drill.

03480-03481. *Reserved.*

CARBINE EXERCISES LESSON 21 - THE CHANGE ARMS AT THE SHOULDER

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03482. **Aim.** *To teach the Change Arms at the Shoulder.*

03483. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

03484. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

03485. **Dress and Stores.** *No 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with Carbine.*

03486. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03487. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*

03488. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their Carbines, in a half circle.*

03489. **Revision.** *Revise positions for Attention, Stand at Ease, and Stand Easy with the Rifle which are the same when using the Carbine.*

Introduction

03490. **Explain:** The next stage in carbine exercises is to learn the Change Arms at the Shoulder. The movement is taught to enable you as an individual or as a body of men to rest a limb or provide a spectacle at a military display in a smart soldier like and uniform manner. The change from the right

to the left shoulder is taught first. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Change Arms

03491. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command 'RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, CHANGE - ARMS', at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.

Change Arms - One

(see Fig 3-21-1)

03492. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command 'RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, CHANGE ARMS - ONE' at the same time calling out 'ONE'. Explain:* On the command force the carbine into the front centre of the body with the right hand. At the same time the left hand comes across the body by the shortest route to strike, seize and grip the weapon in between the magazine housing and the pistol grip. The body is then frozen in this position.

03493. Points to Note. These are:

- a. The carbine is vertical and approx 100 - 150 mm (four to six inches) from the front centre of the body, with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right arm is at its fullest extent, with the right hand retaining its grip on the butt plate, the right wrist, forearm and elbow is forced well into the body.
- c. The left hand has a cup like grip in between the pistol grip and the magazine housing with the thumb running vertical, with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well into the body.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out 'ONE'.

03494. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of attention and practice.*

Change Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-21-1)

03495. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command 'SQUAD - TWO' then calling out 'TWO'. Explain:* On the command, release the grip with the right hand and force it up the side of the carbine by the shortest route, to strike, seize and grip the front adjustable forward hand grip with a cup like grip and then freeze in this position.

03496. Points to Note. These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow did not move during the movement.
- b. The right hand has a cup like grip on the adjustable forward hand grip with the fingers wrapped round the top.
- c. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out 'TWO'.

03497. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice*

Change Arms - Three

(see Fig 3-21-2)

03498. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command 'SQUAD - THREE' then calling out 'THREE'. Explain:* On the command, release the grip with the left hand and at the same time force the carbine by the shortest route to the vertical position on the left hand side. Strike, seize and grip the base of the butt plate with the left hand and then freeze in this position.

03499. Points to Note. These are:

- a. The rifle is now in the vertical position on the left side of the body.

- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out 'THREE'.

03500. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice*

Change Arms - Four

(see Fig 3-21-2)

03501. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of **command** 'SQUAD - FOUR' then calling out 'FOUR'. Explain: On the command, release the grip with the right hand, force it across the body by the shortest route to resume the correct position of Attention. At the same time force the carbine back into the left side and then freeze in this position.*

03502. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The carbine is now in the correct position of the Shoulder Arms on the left side of the body.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out 'FOUR'.

03503. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03504. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement calling out 'ONE - TWO THREE - ONE', etc, only moving on the 'ONE's'. The squad is to practice the complete movement, calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

Change Arms from Left to Right Shoulder

03505. *The squad must now be taught how to Change Arms from the left shoulder to the right. This is done by demonstration and explanation.*

Conclusion

03506. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm.*
- b. *Safety Precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of strike, seizing and gripping the carbine.
 - (2) Calling out the time.
 - (3) A look forward to the Slope Arms from the Shoulder to be taught in the next lesson.

03507-03508. Reserved.

FIG 3-21-1 - CHANGE ARMS



One



Squad Two

FIG 3-21-2 - CHANGE ARMS



Squad Three



Squad Four

CARBINE EXERCISES

LESSON 22 - SLOPE ARMS FROM THE SHOULDER

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03509. **Aim.** To teach the Slope Arms from the Shoulder.
03510. **Timings.** One 20 minute period.
03511. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.
03512. **Dress and Stores.** No 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with Carbine.
03513. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03514. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*
03515. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their Carbines, in a half circle.*
03516. **Revision.** *Revise Change Arms at the Shoulder with the Carbine.*

Introduction

03517. *Explain:* The next stage in carbine exercises is to learn the Slope Arms from the Shoulder. The movement is taught to enable you as an individual or a body of men to rest a limb or provide a spectacle at a military display in a smart soldier like and uniform manner. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Slope Arms

03518. *The instructor is to demonstrate the Slope Arms, giving the words of command 'RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, SLOPE - ARMS', at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.

Slope Arms - One

(see Fig 3-22-1)

03519. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command 'RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, SLOPE ARMS - ONE' at the same time calling out 'ONE'. Explain:* On the command force the carbine to the vertical position under control of the right hand, at the same time release the grip of the right hand and force it up the carbine by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the butt of the carbine in a 'Y' like grip. The left hand is forced across the body by the shortest route to strike seize and grip the adjustable forward hand grip with a full grip. The body is then frozen in this position.

03520. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The carbine is vertical with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' like grip on the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow is forced well into the body.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the adjustable forward hand grip.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out 'ONE'.

03521. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of attention and practice.*

Slope Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-22-2)

03522. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of **command 'SQUAD - TWO'** at the same time calling out 'TWO'. Explain:* On the command force the carbine up and across the body by the shortest possible route, placing the rifle on the left shoulder under control of the right hand. At the same time, change the grip of the right hand to a full grip, whilst the left hand releases its full grip and is forced down the carbine by the shortest possible route to strike, seize and grip the butt plate with a 'cup' like grip on the butt. The body is then frozen in this position.

03523. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The stock of the carbine is on the left shoulder with the magazine square to the left, the left hand has a 'Cup' like grip on the butt plate with the left wrist and forearm parallel to the ground, the left elbow is forced well into the body.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out 'TWO'.

03524. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Slope Arms - Three

(see Fig 3-22-2)

03525. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of **command 'SQUAD - THREE'** at the same time calling out 'THREE'. Explain:* On the command force the right arm down by the shortest possible route to resume the correct position of attention. Freeze the body in this position.

03526. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. This is the correct position of the Slope Arms.
- b. The carbine, left wrist, forearm and elbow did not move during the movement.
- c. Call out 'THREE'.

03527. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03528. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement calling out 'ONE - TWO THREE - ONE', etc, only moving on the 'ONE's'. The squad is to practice the complete movement, calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

Conclusion

03529. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm.*
- b. *Safety Precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of strike, seizing and gripping the carbine.
 - (2) Calling out the time.
 - (3) A look forward to the Shoulder Arms from the Slope to be taught in the next lesson.

03530-03531. Reserved.

FIG 3-22-1 - SLOPE ARMS



One - Front View



One - Side View

FIG 3-22-2 - SLOPE ARMS



Squad Two



Squad Three

CARBINE EXERCISES

LESSON 23 - SHOULDER ARMS FROM THE SLOPE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03532. **Aim.** *To teach the Shoulder Arms from the Slope.*

03533. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

03534. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

03535. **Dress and Stores.** *No 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with Carbine.*

03536. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03537. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*

03538. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their Carbines, in a half circle.*

03539. **Revision.** *Revise Slope Arms from the Shoulder with the Carbine.*

Introduction

03540. **Explain:** *The next stage in carbine exercises is to learn the Shoulder Arms from the Slope. The movement is taught to enable you as an individual or a body of men to rest a limb or provide a spectacle at a military display in a smart soldier like and uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Slope Arms

03541. *The instructor is to demonstrate the Shoulder Arms, giving the words of command 'RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, SHOULDER - ARMS', at the same time calling out the time.*

Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.

Shoulder Arms - One

(see Fig 3-23-1)

03542. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command 'RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, SHOULDER ARMS - ONE' at the same time calling out 'ONE'.*

Explain: On the command force the right hand across the body by the shortest possible route to strike seize and grip the small of the butt with a full grip, then freeze in this position.

03543. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right hand fully grips the small of the butt, and the forearm is parallel to the ground.
- b. The carbine and the left arm did not move throughout the execution of this movement.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out 'One'.

03544. Confirm by questions then adopt the position of the Slope and practice.

Shoulder Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-23-1)

03545. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command 'SQUAD - TWO' at the same time calling out 'TWO'. Explain:* On the command force the carbine down by the

shortest possible route to a vertical position on the right side of the body under control of the right hand. At the same time the grip of the right hand is changed to that of a 'Y' like grip on the small of the butt. Whilst the left hand releases its grip and is forced up the carbine by the shortest possible route to strike, seize and grip the adjustable forward hand grip with a full grip, then freeze in this position.

03546. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The carbine is vertical with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' like grip in the area of the small of the butt with the right arm at its fullest extent with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip of the adjustable forward hand grip, with the left wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out 'Two'.

03547. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Shoulder Arms - Three

(see Fig 3-23-2)

03548. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command 'SQUAD - THREE' at the same time calling out 'THREE'. Explain: On the command release the grip of the right hand and forced it down to strike, seize and grasp the butt plate with a 'cup' like grip then freeze in this position.*

03549. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right hand has a cup-like grip on the butt plate with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- b. The carbine, left wrist and forearm do not move.
- c. Call out 'Three'.

03550. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Shoulder Arms - Four

(see Fig 3-23-3)

03551. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command 'SQUAD - FOUR' at the same time calling out 'FOUR'. Explain: On the command force the carbine back under control of the right hand at the same time release the grip of the left hand and forced it across the body by the shortest route to resume the correct position of Attention and freeze in this position.*

03552. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The carbine is now in the correct position of the Shoulder Arms.
- b. The remainder of the body is square and erect to the front.
- c. Call out 'Four'.

03553. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03554. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement calling out 'ONE - TWO THREE - ONE', etc, only moving on the 'ONE's'. The squad is to practice the complete movement, calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

Conclusion

03555. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm.*
- b. *Safety Precautions.*

c. *Summary. To include the following:*

- (1) The importance of strike, seizing and gripping the carbine.
- (2) Calling out the time.
- (3) A look forward to the Change Arms at the Slope to be taught in the next lesson.

03556-03557. Reserved.

FIG 3-23-1 - SHOULDER ARMS



One



Squad Two

FIG 3-23-2 - SHOULDER ARMS



Squad Three - Front view



Squad Three - Side view

FIG 3-23-3 - SHOULDER ARMS



Squad Four - Front View



Squad Four - Side View

CARBINE EXERCISES LESSON 24 - CHANGE ARMS AT THE SLOPE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03558. **Aim.** *To teach the Change Arms at the Slope.*

03559. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

03560. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

03561. **Dress and Stores.** *No 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with Carbine.*

03562. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03563. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.

03564. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their Carbines, in a half circle.

03565. **Revision.** Revise Shoulder Arms from the Slope with the Carbine.

Introduction

03566. *Explain:* The next stage in carbine exercises is to learn the Change Arms at the Slope. The movement is taught to enable you as an individual or a body of men to rest a limb or provide a spectacle at a military display in a smart soldier like and uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.

Change Arms

03567. The instructor is to demonstrate the Shoulder Arms, giving the words of command '**RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, CHANGE - ARMS**', at the same time calling out the time. *Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.

Change Arms - One

(see Fig 3-24-1)

03568. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of **command 'RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, CHANGE ARMS - ONE'** at the same time calling out 'ONE'. *Explain:* On the command force the right hand across the body by the shortest possible route to strike seize and grip the small of the butt with a full grip, then freeze in this position.

03569. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right hand fully grips the small of the butt, and the forearm is parallel to the ground.
- b. The carbine and the left wrist, forearm and elbow did not move during this movement.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out 'ONE'.

03570. Confirm by questions then adopt the position of the Slope and practice.

Change Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-24-1)

03571. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of **command 'SQUAD - TWO'** at the same time calling out 'TWO'. *Explain:* On the command force the carbine down and across the front centre of the body under control of the right hand. At the same time release the grip on the butt by the left hand and strike and seize the adjustable forward hand grip with a full grip and then freeze in this position.

03572. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The carbine is vertical and approximately 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) away from the front centre of the body with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has retained a full grip on the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the carbine between the magazine housing and the pistol grip, with the thumb running vertical up the carbine.

- d. Call out 'TWO'.

03573. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Change Arms - Three

(see Fig 3-24-2)

03574. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of **command 'SQUAD - THREE'** at the same time calling out 'THREE'. Explain:* On the command force the carbine across onto the right shoulder under control of the left hand. At the same time release the grip of the right hand on the small of the butt, to strike, seize and grip the butt plate in a 'cup' like grip and then freeze in this position.

03575. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The carbine is on the right shoulder with the magazine square to the right.
- b. The right hand has a cup-like grip on the butt plate.
- c. The right forearm is parallel to the ground with the elbow forced well in.
- d. The left hand retains its grip between the magazine housing and the pistol grip, with the thumb running vertical up the carbine.
- e. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- f. Call out 'THREE'.

03576. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Change Arms - Four

(see Fig 3-24-2)

03577. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of **command 'SQUAD - FOUR'** at the same time calling out 'FOUR'. Explain:* On the command force the left arm down by the shortest possible route to resume the correct position of attention and then freeze in this position.

03578. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The carbine is now in the correct position of the Slope Arms in the right shoulder.
- b. The carbine, left wrist, forearm and elbow did not move during the movement.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out 'FOUR'.

03579. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03580. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement calling out 'ONE - TWO THREE - ONE', etc, only moving on the 'ONE's'. The squad is to practice the complete movement, calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

Change Arms from Left to Right Shoulder

03581. *The squad must now be taught how to Change Arms from the left shoulder to the right. This is done by demonstration and explanation.*

Conclusion

03582. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm.*
- b. *Safety Precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of strike, seize and grip the carbine.

(2) Calling out the time.

(3) A look forward to the Present Arms from the Slope to be taught in the next lesson.

03583-03584. Reserved.

FIG 3-24-1 - CHANGE ARMS



One



Squad Two

FIG 3-24-2 - CHANGE ARMS



Squad Three



Squad Four

CARBINE EXERCISES

LESSON 25 - PRESENT ARMS FROM THE SLOPE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03585. **Aim.** *To teach the Present Arms from the Slope.*

03586. **Timings.** *One 30 minute period.*

03587. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

03588. **Dress and Stores.** *No 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with Carbine.*

03589. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03590. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*

03591. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their Carbines, in a half circle.*

03592. **Revision.** *Revise Change Arms at the Slope with the Carbine.*

Introduction

03593. **Explain:** *The next stage in carbine exercises is to learn the Present Arms from the Slope. The movement is taught to enable you as an individual or a body of men to pay the highest compliment with a Carbine in a smart and uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Present Arms

03594. **The instructor is to demonstrate the Present Arms, giving the words of command 'RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, PRESENT - ARMS', at the same time calling out the time. Explain:** *For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.*

Present Arms - One

(see Fig 3-25-1)

03595. **The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command 'RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, PRESENT ARMS - ONE' at the same time calling out 'ONE'. Explain:** *On the command force the right hand across the body by the shortest route to strike and grip in a full grip, on the small of the butt. The body is then frozen in this position.*

03596. **Points to Note.** *These are:*

- a. *The carbine, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move during the movement.*
- b. *The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt with the arm parallel to the ground.*
- c. *The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.*
- d. *Call out 'ONE'.*

03597. **Confirm by questions then adopt the position of the Slope and practice.**

Present Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-25-1)

03598. **The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command 'SQUAD - TWO' at the same time calling out 'TWO'. Explain:** *On the command force the carbine across and up to the front centre of the body with the right hand, at the same time releasing the grip with the left*

hand and forcing the left arm approximately 150 mm (six inches) from the carbine extending the fingers and thumb. Then re-strike, the left side of the carbine with the left fingers, palm, wrist, forearm, and elbow. The body is then frozen in this position.

03599. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The carbine is vertical with the magazine square to the front and approximately 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) from the body.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left fingers are together and running vertically up the side of the carbine with the left thumb in line with the mouth.
- d. The left wrist, forearm, and elbow, are forced well into the carbine, with the elbow touching the fingers of the right hand.
- e. The end of flash eliminator is in line with the bridge of the nose.
- f. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- g. Call out 'TWO'.

03600. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Present Arms - Three

(see Fig 3-25-2)

03601. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of **command 'SQUAD - THREE'** at the same time calling out 'THREE'. Explain: On the command force the carbine down the front centre of the body by fully extending the right arm, at the same time changing the grip of the right hand to that of a 'Y' like grip on the small of the butt. At the same time, force the left hand approximately 150 mm (six inches) from the rifle to strike and seize the carbine between the pistol grip and magazine housing. At the same time also bend the right knee in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground and the foot hanging naturally below it, then force the right foot down just behind the left. Freeze the body in this position.*

03602. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The carbine is vertical with the magazine square to the front and approximately 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) from the body.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' like grip on the small of the butt.
- c. The left hand has a full grip between the pistol grip and magazine housing, except for the thumb, which is vertical to the rifle.
- d. The left wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well into the body.
- e. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees, with the instep of the right boot touching the heel of the left. Both knees are braced and the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- f. Call out 'THREE'.

03603. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03604. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement calling out 'ONE - TWO THREE - ONE', etc, only moving on the 'ONE's'. The squad is to practice the complete movement, calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

Conclusion

03605. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm.*
- b. *Safety Precautions.*

c. *Summary. To include the following:*

- (1) The importance of strike, seizing and gripping the carbine.
- (2) Calling out the time.
- (3) A look forward to the Slope Arms from the Present to be taught in the next lesson.

03606-03607. Reserved.

FIG 3-25-1 - PRESENT ARMS



One



Squad Two

FIG 3-25-2 - PRESENT ARMS



Squad Three

CARBINE EXERCISES

LESSON 26 - THE GROUND ARMS FROM THE SHOULDER

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03608. **Aim.** *To teach the Ground Arms from the Shoulder.*

03609. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

03610. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

03611. **Dress and Stores.** *No 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with Carbine.*

03612. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03613. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*

03614. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their Carbines, in a half circle.*

03615. **Revision.** *Revise previous exercises taught with the Carbine.*

Introduction

03616. *Explain:* The next stage in carbine exercises is to learn how to Ground Arms from the Shoulder in a smart and uniform manner. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Ground Arms

03617. The instructor is to demonstrate the Slope Arms, giving the words of command 'RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, GROUND - ARMS', at the same time calling out the time.

Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.

Ground Arms - One

(see Fig 3-26-1)

03618. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command 'RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, GROUND ARMS - ONE' at the same time calling out 'ONE'. Explain:* On the command force the carbine to the vertical position under control of the right hand. At the same time force the left hand across the body by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the adjustable pistol grip of the carbine with a full grip. The body is then frozen in this position.

03619. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The carbine is vertical on the right side of the body with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand retains its 'cup' like grip on the small of the butt plate with the right wrist, forearm and elbow is forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the adjustable hand grip, with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. The left forearm is parallel to the ground.
- e. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- f. Call out 'ONE'.

03620. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Shoulder Arms and practice.*

Ground Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-26-1)

03621. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of **command 'SQUAD - TWO'** at the same time calling out 'TWO'. Explain:* On the command release the grip of the right hand, force the right hand approximately 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) away from the carbine bending the elbow, to strike and grasp the carbine between the magazine housing and the pistol grip. The body is then frozen in this position.

03622. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The carbine, left hand, wrist forearm and elbow do not move throughout the execution of the movement.
- b. The right hand has a 'cup' like grip, with the exception of the thumb, between the magazine housing and the pistol grip with the right wrist forearm and elbow forced well into the body.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out 'TWO'.

03623. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Ground Arms - Three

(see Fig 3-26-2)

03624. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of **command 'SQUAD - THREE'** at the same time calling out 'THREE'. Explain:* On the command release the grip of the left hand and force it across the body by the shortest route to the correct position of attention. At the same time, force the carbine down to the right side of the body, under control of the right hand. The body is then frozen in this position.

03625. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right arm is at its fullest extent with the rifle barrel square to the front and parallel to the ground.
- b. The left arm is in the correct position of Attention.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out 'THREE'.

03626. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Ground Arms - Four

(see Fig 3-26-2)

03627. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of **command 'SQUAD - FOUR'** at the same time calling out 'FOUR'. Explain:* On the command take a short pace of 375 mm (15 inches) forward with the left foot, placing the flat of the foot on the ground. Then bend both knees and lower the carbine to the ground, twisting the wrist of the right hand, to force the magazine to the right. The body is then frozen in this position.

03628. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The carbine is square to the front with the magazine pointing to the right.
- b. The heel of the butt plate is in line with the front edge of the right boot.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out 'FOUR'.

03629. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Ground Arms - Five

03630. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of **command 'SQUAD - FIVE'** at the same time calling out 'FIVE'. Explain:* On the command release the grip of the carbine

with the right hand. Take a pace of 375 mm (15 inches) to the rear with the left foot. Straighten the body to resume the correct position of Attention. The body is then frozen in this position.

03631. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The carbine is square to the front with the heel of the butt plate is in line with the front edge of the right boot.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out 'FIVE'.

03632. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03633. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement calling out 'ONE - TWO THREE - ONE', etc, only moving on the 'ONE's'. The squad is to practice the complete movement, calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

Conclusion

03634. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm.*
- b. *Safety Precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of strike, seizing and gripping the carbine.
 - (2) Calling out the time.
 - (3) A look forward to the Take Up Arms to be taught in the next lesson.

03635-03636. Reserved.

FIG 3-26-1 - GROUND ARMS FROM THE SHOULDER



One



Squad Two

FIG 3-26-2 - GROUND ARMS FROM THE SHOULDER



Squad Three



Squad Four

CARBINE EXERCISES LESSON 27 - THE TAKE UP ARMS FROM THE GROUND ARMS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

03637. **Aim.** *To teach the Take up Arms from the Ground Arms.*

03638. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

03639. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

03640. **Dress and Stores.** *No 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with Carbine.*

03641. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

03642. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*

03643. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their Carbines, in a half circle.*

03644. **Revision.** *Revise the Ground Arms taught with the Carbine.*

Introduction

03645. *Explain:* The next stage in carbine exercises is to learn how to take Up Arms from the ground in a smart and uniform manner. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Take Up Arms

03646. *The instructor is to demonstrate the Slope Arms, giving the words of command 'RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, TAKE UP - ARMS', at the same time calling out the time.*

Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is taught in numbered parts.

Take Up Arms - One

(see Fig 3-27-1)

03647. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command 'RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, TAKE UP ARMS - ONE' at the same time calling out 'ONE'. Explain:* On the command take a short pace of 375 mm (15 inches) with the left foot, place the flat of the boot on the ground, then bend both knees and grasp the carbine with a cup like grip with the right hand, between the magazine housing and the pistol grip. The body is then frozen in this position.

03648. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground; the toes of the right foot are on the ground with the heel raised.
- b. The carbine remains on the floor under control of the right hand.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out 'ONE'.

03649. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practice.*

Take Up Arms - Two

(see Fig 3-27-1)

03650. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command 'SQUAD - TWO' at the same time calling out 'TWO'. Explain:* On the command the body is raised by straightening the legs and returning to the correct position of Attention. At the same time the carbine is rotated downwards by the right wrist and kept horizontal to the ground with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well into the body. The body is then frozen in this position.

03651. **Points to Note.** These are:

Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees front centre of the body and both knees are braced.

- a. The carbine is horizontal with the magazine square and downwards.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out 'TWO'.

03652. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Take Up Arms - Three

(see Fig 3-27-2)

03653. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of **command 'SQUAD - THREE'** at the same time calling out 'THREE'. Explain:* On the command force the carbine to a vertical position on the right side of the body, under control of the right hand. At the same time, force the left hand across the body by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the adjustable hand grip. The body is then frozen in this position.

03654. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The carbine is vertical on the right side of the body the right hand retains a cup like grip on the carbine with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- b. The left hand has a full grip on the adjustable hand grip with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. The left forearm is parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out 'THREE'.

03655. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Take Up Arms - Four

(see Fig 3-27-2)

03656. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of **command 'SQUAD - FOUR'** at the same time calling out 'FOUR'. Explain:* On the command release the grip with the right hand and force the hand approximately 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) from the carbine to re-strike and grasp the butt plate with a 'cup' like grip. The body is then frozen in this position.

03657. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The carbine left hand, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the execution of this movement.
- b. The right arm is fully extended with a 'cup' like grip on the butt plate.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out 'FOUR'.

03658. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Take Up Arms - Five

(see Fig 3-27-3)

03659. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of **command 'SQUAD - FIVE'** at the same time calling out 'FIVE'. Explain:* On the command release the grip with the left hand and force it across the body by the shortest route to resume the correct position of the Shoulder Arms. The body is then frozen in this position.

03660. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The carbine is now in the correct position of the Shoulder Arms.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out 'FIVE'.

03661. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practice.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

03662. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement calling out 'ONE - TWO THREE - ONE', etc, only moving on the 'ONE's'. The squad is to practice the complete movement, calling out the time at the regulation rate.*

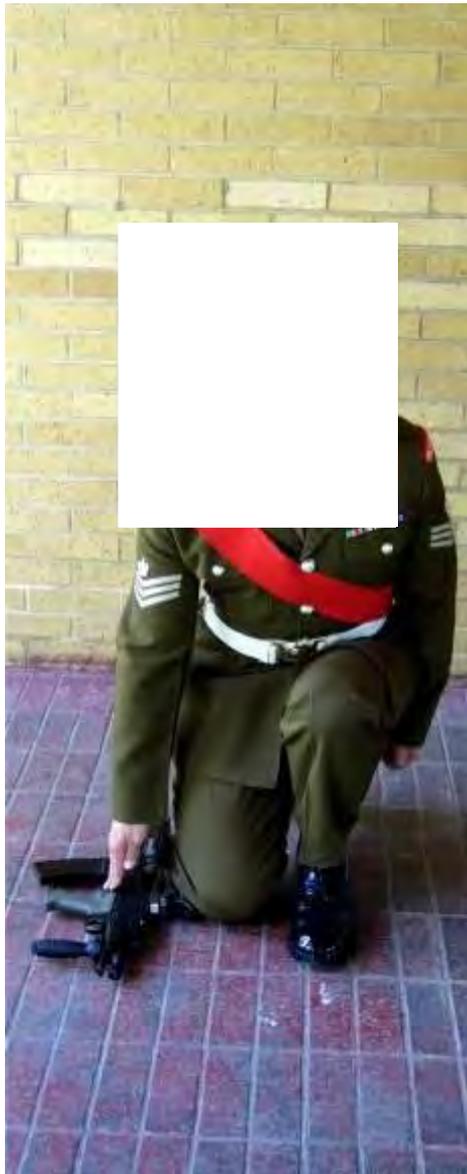
Conclusion

03663. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm.*
- b. *Safety Precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of strike, seizing and gripping the carbine.
 - (2) Calling out the time.
 - (3) A look forward to the revision of all movements with the carbine.

03664-03665. Reserved

FIG 3-27-1 - TAKE UP ARMS FROM THE GROUND ARMS



One



Squad Two

FIG 3-27-2 - TAKE UP ARMS FROM THE GROUND ARMS



Squad Three



Squad Four

FIG 3-27-3 - TAKE UP ARMS FROM THE GROUND ARMS



Squad Five - Final Position of Attention

Chapter 4

SWORD DRILL

INTRODUCTION

0401. **General.** The sword is a traditional badge of rank and honour. In the Army, with the exception of the Mounted Squadron of the Household Cavalry, The King's Troop Royal Horse Artillery and certain soldiers in specified appointments, the sword indicates a holder of Her Majesty's Commission or Warrant. The two main qualities that should be pursued in sword drill are:

- a. Accuracy.
- b. Graceful Movement.

0402. When drawn, the sword is always held at the 'Carry' with two exceptions:

- a. When troops are marching At Ease.
- b. When colours are sloped.

0403. When officers are ordered to fall in, they will come to Attention and draw their swords before stepping off. When ordered to fall out, they will salute the senior officer, return their swords and fall in behind him.

0404. **Method of Wearing Swords.** The method of wearing swords varies with the equipment worn by mounted and dismounted officers and soldiers, and in consequence the drawing and returning of swords will have slight variations but once the sword is drawn, sword exercises are the same for all. Swords are worn as follows:

- a. **Sam Browne Belt.** The sword hangs vertically with the hilt facing to the front and the pommel in line with the top of the Sam Browne Belt. As the sword hilt is already facing the front, no assistance is required by the left hand to turn the sword to the front.
- b. **Slung Sword.** The sword is hung on the belt hook, hilt to the rear behind the left elbow, shoe of the scabbard to the front.

0405. **Position of Attention.** For the various methods of wearing swords the position of Attention will be:

- a. **Sam Browne Belt (see Fig 65).** The position of Attention, except that the scabbard is held with the left hand, the left arm straight, thumb curled around the front, back of the hand to the left, forefinger running down the left side, remaining fingers curled around the back. (In some Corps and Regiments the left arm is bent outside the hilt.)
- b. **Slung Sword (see Fig 66).** The position of Attention with the hilt of the sword behind the left elbow.
- c. **Trailed Sword.** The position of Attention except that the left hand holding the sword in its scabbard is slightly forward of the left thigh.

0406. **Trailed Sword.** The sword is worn in this position by mounted officers and soldiers, when they are dismounted; the shoe of the scabbard, when the sword is not drawn, rests on the ground behind the left heel; the left hand holds the handle of the sword, back of the hand to the left, fingers curled around the handle, thumb around the right side. The sword handle is forward of the body. The drill for drawing and returning a trailed sword is as follows:

- a. **To Draw Swords.** Grasp the top of the scabbard with the left hand and raise the sword to the line of the waist belt; the drill laid down in Lesson 1 is carried out and on the third movement the scabbard is lowered to about 50 mm (2 inches) from the ground retaining the grip with the left hand, arm close to the side.
- b. **To Return Swords.** Raise the scabbard to receive the point of the sword and carry out the drill as laid down in Lesson 1. On the third movement, place the shoe of the scabbard on the ground and return the left hand to grasp the handle.

0407. **Patrolling.** When patrolling, the sword is held in the second position of the salute to the front (at the halt). Both arms are swung, ensuring that the sword is kept close to the body and the edge of the sword and the basket facing left, the point 300 mm (12 inches) from the ground.

0408. Regimental traditions and customs may dictate the carriage of the sword. However, when parades involving different units occur, officers should liaise with the officer commanding the parade with regard to the method of carriage of swords.

0409. *Reserved.*

FIG 65 - POSITION OF ATTENTION - SAM BROWNE BELT



FIG 66 - POSITION OF ATTENTION - SLUNG SWORD



SWORD DRILL LESSON 1 - DRAW SWORDS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

- 0410. **Aim.** To teach Draw Swords.
- 0411. **Timings.** One 20 minute period.
- 0412. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.
- 0413. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.
- 0414. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

- 0415. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.

0416. **Revision.** Nil.

Introduction

0417. *Explain:* The first stage in sword drill is to learn the Draw Swords. The movement is taught to enable an individual or body of men to draw swords in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Draw Swords

0418. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD WILL FIX BAYONETS, FIX - BAYONETS - SHUN!". Explain:* For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Draw Swords - One

(see Fig 67)

0419. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SWORD EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, DRAW SWORDS - ONE!", which will coincide with the order "SQUAD WILL FIX BAYONETS - FIX!". Explain:* On the command, the top of the scabbard is grasped by the left hand, at the same time turning it so that the hilt of the sword is pointing to the front. At the same time, the right hand is taken across the body to grasp the handle of the sword, the back of the hand to the rear. The sword is then drawn with the right hand until the forearm is horizontal and as close to the body as possible with the pommel in line with the shoulder. The body is frozen in this position. Do not call out the time.

0420. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The fingers of the left hand are curled round the scabbard thumb on the right side, the left elbow to the rear.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0421. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention and practise.*

Draw Swords - Two

(see Fig 67)

0422. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", which will coincide with the order "BAYONETS!". Explain:* On the command, the sword is drawn sharply upwards and forwards to assume the position of the 'Recover'. At the same time, the scabbard is released and the left hand adopts the correct position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. Do not call out the time.

0423. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The tip of the sword is uppermost, edge to the left, hilt in line with the mouth.
- b. Fingers are curled around the handle, the thumb pointing upwards, the back of the hand to the front.
- c. The forearm and elbow are close to the chest.
- d. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0424. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Draw Swords - Three

(see Fig 68)

0425. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", which will coincide with the order "SHUN!". Explain:* On the command, the sword is brought to the right side to adopt the position of the 'Carry'. The body is frozen in this position. Do not call out the time.

0426. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The blade is vertical, the edge to the front.

- b. The grip is changed during the movement, curling the fingers lightly round the handle and extending them so that the hilt rests lightly on the forefinger and thumb.
- c. The forearm is horizontal, the elbow close to the side.
- d. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0427. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

0428. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement, emphasizing that:*

- a. *The squad do not call out.*
- b. *Accuracy and graceful movement are essential.*

0429. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

0430. ***End of Lesson Drill***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The necessity for graceful movement.
 - (2) A look forward to the Return Swords, to be taught in the next lesson.

0431. *Reserved.*

FIG 67 - DRAW SWORDS

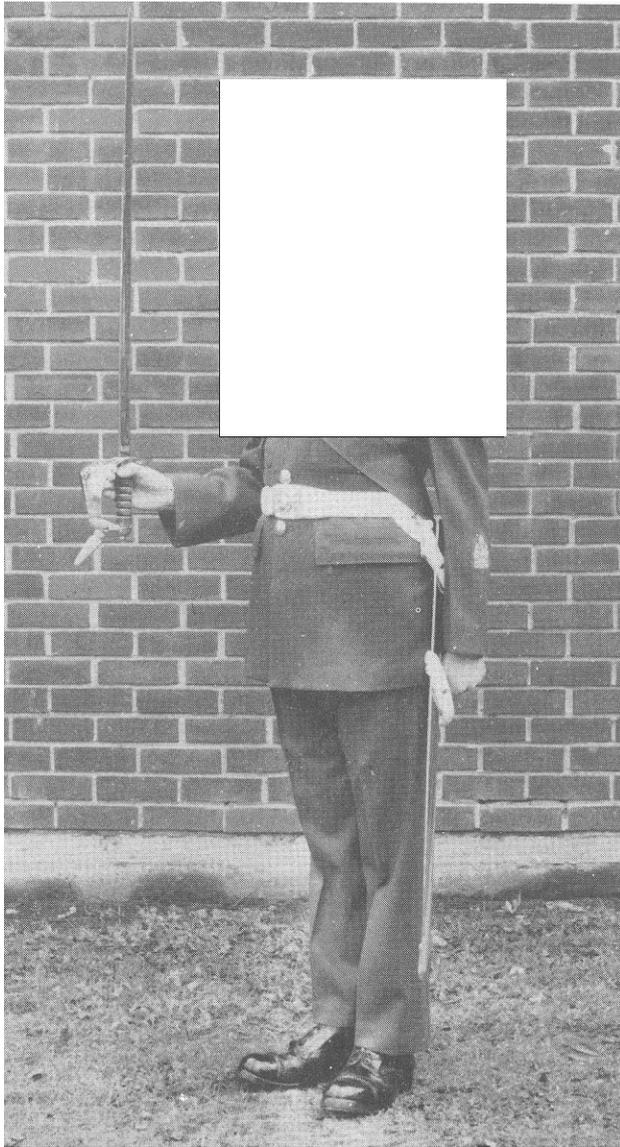


One



Two (The Recover)

FIG 68 - DRAW SWORDS - THREE



The Carry

SWORD DRILL LESSON 2 - RETURN SWORDS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0432. **Aim.** To teach Return Swords.
0433. **Timings.** One 20 minute period.
0434. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.
0435. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.
0436. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0437. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.*

0438. **Revision.** *Revise the Draw Swords, then return them to their scabbards.*

Introduction

0438. *Explain:* The next lesson in Sword Drill is to learn how to Return Swords. The movement is taught to enable an individual or body of men to Return Swords in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" (swords still in scabbards) and watch your demonstration.*

Return Swords

0439. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD WILL UNFIX BAYONETS, UNFIX - BAYONETS - SHUN!". Explain:* For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Return Swords - One

(see Fig 69)

0440. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SWORD EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, RETURN SWORDS - ONE!", which will coincide with the order "SQUAD WILL UNFIX BAYONETS - UNFIX!". Explain:* On the command, the sword is brought across the body, the right hand keeping it vertical, until the hilt is to the left of and in line with the left shoulder. At the same time, seize the scabbard with the left hand turning it clockwise through 180 degrees. Allow the point of the sword to drop to the rear until it is parallel to the left side of the body. Allow the handle to rotate through the fingers so that the hilt is facing the front. When the sword point touches the scabbard raise the sword and guide it into the mouth of the scabbard by using the fingers of the left hand. Force the sword into the scabbard to the position of 'Draw Swords - One'. The body is then frozen in this position. Do not call out the time.

0441. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The edge of the sword is to the front.
- b. The right elbow is raised and the fingers of the left hand are curled round the top of the scabbard, the thumb on the inside.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0442. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention, draw swords to the Carry and practise.*

Return Swords - Two

(see Fig 69)

0443. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", which will coincide with the order "BAYONETS!". Explain:* On the command, the right hand is placed palm downwards on top of the pommel and with the left hand still holding the scabbard the sword is forced into the scabbard with the right forearm horizontal. The body is frozen in this position. Do not call out the time.

0444. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The fingers of the right hand are curled.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0445. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Return Swords - Three

0446. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - THREE!”, which will coincide with the order “SHUN!”. Explain: Both hands are returned to the side to resume the correct position of Attention. The body is frozen in this position. Do not call out the time.*

0447. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. As the left hand is returned to the side, the scabbard is given a flick to ensure that the sword returns to the correct position of Attention.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

0448. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

0449. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement.*

0450. *Confirm by questions and practice.*

Conclusion

0451. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need to feel positively for the scabbard entrance and the placing of the sword tip just into it.
 - (2) A look forward to the Slope, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy with the sword and Saluting at the Halt, to be taught in the next lesson.

0452. *Reserved.*

FIG 69 - RETURN SWORDS



One



Squad Two

SWORD DRILL

LESSON 3 - SLOPE SWORDS, STAND AT EASE AND STAND EASY AND THE SALUTE AT THE HALT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0453. **Aim.** To teach Slope Swords, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy and Saluting at the Halt.
0454. **Timings.** One 40 minute period.
0455. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.
0456. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.
0457. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0458. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.*

0459. **Revision.** *Revise the Draw and Return Swords.*

Introduction

0460. *Explain:* The next stage in sword drill is to learn how to Slope Swords, to Stand at Ease and Easy with the sword drawn and how to Salute at the Halt. The movements are taught so that officers on parade can follow their troops' movements, and return a salute with the sword in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" (swords still in scabbards) and watch your demonstration of the Slope and Stand at Easy and Easy.*

Slope Swords, Stand at Ease and Stand Easy (with Swords Drawn)

0461. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movements, giving the words of command as follows:*

- a. **"SLOPE - SWORDS!"**. *Explain:* The movement is done only from the Carry. Allow the sword to drop back on to the right shoulder. The forearm remains horizontal, the fingers rest on the handle and the little finger goes behind the handle (see Fig 70).
- b. **"STAND AT - EASE!"**. *Explain:* Bend the left knee and slope the sword (see Fig 71). The left hand remains to the side except with a trailed sword (see paragraph 0406).
- c. **"STAND - EASY!"**. *Explain:* Allow the point of the sword to fall forward and to the left so that it is placed to the ground between the feet in line with the tips of the toes. The basket is forward and the hand is cupped on top of the pommel. Place the left hand on top of the right hand and relax the body (see Fig 72).

0462. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The movements are carried out gracefully especially the Stand Easy, where it is necessary to feel carefully for the right position for the sword tip.
- b. Timings are not to be called out.

0463. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of Attention, draw swords and practise.*

The Salute to the Front

0464. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, SALUTE TO THE FRONT - SALUTE!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* The whole movement must be accurate and graceful, and the sword must not move unnecessarily. For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Salute to the Front - One

(see Fig 67)

0465. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, BY NUMBERS, SALUTE TO THE FRONT - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, the sword is brought from the position of the Carry to the position of the Recover. The body is frozen in this position.

0466. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The sword is now at the correct position of the Recover, the tip of the sword uppermost, edge to the left and the hilt in line with the mouth.
- b. The fingers are curled around the handle - thumb pointing upwards, back of the hand to the front.
- c. The forearm and elbow close to the chest.

- d. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "ONE".

0467. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of the Carry and practise.*

Salute to the Front - Two

(see Fig 73)

0468. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, the sword is lowered to the right side of the body, so that the right arm is straight. The point of the sword is approximately 300 mm (12 inches) from the ground and in front of the right shoulder, then freeze in this position.*

0469. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The edge of the sword is to the left, the thumb is flat on the side of the handle and the fingers grip the handle.
- b. The hilt is just behind the right thigh.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "TWO".

0470. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Salute to the Front - Three

0471. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE". Explain: On the command, the sword is brought back to the position of the Recover, i.e., The Salute to the Front - One. Observe the regulation pause and return the sword to the position of the Carry, then freeze in this position.*

0472. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The sword, when adopting the position of the Recover and the Carry, is moved with accuracy and graceful movement.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "THREE".

0473. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

0474. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement, calling out the time and the squad is to practice, working on the "ONE's" and standing still on the "TWOs and THREES". Explain: Soldiers, with the exception of Warrant Officer Class 1 on a Trooping the Colour Parade, do not salute with the sword. 'Carry Sword' is the compliment given.*

Conclusion

0475. **End of Lesson Drill**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need to keep the arm straight when required, and the sword tip no more than 300 mm (12 inches) from the ground, on the Salute.
 - (2) A look forward to Saluting on the March in Quick Time, to be taught in the next lesson.

0476. *Reserved.*

FIG 70 - SLOPE SWORDS



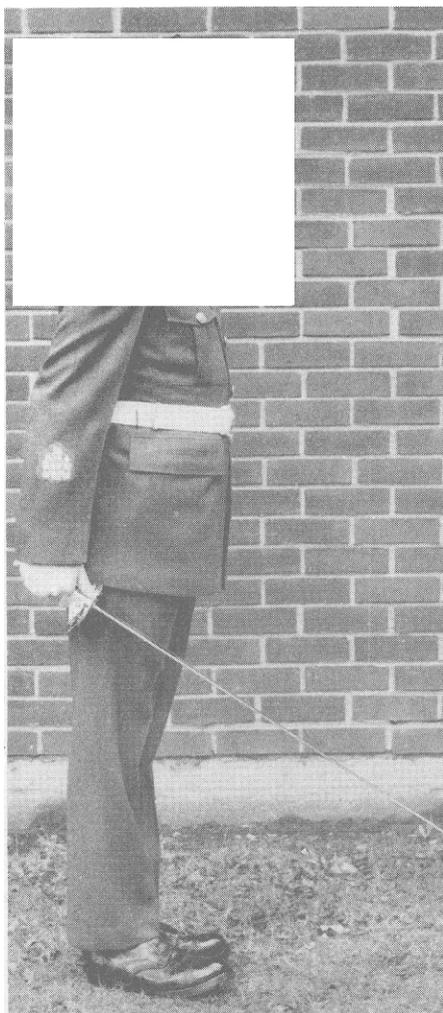
FIG 71 - STAND AT EASE - SLUNG SWORD



FIG 72 - STAND EASY - SLUNG SWORD



FIG 73 - SALUTE TO THE FRONT - SECOND MOVEMENT



SWORD DRILL

LESSON 4 - SALUTING ON THE MARCH IN SLOW AND QUICK TIME

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0477. **Aim.** To teach Saluting on the March in Slow and Quick Time.
0478. **Timings.** One 40 minute period.
0479. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.
0480. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.
0481. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0482. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.
0483. **Revision.** Revise Saluting at the Halt then return swords to their scabbards.

Introduction

0484. *Explain:* The next stage in sword exercises is to learn how to Salute to a Flank whilst on the March in Slow and Quick Time. The movements are taught to enable a compliment to be paid during a ceremonial parade. The Salute in Slow Time will be taught first. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Salute on the March in Slow Time

0485. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "EYES - RIGHT!" or "EYES - LEFT!". Explain:* For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Salute to the Right - One

(see Fig 74)

0486. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, BY NUMBERS, SALUTE TO THE RIGHT - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, which is given as the right foot strikes the ground, take a further full marching pace with the left foot. As the left boot strikes the ground the right arm is forced out to the right at its fullest extent, at the same time the head and eyes are turned to the right, then freeze in this position.

0487. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The pommel of the sword is in line with the top of the right shoulder.
- b. The sword blade is square off to the right, the blade being vertical and the edge to the right.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

0488. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Attention and draw swords. Order the squad to Slow March and practise, calling out the time.*

Salute to the Right - Two

(see Fig 74)

0489. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain:* On the command, take a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) with the right foot and during this pace bring the sword round in a circular sweep across the body, so that the pommel of the sword comes to the point of the left shoulder, then freeze in this position.

0490. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The blade is kept vertical, the hand and elbow are kept the same height as in 'Salute to the Right - One'.
- b. The elbow is kept level with the shoulder whilst the thumb remains round the handle, the head and eyes remain looking square over the right shoulder.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "TWO".

0491. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise, calling out the time.*

Salute to the Right - Three

(see Fig 75)

0492. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE". Explain:* On the command, take a further full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) with the left foot and during this pace continue the sweeping motion of the right hand with the sword, passing through the position of the Recover until the pommel is in front of the point of the right shoulder, then freeze in this position.

0493. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The wrist remains shoulder high with the hand in line with the mouth.
- b. The head and eyes remain looking square over the right shoulder.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "THREE".

0494. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise, calling out the time.*

Salute to the Right - Four

(see Fig 75)

0495. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - FOUR!", at the same time calling out "FOUR". Explain:* On the command, take a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) with the right foot. During this pace lower the elbow to the side, at the same time changing the grip, so that the thumb points up the side of the handle to assume the correct position of the Salute, then freeze in this position.

0496. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right arm is straight, the edge of the sword is to the left, the point 300 mm (12 inches) from the ground in front of the right shoulder.
- b. The hilt is positioned just behind the right thigh and the head and eyes remain looking square over the right shoulder.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "FOUR".

0497. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise, calling out the time.*

Eyes - Front

0498. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "EYES - FRONT!". Explain:* On the command, received as the right foot touches the ground and working on the next left foot, the head and eyes are returned to the front. At the same time, the sword is brought to the position of the Recover. On the next left foot the sword is brought to the position of the Carry as marching in Slow Time continues at the regulation rate of 65 paces to the minute. Do not call out the time.

0499. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The elbow is kept close to the side of the body when bringing the sword to the position of the Recover.
- b. The right forearm remains horizontal, elbow close to the side when in the position of the Carry.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

04100. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Slow March with the sword in the Salute position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

04101. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of both movements then practise the squad, getting them to call out the timing "ONE - TWO - THREE - FOUR" on the Salute.*

Saluting on the March in Quick Time

04102. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement. Explain:* The sword will be retained at the Carry. The head and eyes will be turned on the word of command given to the troops. If units through regimental custom salute with the sword in Quick Time, the salute is given working as each left foot strikes the ground as for the Slow March just taught.

04103. *Practise the squad.*

Conclusion

04104. ***End of Lesson Drill***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of timing in the salute, the position of the forearm and tip of the sword from the ground.
 - (2) The need to look the officer taking the salute in the eye.
 - (3) A look forward to the Reverse Swords from the Carry, to be taught in the next lesson.

04105. *Reserved.*

FIG 74 - SALUTE TO THE LEFT OR RIGHT - THE FLOURISH

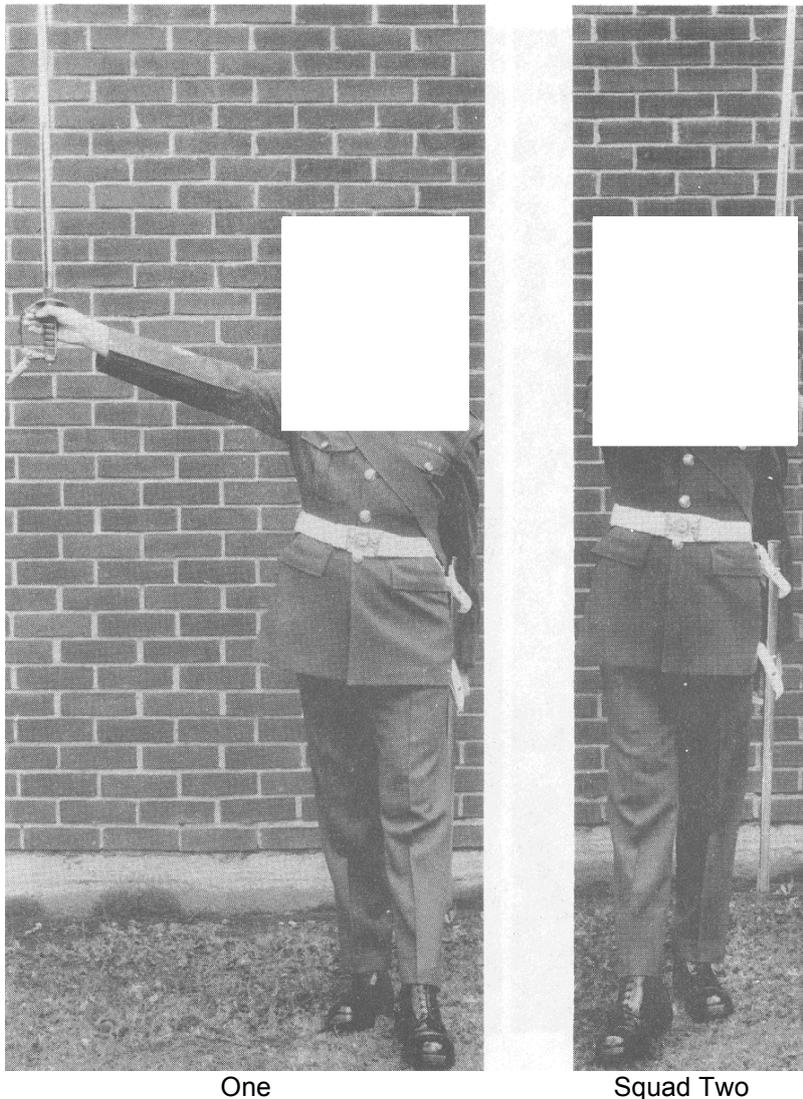


FIG 75 - SALUTE TO THE LEFT OR RIGHT



Squad Three

Squad Four

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES - MOUNTED SWORD DRILL

04106. **Introduction.** For those Corps or Regiments with officers mounted for parade, the following variations on Sword Drill are relevant.

04107. **To Draw Swords.** For instructional purposes the movement would be taught in numbered parts. Words of command for each part are as follows:

- a. **"DRAW SWORDS - ONE!"**. Bring the right arm across the body, over the bridle arm, and draw the sword until the hilt rests on the bridle arm. If required put the right hand through the sword knot and take two or more turns to secure it. Grasp the handle, with the forearm and elbow close to the body. The body is upright and shoulders are square to the front
- b. **"SQUAD - TWO!"**. Draw the sword sharply and bring it to the position of the Recover.
- c. **"SQUAD - THREE!"** (position of the Carry). Force the sword down to the right thigh so that the upper arm is vertical, elbow close to the side, wrist resting on the thigh, blade vertical, edge to the front, hilt resting on the top of the hand, first three fingers gripping the handle, little finger behind to steady it, the pommel pressed against the inside of the thigh.

04108. **Slope Swords.** Raise the forearm until it is horizontal, hand in front of the elbow and lower the sword on to the shoulder as already detailed.

04109. **Sit at Ease** (from the Slope only). Place both hands on the front of the saddle, right over left, without removing the sword from the shoulder.

04110. **Return Swords.** The words of command for each numbered part are as follows:

- a. **“RETURN SWORDS - ONE!”**. As already taught, pass the right arm over the bridle arm.
- b. **“SQUAD - TWO!”**. As already taught, if necessary clearing the hand from the sword knot.
- c. **“SQUAD - THREE!”**. Return the right hand to the side.

04111. **Proving**. With the sword at the Slope a man ordered to Prove will come to the Carry. On the command **“AS YOU WERE!”**, he will Slope swords.

FIGS 76 - 79 - RESERVED.

Chapter 5

STANDARDS, GUIDONS AND COLOURS

SECTION 1 - A SHORT HISTORY OF COLOURS

Origin of Colours

0501. The origin of the custom of carrying Colours goes back to the days of early man, who fixed his family badge to a pole and held it aloft in battle for the dual purpose of indicating his position and acting as a rallying point should the occasion arise. Medieval chivalry followed the same idea when armorial bearings were placed on their banners so that these could be seen well above the melee. When armies were beginning to adopt a system of regimentation at the beginning of the 17th century each company was allotted a Colour, a custom which persisted for about a hundred years.

Standards and Guidons

0502. These have evolved from the banners of the knights of the Middle Ages. The Standard (a square banner) was then carried by a knight; the Guidon (an ensign or standard ending with a tail or point, now swallow tailed) being carried by a banneret. When a banneret was created a knight the point of his Guidon was cut off, thus transforming it into a Standard.

Royal Artillery

0503. The Colours of the Royal Regiment of Artillery are its weapons, which are its guns, and its rockets and missiles (including man-portable weapons) when these are mounted on or in a launcher. When on parade on ceremonial occasions, these weapons are accorded the same compliments as the Standards, Guidons and Colours of the Household Cavalry, Royal Armoured Corps and Infantry. It is impracticable in modern times to consider the weapons of the Royal Artillery as Colours on non-ceremonial occasions but they are always treated with dignity and respect.

0504. The guns became the Colours of the Regiment through the practice in its early history of carrying the equivalent of today's Queen's Colour on the largest piece in an artillery train, which was designated the 'Flag Gun'. The Flag Gun was used until the end of the 18th century and after this period the guns themselves came to be regarded as the Colours of the Artillery.

Infantry

0505. In 1751 infantry regiments were allowed two Colours (King's and Regimental), and this arrangement has continued to the present day. The practice of carrying Colours into action continued until the beginning of 1881 during the first Boer War in South Africa when the custom was discontinued because of the altered form of attack and the increased range of musketry.

0506. Certain regiments have the right to carry three Colours on parade but this right is only exercised by the Royal Highland Fusiliers who carry the Assaye Colour, the original of which was presented by the East India Company to commemorate the brave conduct of the regiment at the Battle of Assaye. Two other regiments also received this honour.

Rifle Regiments

0507. Rifle Regiments, with one exception, do not carry Colours since their original duty was to skirmish ahead of the main body, where speed and concealment were essential to success. The exception is the 2nd King Edward VII's Own Gurkha Rifles (Sirmoor Rifles), who were granted a Truncheon by Queen Victoria for distinguished services at Delhi in 1857. This Truncheon, which is carried on ceremonial parades, represents in all respects a Colour.

Cavalry

0508. In the Cavalry, the counterpart of Rifles are Lancers and Hussars and these gave up their Guidons when made Light Cavalry. However, with the passing of the horse and changing circumstances, there is now no difference in the roles of Heavy or Light Cavalry. Guidons are now carried by Hussar and Lancer regiments, whilst the Household Cavalry, Dragoon Guards and the Royal Tank Regiment carry Standards.

Symbolism

0509. Colours have become the symbol of the spirit of a regiment, for they bear the battle honours and badges granted to the regiment in commemoration of the gallant deeds performed by its members from the time it was raised. This association of Colours with heroic deeds has caused them to be regarded with veneration. The fact that Colours are consecrated before being taken into use, and after service are laid up in sacred or public buildings, helps to maintain the atmosphere of veneration with which they are surrounded.

0510. *Reserved.*

SECTION 2 - INFANTRY COLOURS

Occasions when Carried

0511. Regimental Colours are carried on all ceremonial parades by all regiments who have been granted Colours.

0512. The Queen's Colour is carried only when a guard is mounted over:

- a. A member of the Royal Family.
- b. A governor-general, governor, high commissioner, lieutenant-governor or officer administering the government in his capacity as Her Majesty's representative within the area of his jurisdiction.
- c. A foreign sovereign, the president of a republican state or a member of a reigning foreign Imperial or Royal Family.

0513. The Queen's Colour will not be trooped except in the case of:

- a. A Guard mounted over members of the Royal Family.
- b. A Guard mounted over Her Majesty's chief representative in British Dependent Territories.
- c. A ceremonial parade held in honour of the Sovereign's birthday.
- d. The occasion of Presentation of Colours.

0514. Many examples of the drill for colour parties given in this manual, show the more complicated situations where both Colours are on parade. These are not to be taken as an authority. The only occasions when the Queen's Colour may be carried are shown in the two paragraphs above (see Queen's Regulations 1975 paragraph J8.019 onwards).

Composition of the Colour Party

0515. A Colour Party will be composed as follows:

- a. Each Colour will be carried by a subaltern. The Queen's Colour, when carried, will be on the right and carried by the senior, who will command the Colour Party.
- b. Warrant Officers Class 2 and non commissioned officers not below the rank of colour sergeant have the honourable distinction of escorting the Colours. This escort will consist of three. The senior will be posted between the Colours, the other two covering them two paces in the rear. On occasions when warrant officers and non commissioned officers of these ranks are not available, this honourable distinction may be allowed to non commissioned officers of lower rank and selected privates.

- c. If only one Colour is carried, the two junior escorts will be posted either side of the Colour, the senior covering it two paces in rear.
- d. This Colour Escort should not be confused with an Escort to the Colours which will consist of a formed body of troops (usually a company) under the command of an officer.

Compliments

0516. When Colours are uncased, the Colour Party will not pay compliments except to persons entitled to a salute under Queen's Regulations 1975 paragraph J8.035, in which case the ensigns only pay compliments; other members of the Colour Party do not.

0517. When Colours are cased, colour parties will pay such compliments as would be appropriate if no Colours were present. When uncased, Colours will be saluted by all ranks. On ceremonial parades, spectators will pay compliments to the Colours:

- a. When the Colours are marched on and off parade.
- b. When the Colours pass by at the nearest point.

Position on Parade

0518. The position of the Colour Party when the battalion is in line will be between the two centre companies, the ensigns being in line with the front rank, the two non commissioned officers covering them, in line with the rear rank.

0519. If the line is ordered to retire, the Colour Party will turn about, but will remain steady in its original alignment.

0520. When the battalion marches past by companies, the Colour Party will be in rear of the centre of the second company, with its front rank ten paces in rear of the supernumerary rank.

0521. When the battalion marches past in close column of companies, the Colour Party will be behind the second company as in paragraph 0520. The two non commissioned officers or selected privates will take post by moving up respectively on the right and left of the Colours, the whole being aligned with the supernumerary rank.

0522. When the battalion marches past in column of route or column of threes, the Colour Party will be between Nos. 2 and 3 companies.

0523. *Reserved.*

SECTION 3 - PROCEDURE FOR CASING, UNCASING AND DRESSING THE COLOURS

Casing the Colour

0524. The subaltern officer will hold the Colour in a horizontal position. The drill sergeant, duty warrant officer or drummer will come forward and, holding the top of the Colour pike in his left hand, will take hold of the bottom right-hand corner of the Colour, the officer at the same time grasping the bottom left-hand corner. The edge of the Colour will be placed over the top of the pike with the fringe also hanging over the top as the officer looks at it.

0525. The same procedure will be adopted again with the next furl of the Colour, care being taken to ensure that there are no creases. The same procedure will be adopted once again until the whole of the Colour is neatly rolled along the top of the pike.

0526. The cord with tassels will now be wrapped around the Colour three times by the drill sergeant, duty warrant officer or drummer, the end being grasped by the officer and passed around the pike.

0527. The leather case will now be slipped over the Colour, care being taken to ensure that it is not rucked in any way.

0528. The officer will now raise the Colour to the Order and the drill sergeant, duty warrant officer or drummer will tie the tapes.

Uncasing the Colour

0529. The procedure for uncasing will be carried out in the reverse order to casing.

Dressing the Colour

0530. When the Colour is uncased, the officer will Dress the Colour. This consists of taking the left-hand top corner (the free end) with his left hand and bringing the Colour to the perpendicular position. This will result in the lowest corner falling straight down the pike; the Colour will then be evenly distributed on either side of the pike, and when carried on the shoulder the pike will always be kept covered by the overhang of the Colour. At the changing of arms, care must be taken to ensure that the same overhang is on the left shoulder as on the right.

0531. Should the Colour become disturbed, the officer may use his disengaged hand to get the Colour back to the correct position. This is not a drill movement and should be carried out unobtrusively.

0532. *Reserved.*

SECTION 4 - PROCEDURE FOR MARCHING COLOURS ON AND OFF A CEREMONIAL PARADE

Collection of the Colours

0533. The Colour Escort will be marched to the officers' mess (or the location of the Colours), halted, and bayonets fixed.

Verbal
Orders

0534. The two subalterns carrying the Colours will come out of the officers' mess with the Queen's Colour on the right and as they leave the mess the Escort will present arms. When the subalterns with the Colours have fallen in, the senior ensign will order the Colour Party to Slope Arms.

*Senior Warrant
Officer/NCO:
"Escort Present Arms."
Senior Ensign:
"Colour Party, Slope
Arms."*

0535. He will then march off the Colour Party by the centre. He will move to a position on the flank of the parade ground and await the command to march on. The Colour Party will be stood At Ease and be brought up to the Slope at an appropriate time.

*Senior Ensign:
"Colour Party, By the
Centre Quick March."*

Marching on Parade

0536. When the battalion commander orders the Colours to march on, the Colour Party will move to their positions on the parade by a series of forms or wheels.

*Battalion
Commander:
"March on The
Colours,"*

0537. The battalion commander will order the battalion to Present Arms before the Colour Party steps off, the ensign having acknowledged his order. The band will play 'Point of War' or the Regimental March according to Regimental custom. The battalion will remain at the Present until the Colour Party has taken up its final position.

*Battalion
Commander:
"Battalion Present Arms."
Senior Ensign:
"Colour Party, By the
Centre Quick March
Change direction
right/left,
right/left
form/wheel."*

0538. On arrival at its final position the ensign to the Queen's Colour will, if the battalion is in open order, order the Escort to Open Order and Present Arms. The Colours will

*Senior Ensign:
"Colour Party, Halt. Open
Order march, Present*

remain at the Carry.

0539. The battalion commander will then order the battalion to Slope Arms. The Colour Party will conform with the rest of the battalion's movements with the exception that the Colour Escort will not unfix bayonets nor stand easy even if the battalion does so. If required to change position on parade the Colour Party will move by forming, wheeling or turning to the right or left and marching in file.

Arms."

*Battalion
Commander:
"Battalion
Slope Arms."*

Marching Off Parade

0540. On completion of the parade, the battalion commander will order the Colours to march off. The battalion will always have its bayonets fixed when this is done. The senior ensign will acknowledge with "Sir".

0541. Before the Colour Party has stepped off, the battalion commander will order the battalion to Present Arms. The senior ensign will give the orders shown in the margin.

*Battalion
Commander:
"March off the Colours.
Battalion Present Arms."
Senior Ensign:
"Colour Party, By the
Centre Quick March.
Change direction
right/left
right/left
form/wheel.
Forward by the Centre."*

Return of the Colours

0542. The Colour Party will proceed back to the officers' mess, changing direction by forming to the right or left as required. On arrival at the mess the senior ensign will halt the Colour Party and Present Arms. The officers will carry the Colours into the mess. As soon as they have passed through the doors the escort will Slope, Shoulder Arms, Unfix Bayonets, Slope Arms and be dismissed under the orders of the senior warrant officer/NCO.

*Senior Ensign:
"Colour Party, Halt.
Present Arms."
Senior Warrant
Officer/NCO:
"Escort, Slope
Arms, Shoulder
Arms, Unfix
Bayonets, Slope
Arms.
Dismiss."*

0543. *Reserved.*

SECTION 5 - RULES FOR CARRYING AND LOWERING STANDARDS, GUIDONS AND COLOURS

Colours on Parade

0544. At the Halt, the Colours will never be sloped: they will be held at the Carry or Order depending on whether the troops are at the Slope or the Shoulder but during an inspection, when the men are at the Shoulder, Colours will be at the Carry.

0545. On the march, Colours will always be carried at the Slope, except on the following occasions when they will be at the Carry:

- a. Marching onto and off the parade ground.
- b. On the saluting base.
- c. Marching past.
- d. Advancing in Review Order.
- e. Marching in slow time down the ranks while trooping the Colour.

- f. Marching through cities/towns which have conferred their freedom on the Regiment.

Honours to be Paid

0546. The Colours will be let fly as the caution is given for a Royal or General Salute, and in marching past as laid down in Queen's Regulations 1975 paragraph J8.035. The Colours must be caught immediately after 'Eyes Front' is given.

0547. Standards, Guidons or Colours will be lowered during a Royal Salute.

0548. The Regimental Colour only will be lowered when a General Salute is given to a Field Marshal, Admiral of the Fleet, or Marshal of the Royal Air Force. (See Queen's Regulations 1975 paragraph J8.035.)

0549. *Reserved.*

SECTION 6 - COLOUR DRILL

General

0550. The term 'Colour' in this section also refers to the Standard and the Guidon when on a dismounted parade.

0551. Colour drill will be performed in the same time as rifle drill movements.

The Order

(see Fig 80)

0552. The Colour pike and the Colour will be held with the right hand at that part of the pike where the lowest corner of the Colour reaches. The pike will be perpendicular, the bottom of the pike resting on the ground in line with and against the right toe, the elbow close to the body. The Colour should not be stretched tight down the pike, but allowed to hang naturally.

The Stand at Ease

(see Fig 81)

0553. The movements will be normal, except that the left hand will remain at the side and the Colour will be kept perpendicularly at the right side.

The Carry - from the Order

(see Fig 82)

0554. To Carry from the Order:

- a. Raise the Colour to a perpendicular position in front of the body, guiding the base of the pike into the socket of the Colour belt with the left hand and keeping the right forearm on the pike for control.
- b. Force the left hand smartly to the side and at the same time raise the right forearm to a horizontal position. The right hand will be opposite the centre of the mouth, back of the hand to the front, wrist and forearm horizontal, i.e., at right angles to the pike, which will be held perpendicularly.

The Slope - from the Carry

0555. To Slope from the Carry:

- a. Raise the Colour just clear of the socket of the Colour belt, controlling the base of the pike with the left hand.
- b. Lower the Colour sharply onto the right shoulder, at the same time force the left arm up to assist in controlling the Colour onto the right shoulder.
- c. Once the Colour is on the right shoulder, return the left arm to the left side.

0556. The angle of the Colour at the slope will be 45 degrees, the right elbow close to the side, the right forearm parallel with the ground. The Colour should hang over and cover the right shoulder and arm. The pike should not show between the hand and shoulder, but should be covered by the end of the Colour.

To Change the Colour from the Right to the Left Shoulder

0557. To change the Colour from right to left:

- a. Grasp the Colour and pike with the left hand close above the right.
- b. Carry the Colour across the body and place it on the left shoulder in the same position as detailed in the second motion of the 'Slope' from the 'Carry'.
- c. Force the right hand smartly to the side.

To Change the Colour from the Left to the Right Shoulder

0558. The converse of paragraph 0557 above.

Carry - from the Slope

0559. To Carry from the Slope:

- a. Raise the Colour off the right shoulder with the right hand to the position of the 'Carry', guiding the base of the pike into the socket of the Colour belt with the left hand keeping the right forearm running along the pike for control.
- b. Force the left hand smartly to the side and at the same time raise the right forearm to a horizontal position.

Order - from the Carry

0560. To Order from the Carry:

- a. Raise the Colour and pike just clear of the socket of the Colour belt, controlling the base of the pike with the left hand and dropping the right forearm onto the pike.
- b. Lower the Colour to the position of the 'Order', catching the pike with the left hand, the forearm to be parallel to the ground.
- c. Force the left hand to the side.

To Let the Colour Fly - from the Carry

0561. Release the Colour with the right hand and seize the pike again immediately.

To Catch the Colour

0562. Grasp the Colour with the right hand and resume the position of the 'Carry'.

Note: The left hand may be used to assist in catching the Colour in a high wind.

To Lower the Colour at the Halt

(see Fig 83)

0563. On the caution 'Royal' or 'General Salute' for a Regimental Colour, the Colour will be let fly. On 'Arms' the ensign will:

- a. Raise the Colour pike just clear of the socket of the belt.
- b. Lower the Colour.

Carry the Colour well to the right and lower it with a sweeping motion to a position in front of and in line with the right toe, the head of the pike just clear of the ground, the Colour being spread on the ground and to the right of the pike. If a strong wind is blowing from the right, carry the Colour well to

the left and lower it with a sweeping motion to a position in front of and in line with the right toe, the Colour being spread to the left of the pike. The pike should be held under the right armpit, the back of the hand towards the ground, and the right elbow close to the body.

Note: a. Care must be taken to look straight to the front when lowering the Colour and not to follow it with the eyes.

b. When the Colour is lowered in wet weather or on muddy ground the pike will be held as in paragraph 0564 below.

To Lower the Colour when Marching Past in Slow Time

(see Fig 84)

0564. To lower the Colour when marching in Slow Time:

a. On the caution 'Eyes', the Colour will be let fly.

b. On the command 'Right', the motions will be performed as laid down in paragraph 0563 above, except that the Colour pike will be held horizontally in front of the body and resting underneath the forearm, the Colour hanging straight down. The timing of this drill is equivalent to four paces, i.e., as for the salute with the sword.

Carry - from Lowering the Colour

0565. To Carry from Lowering:

a. Raise the Colour to the position of the 'Carry'.

b. Catch the Colour.

Note: The Colour should be raised with the right hand and pressure of the pike under the armpit. The left hand may be used to guide the pike into the socket Care must be taken that the body is not moved to assist the raising of the Colour.

0566. *Reserved.*

FIG 80 - THE ORDER

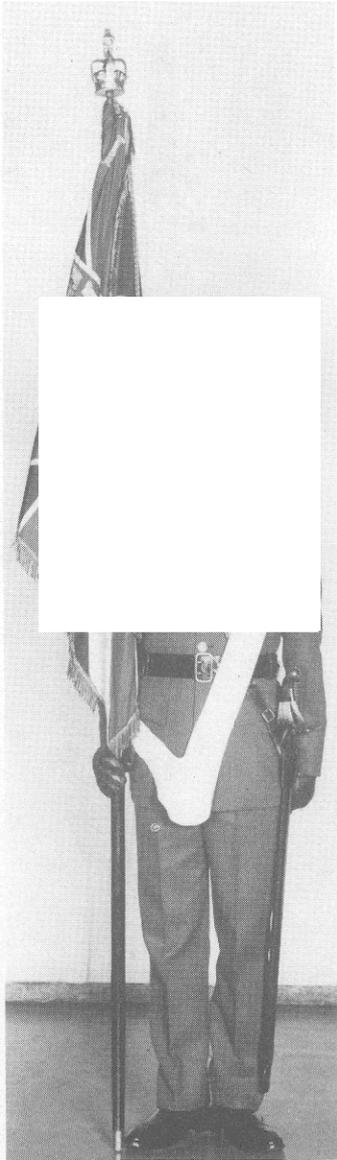
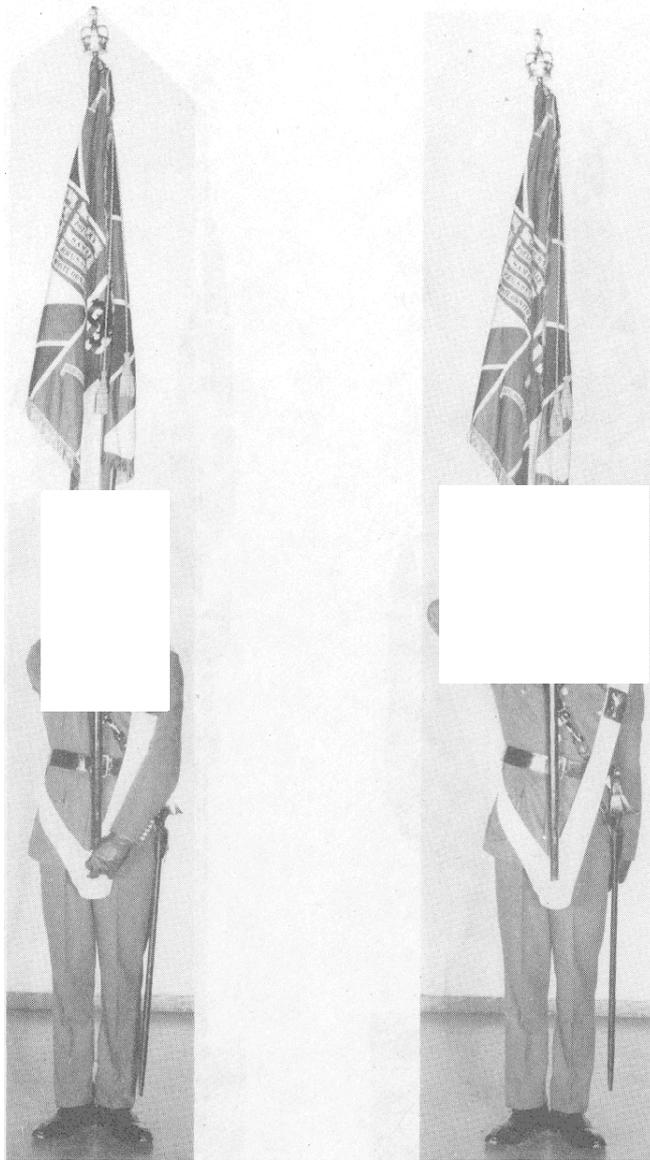


FIG 81 - STAND AT EASE



FIG 82 - THE CARRY FROM THE ORDER



First Position

Second Position

FIG 83 - THE COLOUR LOWERED

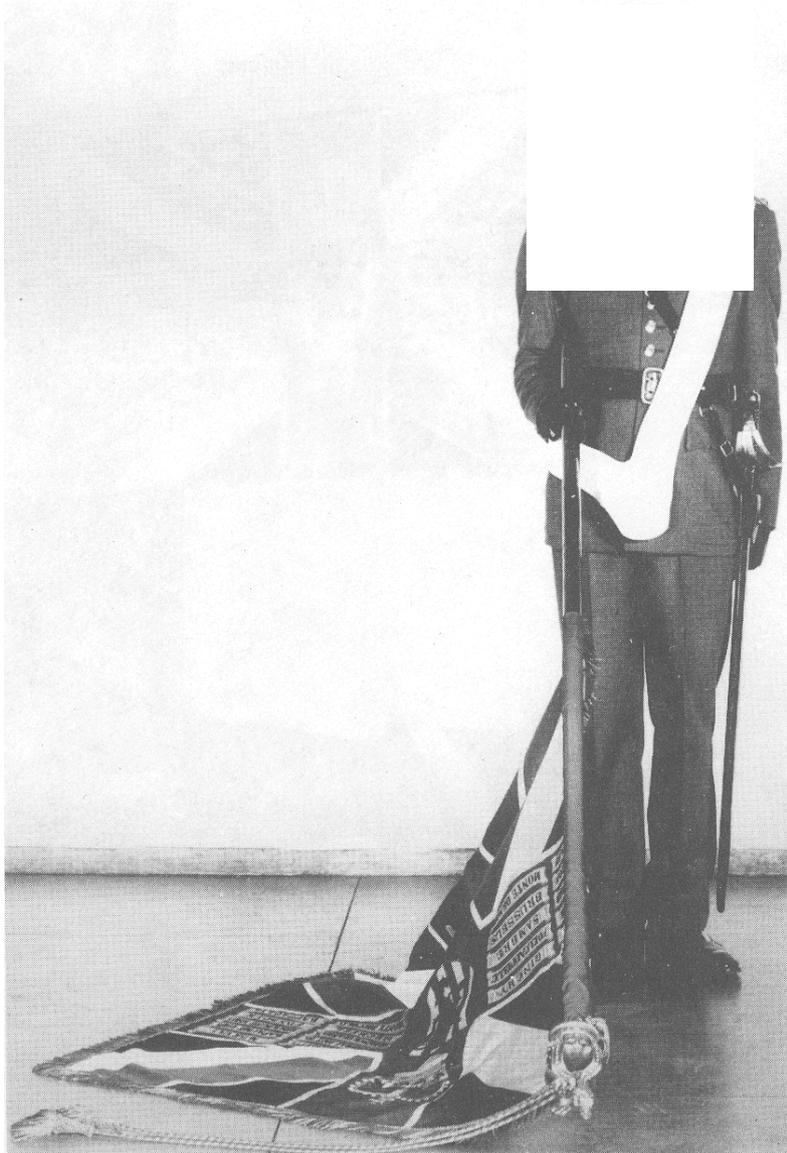
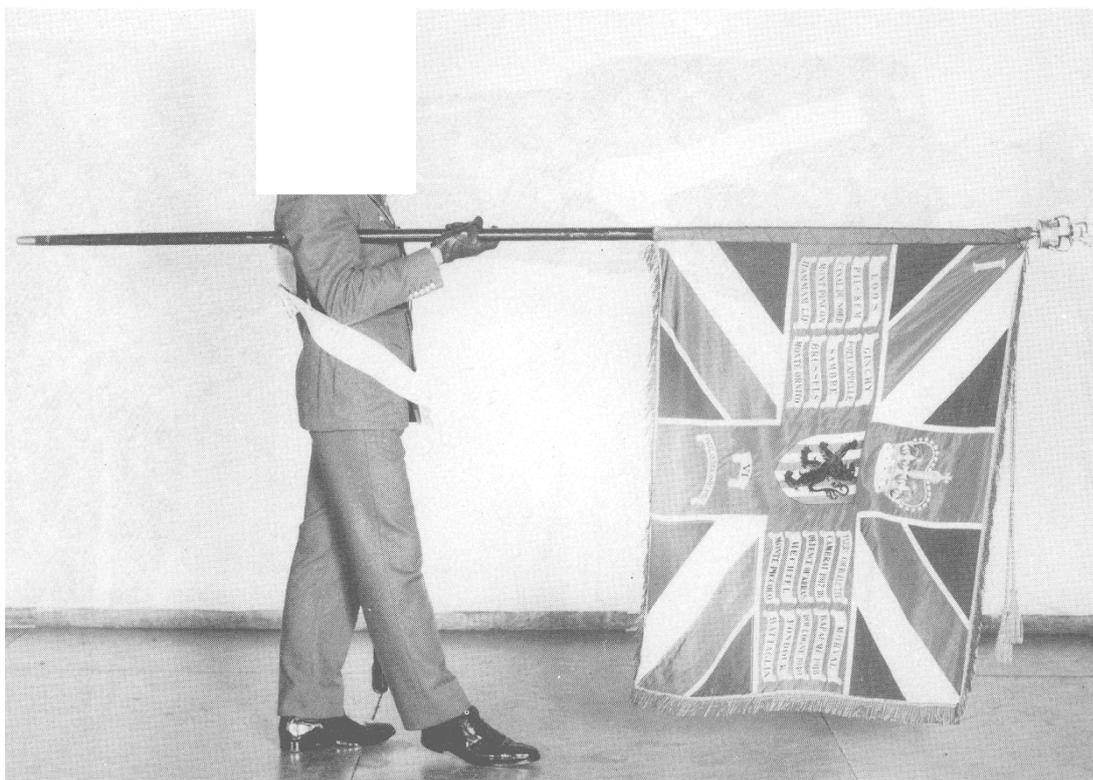


FIG 84 - THE COLOUR LOWERED WHEN MARCHING IN SLOW TIME



SECTION 7 - COLOURS IN MESSES AND AT DIVINE SERVICE

Officers' Messes

0567. When not on parade, Colours are normally kept in a Colour stand in the officers' mess. The customary method of placing the Colours in the stand is as follows:

- a. Having marched off parade (see paragraph 0542) the ensign will proceed to the Colour stand and halt in front of it, the Queen's Colour on the right.
- b. The drill sergeant, duty warrant officer or drummer will take the Queen's Colour and, having placed the base of the pike in the socket of the stand directly opposite to it, will tilt the pike to the left until it rests against the central support of the stand.
- c. He will then take the Regimental Colour and, having placed the base of its pike in the socket opposite to it, will tilt the pike to the right so that it rests against the central support.

0568. When facing outwards, the Queen's Colour is now on the right and the Regimental Colour on the left, with its pike in front of that of the Queen's Colour. The Regimental Colour is then readily accessible when it alone is required on parade.

0569. The Colours may be cased before being returned to the stand, and may be hung cased or uncased.

0570. When the Colours are to be taken on parade the reverse procedure of that given above is followed.

Colours in Church

0571. During a church parade or other appropriate service the Colours may be deposited in church. This is not to be confused with the Laying Up of Colours.

0572. The procedure is as follows:

Verbal
Orders

- a. After the choir and clergy have processed,

Senior Ensign:

the band will strike up the regimental slow march and Colour Party will Slow March up the aisle to the chancel where they will halt before the altar rails. Arms will be carried, with bayonets fixed, and head-dress will be worn.

*“Colour Party,
Attention.
Slope Arms.
By the Centre
Slow March.
Mark Time. Halt.”*

b. The senior ensign will then bring the Colour Party to the Present, following which both ensigns will kneel.

*Senior Ensign:
“Present Arms.”*

c. The chaplain will first take the Queen’s Colour and lay it on the altar with the pike to his right and the Colour draped over the front of the altar. He will then take the Regimental Colour and drape it with its pike to his left.

d. The ensigns will stand and the senior will bring the Colour Party to the Slope, left/right turn and march off to their seats, where they will unfix bayonets, remove head-dress and take their places.

*Senior Ensign:
“Slope Arms.
Left/right Turn.
Quick March.”*

0573. After the closing hymn, the reverse procedure will be followed.

0574. All drill movements will be carried out in church with dignity and reverence, with the minimum of noise. Honours will not be paid with Colours in church.

Drumhead Services

(see Figs 85, 86 and 87)

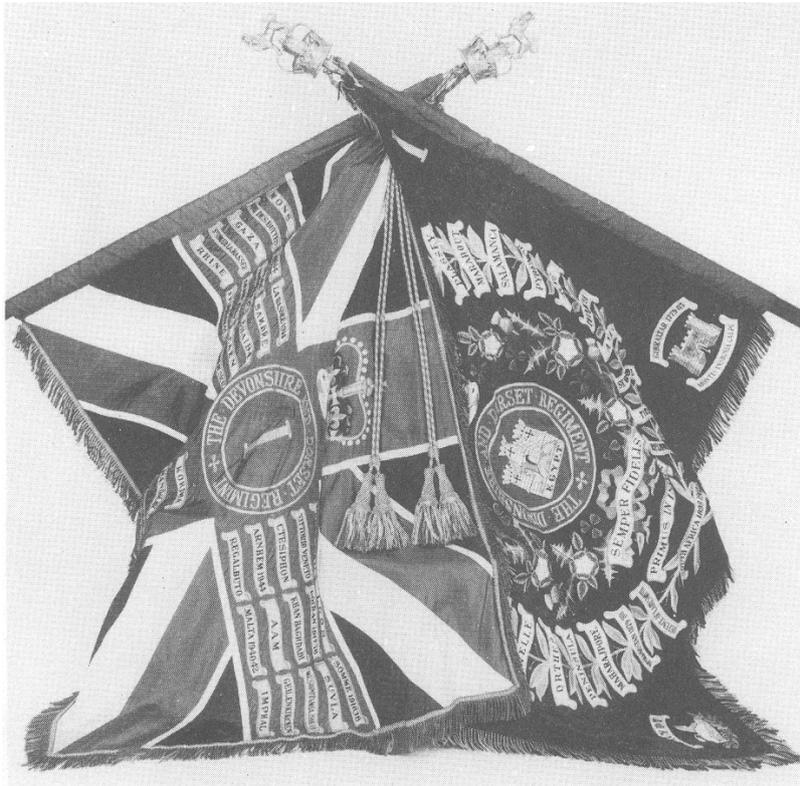
0575. Colours may similarly be laid on piled drums (see Fig 85) at a Drumhead Service. They will be received on parade in the normal manner as laid down in Section 4, and the Colour Party will take up its normal position. After the chaplain has moved forward to the rear of the piled drums, the procedure given in paragraph 0572 will be followed. The Colours will be laid on the drums as illustrated in Figs 86 and 87 for Guards and Line Battalions respectively.

0576. The Colours are collected by the Colour Party after the closing hymn as in paragraph 0573, after which normal parade procedure will apply.

0577. *Reserved.*

FIG 85 - DRUMS ARRANGEMENT

FIG 87 - COLOURS LAID ON DRUMS - LINE BATTALION



SECTION 8 - STANDARDS AND GUIDONS

Standard/Guidon Party

0578. The instructions and procedures contained in Sections 4 and 5, in regard to Infantry Colours, apply to Standards and Guidons when dismounted. There are, however, the following differences in composition of the Standard/Guidon Party and procedures particular to regiments mounted in AR/s.

0579. The Standard/Guidon Party when dismounted will consist of three warrant officers/non commissioned officers of which the bearer will be a warrant officer! SQMS. The escort for the Standard/Guidon will be armed. The Standard/Guidon bearer will not carry a personal weapon.

0580. The Standard/Guidon will be handed over to the escort party by the regimental orderly officer and marched to a suitable place adjacent to the parade. There is no procedure for casing, uncasing and dressing Standards/Guidons.

0581. On a mounted parade, after having been handed over to the escort party, the Standard/Guidon will be transferred to its carrier on the vehicle out of sight of spectators, as it is not possible to devise a safe and smart drill for these movements.

Carrier and Escort

0582. The Standard or Guidon may be carried in an AFV. However, a light wheeled vehicle is more suitable than a heavy tracked one owing to its greater manoeuvrability and particularly if the ground is dry and dusty.

0583. It will normally be escorted by two other AFVs. The Reconnaissance Troop is most suitable for these duties and use of it avoids breaking up the normal formation of a squadron. If the carrier is a tank, no close escort will be required; on most parade grounds, lack of space prohibits it.

0584. The position of the Standard/Guidon is directly behind the commanding officer whether the parade is dismounted or mounted. When mounted, the Standard/Guidon Party will come on parade at a suitable speed.

0585. When the Standard/Guidon is trooped, only the AFV/AFV5, comprising the Standard/Guidon Party, take part in this ceremony. The right-hand squadron does not act as escort as in the case of No. 1 Guard for Infantry Colours.

FIGS 88 - 89 - RESERVED.

Chapter 6 CANE AND WHIP DRILL

CANE AND WHIP DRILL LESSON 1 - POSITION OF ATTENTION AND STAND AT EASE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0601. **Aim.** To teach the position of Attention and Stand at Ease when carrying a cane or whip.
0602. **Timings.** One 10 minute period.
0603. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.
0604. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with cane or whip.
0605. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any other suitable area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0606. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.
0607. **Revision.** Nil.

Introduction

0608. **Explain:** All the movements taught are for use with either the cane or the whip (see Fig 90). The first lesson in cane drill is to learn the positions of Attention and the Stand at Ease so that when using the cane it can be carried in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

The Positions of Attention and Stand at Ease

0609. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movements, giving the correct words of command. Explain:* The position of Attention will be taught first.

The Position of Attention

(see Fig 91)

0610. *The instructor is to adopt the position of Attention.*
0611. **Points to Note.** These are:
- a. The cane is held vertically in the right hand close to the body.
 - b. The joint of the first forefinger of the right hand is positioned under the knob of the cane and pointing towards the thigh. The thumb is down and to the front - the remaining three fingers grasping the cane.
 - c. The ferrule of the cane is in front of the right shoulder.
 - d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
 - e. Do not call out the time.
0612. *Order the squad into the position of Attention and confirm by practice.*

The Stand at Ease

(see Fig 92)

0613. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "STAND AT - EASE!". Turn about to explain the position of the cane in this position. Explain: On the command, stand at ease as already taught and freeze in this position.*

0614. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The back of the right hand is in the palm of the left hand.
- b. The cane is held in the right hand as for the position of Attention, the cane itself being between the crook of the right arm and the body.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.

0615. *Order the squad into the position of Attention and confirm by practice.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movements

0616. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of both movements then practise the squad, who do not call out the timing.*

Conclusion

0617. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include a look forward to Marching, to be taught in the next lesson.*

0618. *Reserved.*

FIG 90 - THE CANE AND WHIP

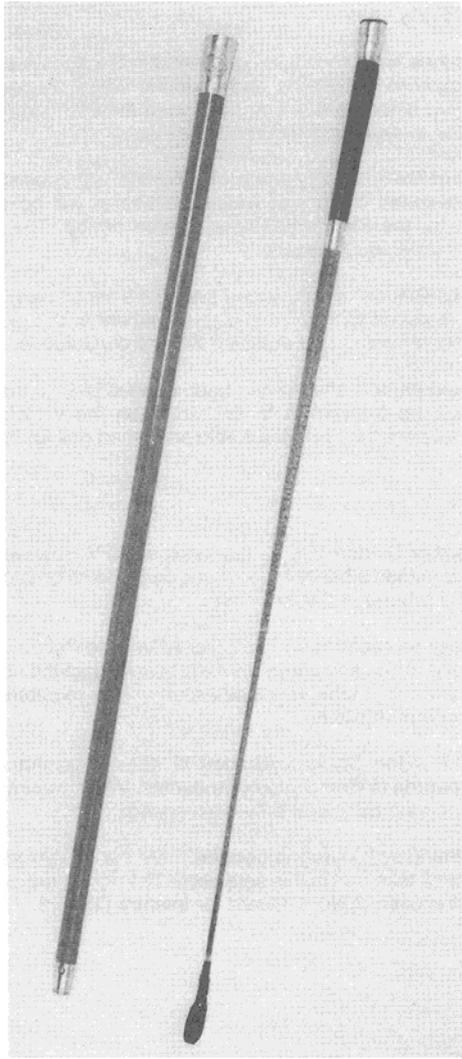
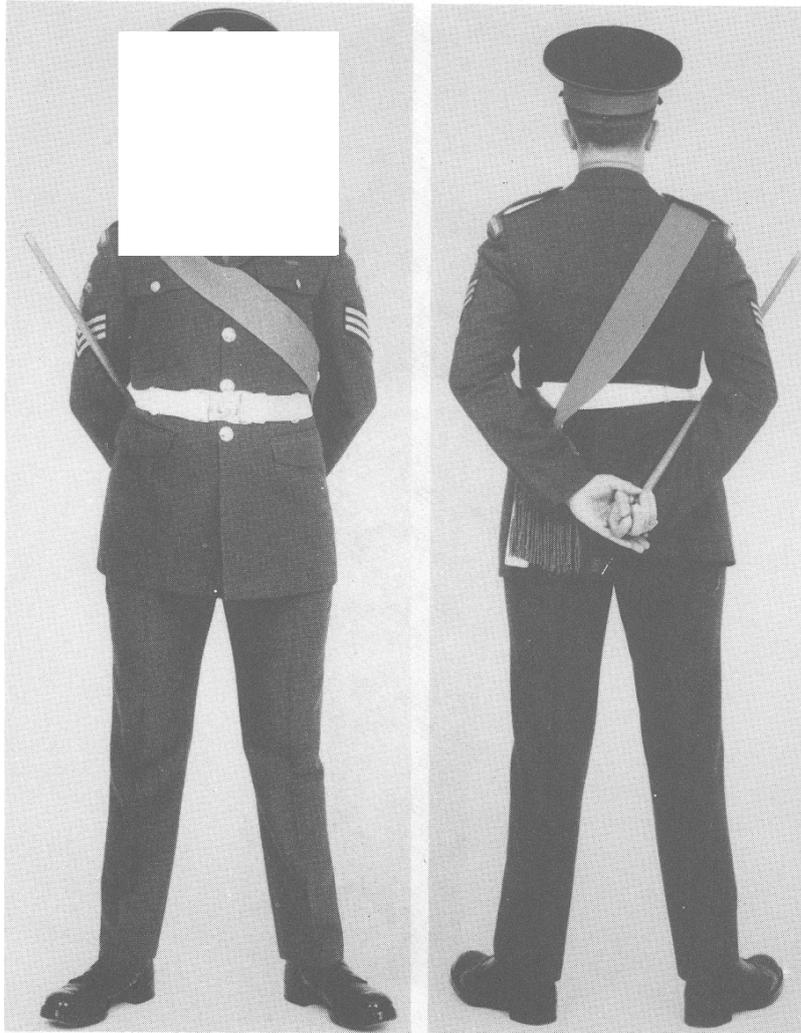


FIG 91 - POSITION OF ATTENTION



FIG 92 - STAND AT EASE



Front View

Rear View

CANE AND WHIP DRILL LESSON 2 - MARCHING AND DISMISSING

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0619. **Aim.** To teach Marching and Dismissing when carrying a cane or whip.
0620. **Timings.** One 20 minute period.
0621. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.
0622. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with cane or whip.
0623. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any other suitable area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0624. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.
0625. **Revision.** Revise the Attention and Stand at Ease positions.

Introduction

0626. *Explain:* The next stage in cane and whip drill is to learn to March with the Cane and Dismiss so that an individual or body of men can march and dismiss together correctly in a smart, uniform manner. Marching will be taught first. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Marching with the Cane

0627. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement calling out the time for the first six paces. Explain:* For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Quick March - One

0628. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "MARCHING, BY NUMBERS, QUICK MARCH - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, take a full marching pace of 750 mm (30 inches) with the left foot. At the same time, grasp the middle of the cane with the left and right hands respectively and freeze in this position (see Fig 93).

0629. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The cane remains vertical in the right side of the body, the right hand above and touching the left hand.
- b. Fingers are closed and both hands form a fist.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

0630. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Attention and practise.*

Quick March - Two

0631. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain:* On the command, take a further full pace with the right foot, and then one with the left. As the heel of the left foot strikes the ground, straighten the right arm so that the cane becomes horizontal on the right side of the body. At the same time, return the left arm to the left side of the body and freeze in this position (see Fig 93).

0632. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The cane is now in the position of the 'Trail' held horizontal and close to the right side of the body.
- b. The left arm resumes the correct position of Attention.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "TWO".

0633. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Quick March - Three

0634. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "SWING". Explain:* On the command, take further full paces with the right and left feet. As the heel of the left foot strikes the ground, the left arm is swung fully to the rear and the right arm forward, then freeze in this position (see Fig 94).

0635. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The cane remains horizontal and is held between the thumb and the first two fingers of the right hand.

- b. The cane must remain straight and horizontal when swinging the arm front to rear and continuing to march at the regulation pace of 116 paces to the minute.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "SWING".

0636. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

0637. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement then practise the squad, who do not now call out the timing. Explain:* Should the squad be dressed at less than an arm's interval and moved to a flank, the cane will be kept at the position of Attention and both arms will be swung. *Practise the squad.*

The Dismiss

0638. *The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the complete movement giving the order "DISMISS!". Explain:*

- a. When an officer is present, the squad will carry out the following movements judging the pause between them: Turn to the right, place the cane under the arm, hand away, salute, hand away and march off bringing the cane to the Trail working from the first left foot.
- b. When no officer is present, the squad will turn to the right, judge the pause and march off, bringing the cane to the Trail.

0639. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Attention and practise.*

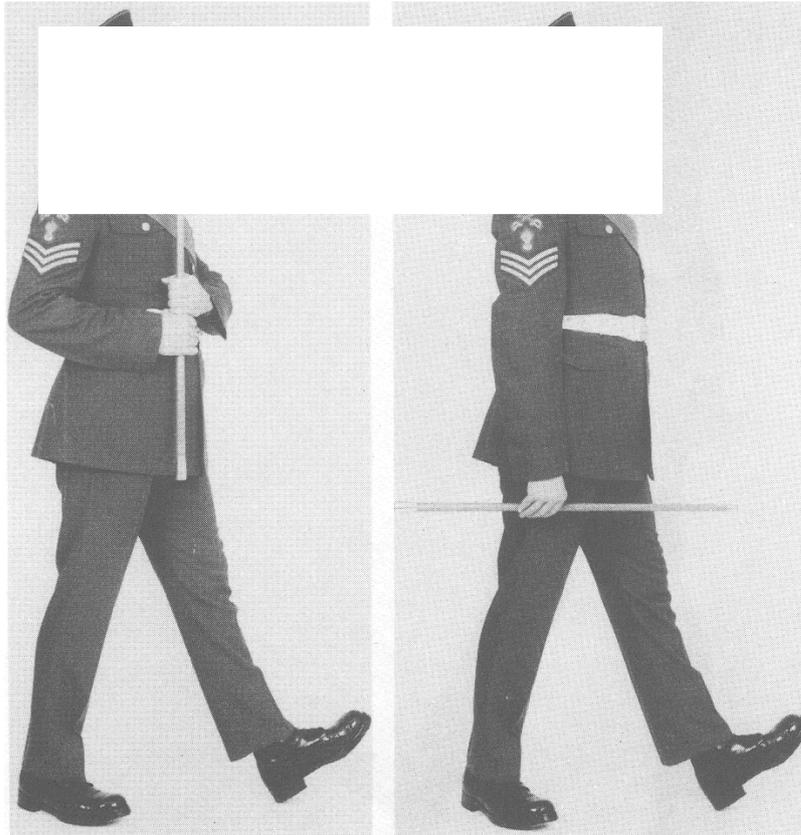
Conclusion

0640. ***End of Lesson Drill***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of good arm swinging.
 - (2) A look forward to Halting, to be taught in the next lesson.

0641. *Reserved.*

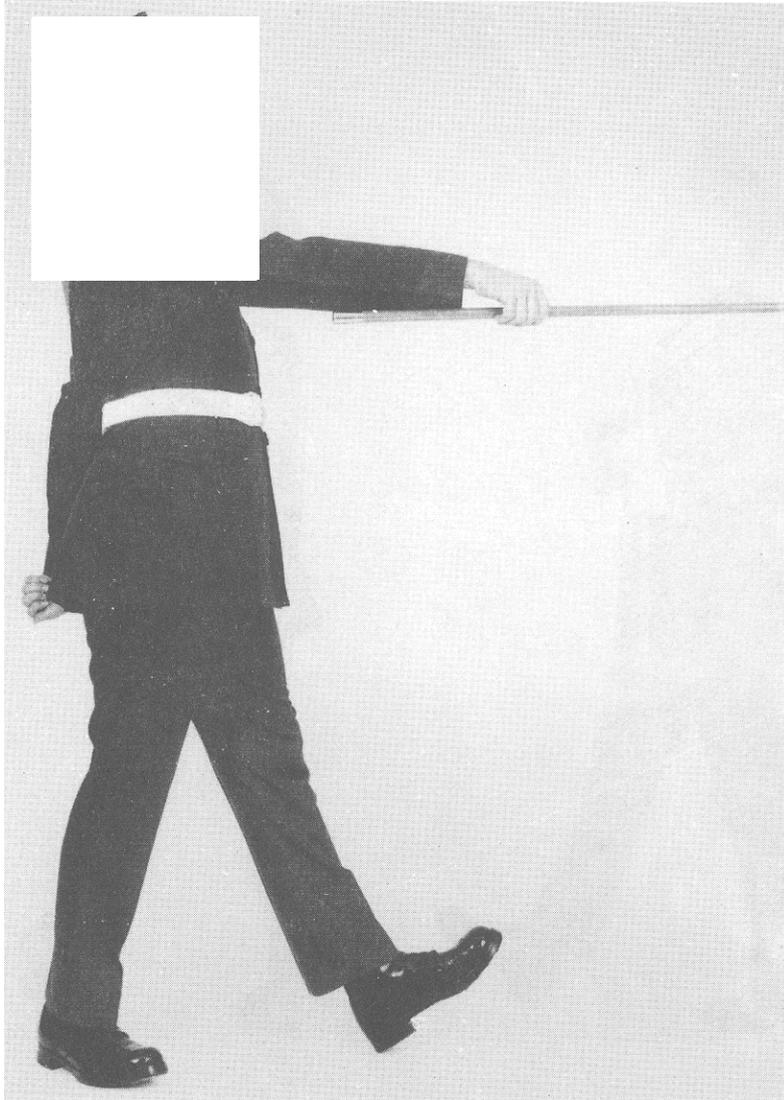
FIG 93 - QUICK MARCH



First Position

Second Position

FIG 94 - QUICK MARCH THIRD POSITION



CANE AND WHIP DRILL LESSON 3 - HALTING

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0642. **Aim.** To teach Halting when carrying a cane or whip.
0643. **Timings.** One 20 minute period.
0644. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.
0645. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with cane or whip.
0646. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any other suitable area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0647. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.
0648. **Revision.** Revise Marching with the Cane.

Introduction

0649. *Explain:* The next stage in cane drill is to learn how to Halt with the cane so that an individual or body of men can halt correctly when carrying the cane, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Halting with the Cane

0650. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - HALT!". Explain:* For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Squad Halt - One

0651. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "HALTING, BY NUMBERS, SQUAD HALT - ONE!". Explain:* On the command, as the left heel strikes the ground, halt as previously taught, the cane being kept at the position of the Trail. Then bend the right arm, keeping the elbow to the side, so that the cane is vertical in front of the right shoulder. At the same time, the left hand is brought across the centre of the body by the shortest route to strike and grasp the cane and the right hand is forced down to grasp the cane as for the position of Attention. Then freeze in this position (see Fig 95).

0652. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left forearm is horizontal, the left hand having a full grip of the centre of the cane, the back of the hand to the front.
- b. The cane is forced back into the right shoulder by the left hand.
- c. The right hand grasps the cane as for the position of Attention.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out the timing - "ONE TWO - TWO THREE - ONE - TWO THREE - ONE".

0653. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Attention, quick march and practise the squad.*

Squad Halt - Two

0654. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain:* On the command, return the left arm to the side of the body by the shortest possible route and pull the cane back with the right hand to resume the correct position of Attention, then freeze in this position (see Fig 95).

0655. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The joint on the first finger of the right hand is underneath the knob of the cane and pointing towards the thigh.
- b. The thumb is down and to the front, the remaining three fingers grasping the cane.
- c. The ferrule of the cane is in front of the right shoulder.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out the time - "TWO".

0656. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

0657. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement then practise the squad, who should continue to call out the timing "ONE TWO - TWO THREE - ONE - TWO THREE - ONE".*

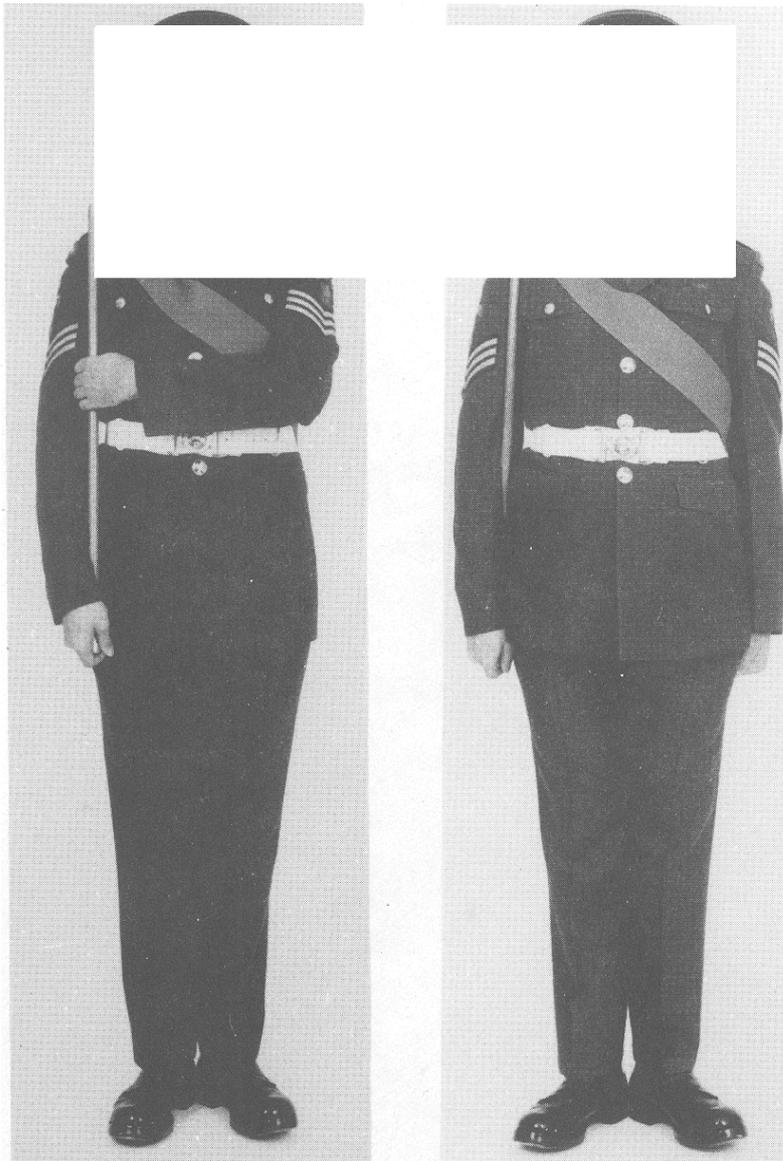
Conclusion

0658. *End of Lesson Drill.*

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of timing.
 - (2) A look forward to Saluting, to be taught in the next lesson.

0659. *Reserved.*

FIG 95 - THE HALT



First Position

Final Position

CANE AND WHIP DRILL LESSON 4 - SALUTING AT THE HALT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0660. **Aim.** To teach Saluting at the Halt when carrying a cane or whip.
0661. **Timings.** One 20 minute period.
0662. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.
0663. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with cane or whip.
0664. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any other suitable area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0665. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.
0666. **Revision.** Revise Halting with the Cane.

Introduction

0667. **Explain:** The next stage in cane drill is to learn Saluting at the Halt, so that an individual or body of men can pay the correct compliment at the halt with the cane to a commissioned officer or uncased Colours in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Salute to the Front

0668. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, SALUTE TO THE FRONT - SALUTE!", observing the regulation pause between movements. Explain:* For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Salute to the Front - One

0669. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SALUTING, BY NUMBERS, SALUTE TO THE FRONT - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, the right hand forces the cane under the left armpit, the ferrule to the rear, then freeze in this position.

0670. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The cane is horizontal and held in position, by forcing the left arm into the side whilst maintaining a grip with the armpit.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out the time - "ONE".

0671. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Attention and practise.*

Salute to the Front - Two

0672. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain:* On the command, return the right hand to the side of the body, and freeze in this position.

0673. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The cane remains horizontal under the left armpit, the ferrule to the rear.

- b. The right arm is in the correct position of Attention.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out the time - "TWO".

0674. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Salute to the Front - Three

0675. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE". Explain: On the command, bring the right hand by the shortest route to assume the position of the Salute, then freeze in this position (see Fig 96).*

0676. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The hand and wrist are straight, the forefinger is 25 mm (one inch) above the right eye and the palm facing the front.
- b. The cane remains horizontal and the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out the time - "THREE".

0677. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Salute to the Front - Four

0678. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - FOUR!", at the same time calling out "FOUR". Explain: On the command, the right hand returns to the side, then freeze in this position.*

0679. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The cane remains horizontal under the left armpit.
- b. The right arm assumes the correct position of Attention.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out the time - "FOUR".

0680. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Salute to the Front - Five

0681. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - FIVE!", at the same time calling out "FIVE". Explain: On the command, seize the cane with the right hand close to the left arm with the back of the hand uppermost, then freeze in this position.*

0682. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right hand is brought across the body by the shortest route to seize the cane as close to the left arm as possible.
- b. The cane remains in the horizontal position.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out the time - "FIVE".

0683. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Salute to the Front - Six

0684. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - SIX!", at the same time calling out "SIX". Explain: On the command, the cane is brought to a vertical position in front of the right shoulder, the right elbow close to the body. At*

the same time, the left hand is brought across the body to seize the cane in the centre. The right hand is then moved to the knob of the cane as for the position of Attention. The body is then frozen in this position.

0685. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The cane remains vertical on the right side of the body, the right elbow close to it
- b. The left forearm is horizontal as it moves across the body, the back of the hand to the front.
- c. The cane is vertical and forced back to the shoulder by the left hand.
- d. Call out the time - "SIX".

0686. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Salute to the Front - Seven

0687. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - SEVEN!", at the same time calling out "SEVEN". Explain: On the command, the left arm is returned to the side and the right arm is pulled to the rear to the correct position of Attention, then freeze in this position.*

0688. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left arm is returned by the shortest route across the body.
- b. The right hand resumes its grip on the cane and the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out the time - "SEVEN".

0689. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

0690. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement giving the timing, and then practise the squad with them calling out the timing, and when proficient working silently.*

Conclusion

0691. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The necessity for smart movement and timing.
 - (2) Explain that this is the last formal lesson in cane and whip drill and that Saluting to a Flank and to the Front will be practised separately, the fundamentals having already been taught

0692. *Reserved.*

FIG 96 - SALUTE AT THE HALT



FIGS 97 - 99 - RESERVED.

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES - SALUTING

General

0693. The following movements with the cane or whip should be practised for saluting to the right or left flank on the march and to the front

Saluting to a flank - Right or Left - On the March

0694. The following are the detailed actions for these movements:

- a. **"SALUTING, BY NUMBERS, SALUTE TO THE RIGHT - ONE!"**. This order is given as the left heel strikes the ground. On the next left foot place the cane under the left arm and freeze.
- b. **"SQUAD - TWO!"**. On this order, take a further pace with the right foot and on the next left foot return the right hand to the side and freeze.

- c. **“SQUAD - THREE!”**. On this order, take a further pace with the right foot and on the next left foot salute to the right and freeze.
- d. **“SQUAD - FOUR, FIVE, SIX, SEVEN!”**. On this order, take a further pace on each word of command, remaining at the salute.
- e. **“SQUAD - EIGHT!”**. On this order, return the right arm to the side and the head to the front as the right heel strikes the ground and freeze.
- t. **“SQUAD - NINE!”**. On this order given as the left heel strikes the ground, with the right hand seize the cane close to the left arm and freeze.
- g. **“SQUAD - TEN!”**. On this order, take a further pace with the right foot and on the next left foot, bring the cane to the Trail, adjusting the hand to the point of balance and freeze.
- h. **“SQUAD - ELEVEN!”**. On the order, take a further pace with the right foot and on the next left foot swing both arms and continue marching.

Saluting to the Front

0695. For this movement, the order **“SALUTE TO THE FRONT - SALUTE!”** is given as for the **“HALT!”**. The squad should halt, with the cane at the Trail, place the cane under the left arm; return the right arm to the side; salute, salute again; turn about and step off, bringing the cane to the Trail - working from the first left foot

Chapter 7 PISTOL DRILL

GENERAL

0701. These drills are only suitable for the 9 mm automatic pistol and for the .38 inch revolver.

FOR INSPECTION - DRAW PISTOLS

0702. The orders and movements below are to be followed:

a. *The 9 mm Automatic Pistol*

- (1) **"FOR INSPECTION, DRAW PISTOLS - ONE!"**. Using both hands, unfasten the case in the most convenient way; raise the flap, keeping it open and held between the right wrist and the body and keep both hands on the pouch.
- (2) **"SQUAD - TWO!"**. Seize the grip with the right hand, with the fingers and thumb round it, forefinger outside the trigger guard and the back of the hand to the front. Draw the pistol and hold it so that it is about 300 mm (12 inches) in front of the centre of the body, muzzle pointing to the ground, magazine to the right; right hand in line with the waist belt. At the same time, seize the sliding portion with the left hand, thumb straight, nearest to the body and pointing upwards with its ball on the grooves; both elbows against the body.
- (3) **"SQUAD - THREE!"**. With the left hand, force the sliding portion up until it is locked in the rear position.
- (4) **"SQUAD - FOUR!"**. Return the left hand to the side.

b. *The .38 Inch Revolver.*

- (1) **"FOR INSPECTION, DRAW PISTOLS - ONE!"**. Bring both hands to the case and unbutton it as detailed above.
- (2) **"SQUAD - TWO!"**. Draw the pistol with the right hand, forefinger outside the trigger guard, and bring the pistol to a vertical position about 300 mm (12 inches) from the front of the centre of the body at breast pocket level with the muzzle downwards. At the same time, grasp the barrel with the left hand, thumb pressing against the comb and cylinder fluting.
- (3) **"SQUAD - THREE!"**. Open the pistol, keeping the left hand and barrel still.
- (4) **"SQUAD - FOUR!"**. Return the right hand to the side.

EXAMINE PISTOLS

0703. The order **"FOR INSPECTION, DRAW - PISTOLS!"** must be given first followed by the orders and movements below:

a. *The 9 mm Automatic Pistol*

- (1) **"EXAMINE PISTOLS - ONE!"**. Seize the pistol with the left hand round the barrel so that the back of the hand is to the left, and the trigger guard is resting on the thumb and forefinger.
- (2) **"SQUAD - TWO!"**. Return the right arm to the side and at the same time with the left hand force the pistol just above the left shoulder, bottom of the butt resting on the shoulder, trigger guard to the right, ejector opening uppermost, barrel horizontal, muzzle to the front, back of the hand to the left, elbow against the body.
- (3) After the barrel has been inspected and the inspecting officer has passed the next file the final position of the 'Draw' will be resumed as follows:

- (a) **“FOR INSPECTION, DRAW PISTOLS - ONE!”**. Bring the pistol down in front of the body and seize the butt with the right hand, forefinger outside the trigger guard, as in the second position of the ‘For Inspection, Draw Pistols!’.
 - (b) **“SQUAD - TWO!”**. Return the left hand to the side.
- b. *.38 Revolver.*
 - (1) **“EXAMINE PISTOLS - ONE!”**. Seize the butt of the pistol with the right hand.
 - (2) **“SQUAD - TWO!”**. With the right hand, force the pistol to the right side and in line with the shoulder, barrel pointing to the front ready for inspection, the left hand grasping the top of the barrel, left elbow in line with the shoulder, right elbow close to the side.
 - (3) **“SQUAD - THREE!”**. Return the left hand to the side.
 - (4) After the barrel has been inspected and the inspecting officer has passed the next file, the final position of the ‘Draw’ will be resumed as follows:
 - (a) **“FOR INSPECTION, DRAW PISTOLS - ONE!”**. Bring the pistol to the correct position with the right hand, grasping it with the left hand.
 - (b) **“SQUAD - TWO!”**. Return the right hand to the side.

RETURN PISTOLS AFTER INSPECTION

0704. The orders for returning pistols after inspection are as follows:

- a. *The 9 mm Automatic Pistol.*
 - (1) **“RETURN PISTOLS - ONE!”**. Depress the long catch to the right with the right thumb.
 - (2) **“SQUAD - TWO!”**. Operate the trigger with the right forefinger.
 - (3) **“SQUAD - THREE!”**. Return the pistol to the case. Fasten the case using both hands.
 - (4) **“SQUAD - FOUR!”**. Return both hands to the side to assume the position of Attention.
- b. *.38 Revolver.*
 - (1) **“RETURN PISTOLS - ONE!”**. Close the pistol by raising the butt to the barrel with the right hand. Keep the left hand still.
 - (2) **“SQUAD - TWO!”**. Return the pistol to the case, using both hands, and fasten the case.
 - (3) **“SQUAD - THREE!”**. Return both hands to the side to the position of Attention.

PROVE PISTOLS

0705. The order to Prove Pistols is as follows:

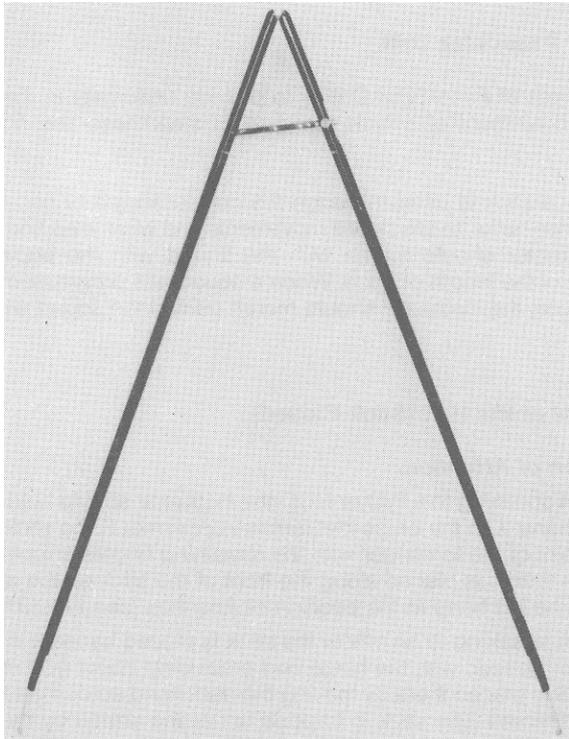
- a. **“PROVE PISTOLS - ONE!”**, **“TWO!”**, **“THREE!”**. Draw the pistol as detailed above.
- b. **“SQUAD - FOUR!”**. Turn the breech of the pistol towards the front keeping the elbows still.

Chapter 8 THE PACE-STICK

INTRODUCTION

0801. This chapter has been arranged primarily for the use of WO and NCO instructors of all Arms and deals with all drill movements with the pace-stick. Where Drill varies in different Arms, the detail of march discipline, carriage of the body and length of pace is applicable to all. As the WOs and NCOs who read this are proficient in all aspects of Drill, this Chapter is merely a guide to assist instructors in the use of the pace-stick.

FIG 100 - THE PACE-STICK



HISTORY

0802. The Royal Regiment of Artillery claims to being the originator of the pace-stick. It was used by its Field Gun teams to ensure correct distances between the guns. This pace-stick was more like a walking stick, with a silver or ivory knob. It could not be manipulated in the way laid down in this chapter, as it opened like a pair of calipers. From this beginning the Infantry developed the pace-stick as an aid to Drill. In 1928, the late Arthur Brand MVO MBE developed a drill for pace-sticks. The stick he used is still carried by the Academy Sergeant Major at the Royal Military Academy Sandhurst (RMAS).

0803. In 1952, the Academy Sergeant Major (the late John Lord MVO MBE) started a 'Pace-Stick Competition'. This competition is held annually between the RMAS and the Guards Depot Teams of four sergeants, with a WO team captain, carry out the pace-stick drill over a set course in Slow and Quick Time. The suggested test in the use of the pace-stick is based on the Pace-Stick Competition (see Annex D).

THE OBJECT OF PACE-STICK DRILL

0804. The object of Pace-Stick Drill is to provide uniformity in the use of the stick and by it, the attainment of a high standard of steadiness and cohesion amongst instructors.

0805. The pace-stick is used to gauge the correct length of pace, to measure the distances between ranks, to check drill movements and when stepping out and stepping short. The instructor should march with the squad with the pace-stick open and turning, to control the length of pace. When a squad has progressed and is marching the length of pace, the instructor should march behind the squad with the stick open and turning.

PACE-STICK DRILL AT THE HALT (STICK CLOSED)

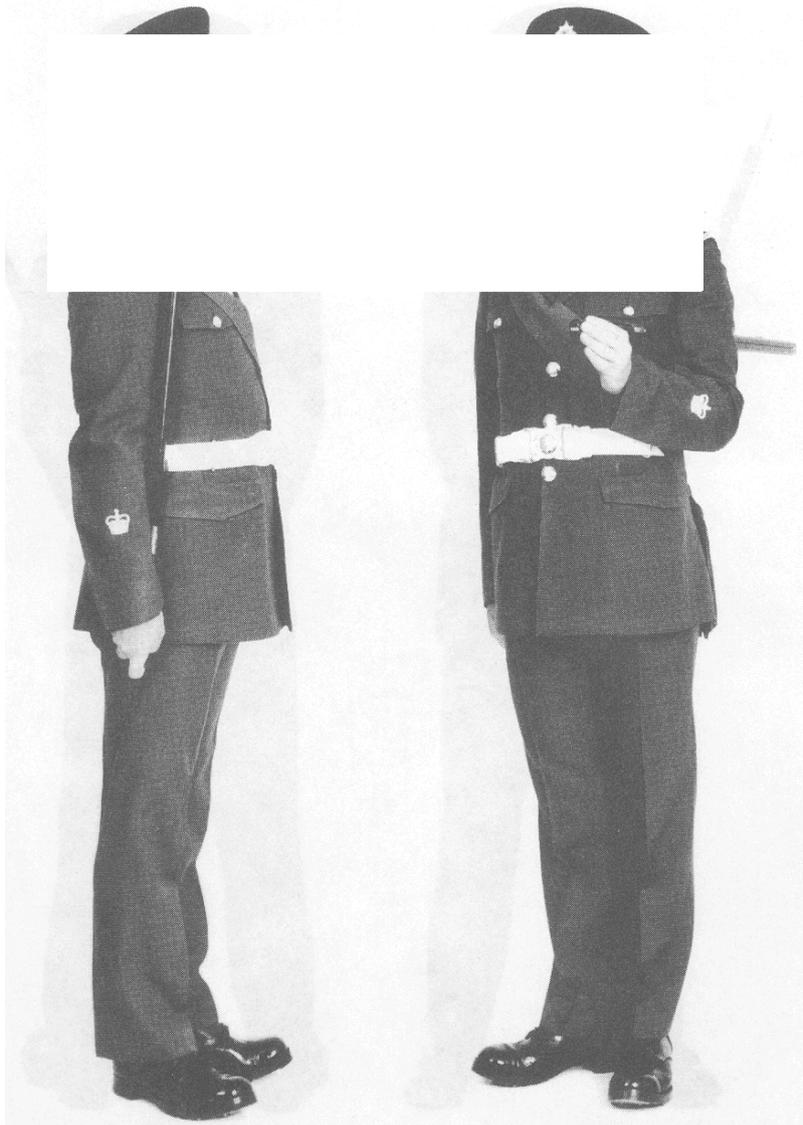
0806. *Position of Attention.*

a. When speaking to a WO or NCO the instructor should hold the pace-stick in the right hand with the brass feet ferrules uppermost. The stick is placed on the second joint of the forefinger with the remaining fingers gripping the side of the stick. The thumb is placed along the front of the stick so the appearance is the same as the left hand in the position of Attention (see Fig 101).

b. When speaking to an officer the stick is placed beneath the left armpit, feet ferrules to the rear, with the hinge end protruding about 450 mm (18 inches) to the front. It is placed there by moving the right hand across the body, placing the stick as directed. The stick is trapped under the armpit by the pressure of the inside of the upper arm against the rib cage. When secure, force the right arm to the side and at the same time move the left hand onto the stick. The left hand controls the stick's direction left or right. The stick is held parallel to the ground by the pressure of the arm against the rib cage. The left hand holds the stick with the fingers extended along the outside of the stick, thumb along the inside. The index finger runs parallel to the top of the stick, with the second fingertip in line with the end of the stick (see Fig 101).

Amdt No. 1/Nov/91

FIG 101 - POSITION OF ATTENTION - STICK CLOSED

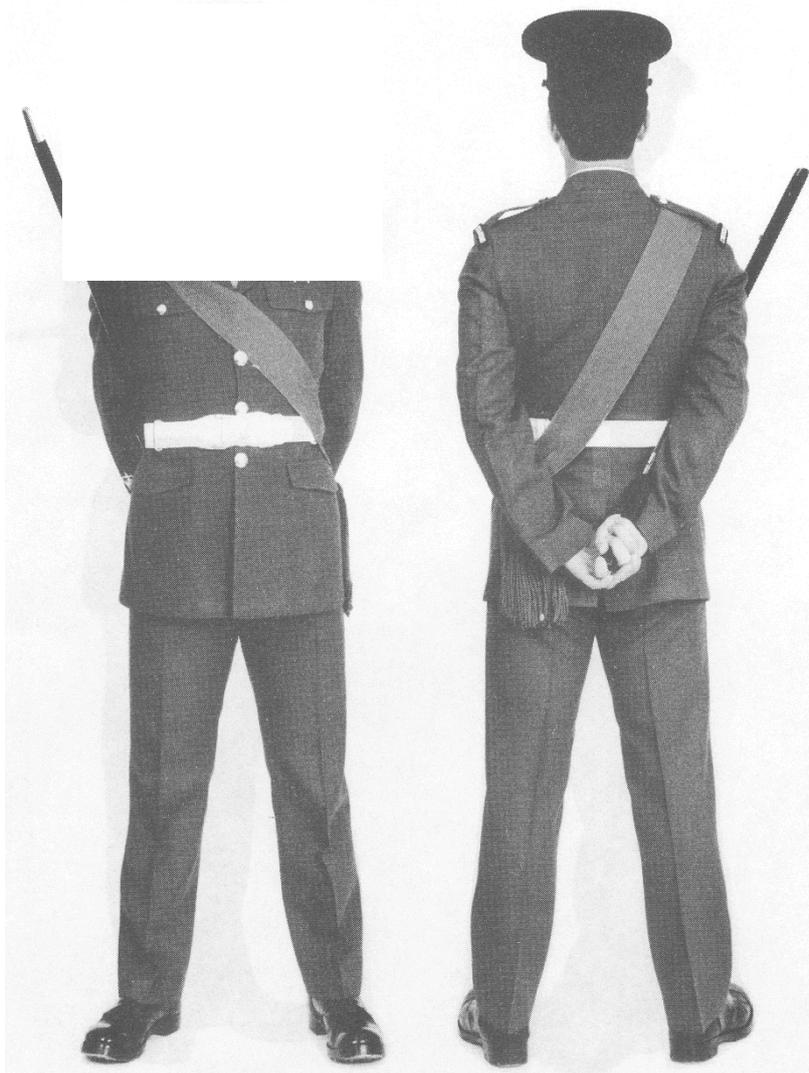


At the Shoulder

At the Carry

Amdt No. 1/Nov/91

FIG 102 - STAND AT EASE - AT THE SHOULDER



Front View

Rear View

Amdt No. 1/Nov/91

FIG 103 - STAND EASY - AT THE CARRY

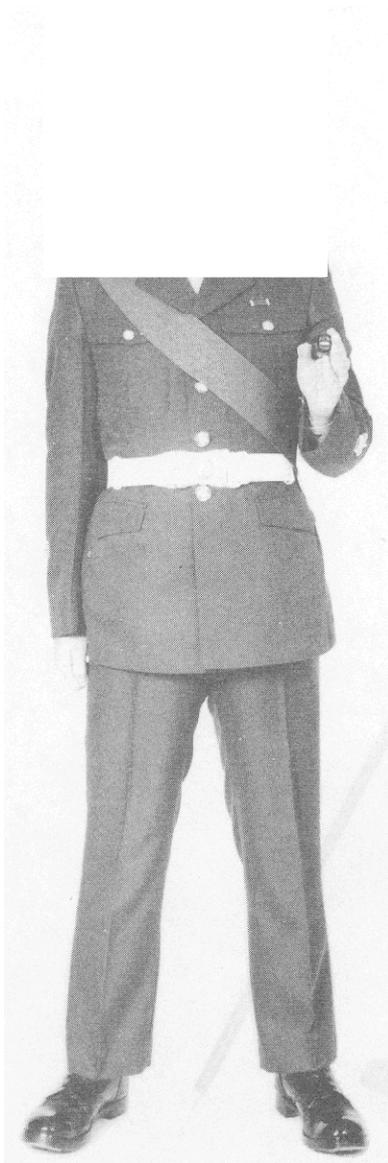


FIG 104 - POSITION OF ATTENTION - STICK OPEN



Amdt No. 1/Nov/91

FIG 105 - STAND AT EASE - STICK OPEN



0807. **Stand at Ease.** Normal foot drill is used with the stick and it remains in the right hand, passing along the forearm and armpit and protrudes out by the right shoulder (see Fig 102).

0808. **Stand Easy.** In this position the body is simply relaxed. Note that it is permitted to Stand at Ease and to Stand Easy with the stick in the position of the Carry. Normal foot drill is carried out - the stick remains under the left armpit and the right hand remains at the side, it does not go to the rear (see Fig 103).

PACE-STICK DRILL AT THE HALT - STICK OPEN

0809. **Position of Attention** (see Fig 104). With the pace-stick open to 750 mm (30 inches) stand to Attention as normal. Hold the stick in the right hand with the 'leading leg' of the stick perpendicular. The foot ferrule on the ground is in line with the front of the toecap and 25 mm (one inch) to the right, the 'rear leg' covering off the leading leg. The right hand holds the stick with the thumb on the inside, the fingers on the outside curling round the front of the stick, with the apex of the legs showing over the right hand.

0810. **Stand at Ease and Stand Easy** (see Fig 105). Normal foot drill is used but the left arm remains at the side. With a flick of the right wrist, move the rear leg of the stick round to the front, keeping the leading leg on the ground, maintaining the grip with the right hand. For the Stand Easy, relax the body.

0811. **Common Faults.** These are:

- a. The stick not in line with toecap.
- b. Fingers not curled around apex of stick.
- c. The rear leg not 'covering off' leading leg.
- d. The rear leg not rotated through 180 degrees.

PACE-STICK DRILL ON THE MARCH - STICK CLOSED

0812. **The Trail** (see Fig 106). Step off from the position of Attention and carry out the following drill:

a. On the first pace move both hands and grip the centre of the stick, left hand above the right, the stick close to the right side of the body and perpendicular. On the third pace move the stick to the fullest extent of the right arm, stick parallel to the ground, foot ferrules to the front, at the same time force the left arm to the side. On the fifth pace swing both arms. The stick is held at the point of balance by the right hand, and allowed to swing with the movement of the right arm, being manipulated between the fingers and thumb of the right hand, so that the whole of the stick remains parallel to the ground at all times. This movement does not stop the arm from swinging normally.

b. To bring the stick back to the position of the Shoulder halt in the normal way, but hold the stick in the right hand and parallel to the ground. After a regulation pause, with a flick of the right wrist bring the stick into a perpendicular position, at the same time moving the left hand across the body to strike and grip the stick at the point of balance, forcing it into the right shoulder. The right hand moves to the hinge end and grips the stick as for the position of Attention. Force the left hand to the side.

c. To bring the stick back to the position of the Carry halt in the normal way, but hold the stick in the right hand and parallel to the ground. After a regulation pause, move the stick across the body, placing it under the left arm, feet ferrules to the rear as for the position of Attention. Force the right hand to the side as the left hand grasps the hinge end of the stick.

0813. **The Shoulder** (see Fig 107). It is permissible for the stick to be carried on the march in the position of the Shoulder. The stick is held parallel to the right arm and the arms are swung normally.

SALUTING

0814. **At the Halt** (see Fig 108). When saluting at the halt, the left hand is forced away as the right hand comes up to salute. When the right hand is forced away, the left hand returns to the pace-stick.

0815. **Common Faults.** These are:

- a. The stick not held parallel to the right arm or held in the fist as opposed to second finger joint when marching with the stick at the shoulder.
- b. Pressure of the left hand making the head of the stick dip down and the stick not parallel to the ground when held at the Carry.
- c. When at the Carry the left hand not at the end of the stick.
- d. The right and left hands not working together when saluting.

0816. **Saluting an Officer** (see Figs 109 and 110). When saluting an officer from the trail position, the stick is placed under the left armpit, working on successive left feet as follows:

- a. *One.* Stick placed under arm, left arm remains at side.
- b. *Two.* Right hand forced to side.
- c. *Three.* Salute.
- d. *Five.* Hand away.
- e. *Six.* Right hand to stick.
- f. *Seven.* Stick to trail.

g. *Eight*. Swing stick.

0817. **Common Faults**. These are:

- a. The stick not carried parallel to the ground.
- b. The stick not forced under the armpit.
- c. The regulation pause not maintained.
- d. The stick not held parallel to the ground by pressure of the upper arm against the rib cage.

PACE-STICK DRILL ON THE MARCH - STICK OPEN

0818. **The Carry** (see Fig 111). When the stick is open, it is brought to the Carry position from the position of Attention. The Carry position and the drills involved are as follows:

FIG 106 - STICK AT THE TRAIL ON THE MARCH

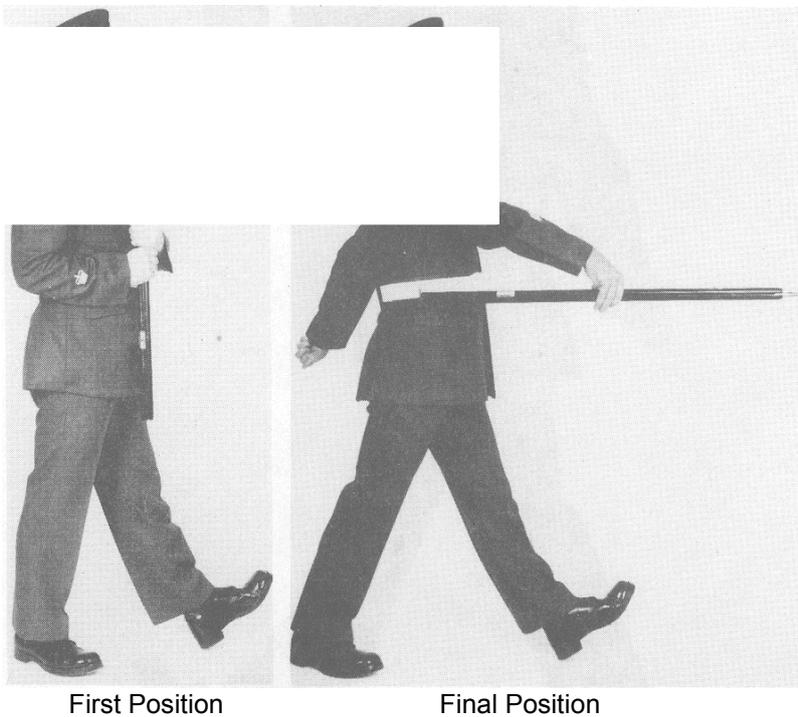
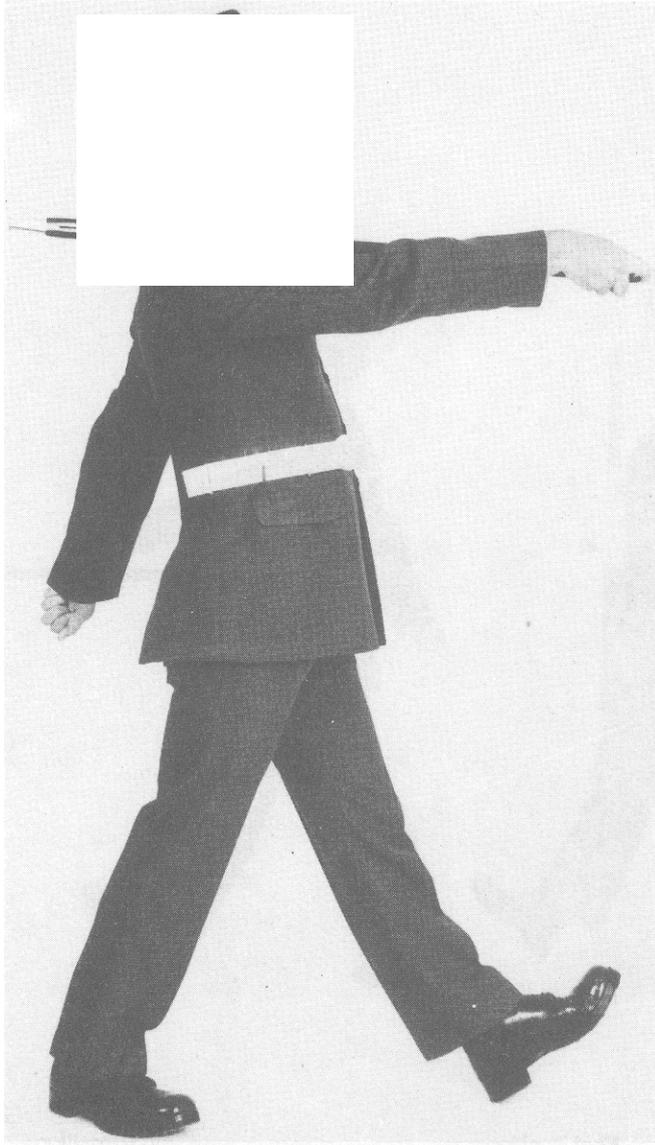


FIG 107 - STICK AT THE SHOULDER ON THE MARCH



- a. On the first pace pick up the stick by bending the right arm so that the forearm is parallel to the ground. The index finger remains in front of the leading leg and the remaining fingers curl round the rear leg. The thumb makes contact with the index finger round the front of the leading leg. The leading leg of the stick maintains the perpendicular. The right elbow is forced into the side.
- b. On the command "**HALT!**", force the stick down to the position of Attention.
- c. To salute with the stick at the carry, first transfer the stick to the left hand.

0819. **Common Faults.** These are:

- a. The forearm not parallel to the ground.
- b. The leading leg not perpendicular.

PACE-STICK DRILL IN SLOW TIME

0820. **Turning the Stick.** This movement is the start of marching with the stick open. It is easier to master the art of turning a stick by practising on grass first. The movement is as follows:

- a. The stick is controlled by a good wrist movement, the fingers used for control, the stick turned by the thumb and pressure on the leading leg. It is essential that the leading leg is

always perpendicular, as the stick is turned with the thumb. This makes the stick turn through 180 degrees with ease.

b. When the stick is turned in Slow Time the standard of marching must be maintained, otherwise it becomes very easy for the pace-stick to take over.

c. First practise in Slow Time with the right and left hands, starting and finishing in the position of Attention. When proficient on grass move to the Parade Ground.

0821. **Changing Sticks** (see Fig 112). The stick can be turned with either the right or the left hand and changed from one to the other as follows:

a. *Right to Left.*

(1) With the stick turning with the right hand the cautionary words of command "**CHANGING STICKS**" is given.

(2) On the executive "**CHANGE - STICKS!**" ("**CHANGE**" on the left foot "**STICKS!**" on the right) the stick is changed from the right hand to the left.

(3) On the command "**STICKS!**" the leading leg is moved across the body, the left foot passing inside the stick. At the same time the left hand moves to the stick to take control from the right hand and at this point both hands are on the stick. The leading ferrule hits the ground on the outside of the left foot.

(4) As the right foot moves forward the left hand controls the stick and the right hand is forced away to the side. The rear leg follows across the body turning outwards and continues to turn on the left side of the instructor.

b. *Left to Right.*

(1) With the stick turning in the left hand now change back to the right.

(2) On the executive "**CHANGE - STICKS!**" ("**CHANGE**" on the right foot "**STICKS!**" on the left) the stick is changed from the left hand to the right.

(3) On the command "**STICKS!**" the leading leg is moved across the body, the right foot passing inside the stick. At the same time the right hand moves to take control of the stick and at this time both hands are on the stick. The leading ferrule hits the ground on the outside of the right foot.

(4) As the left foot moves forward the right hand controls the stick and the left hand is forced away to the side. The rear leg follows across the body and continues to turn on the right side of the instructor.

0822. **Common Faults.** These are:

a. Not turning the stick through 180 degrees.

b. Not forcing the disengaged hand away in double time when changing sticks.

c. Leading leg not perpendicular when the first phase of changing sticks is executed.

PACE-STICK DRILL IN QUICK TIME

0823. **General.** When marching with the pace-stick in Quick Time the same drill movements are used as in Slow Time. After the initial period on grass it will be easy for the student to graduate to the Parade Ground.

0824. **Changing Sticks - Right to Left** (see Fig 112). The same movements as in Slow Time are used, with slight changes to the arm swinging, as follows:

a. With the stick turning in the right hand the cautionary word of command "**CHANGING STICKS**" is given.

b. On the executive "**CHANGE STICKS!**" ("**CHANGE**" on the left foot "**STICKS!**" on the right) the stick is changed from the right hand to the left.

c. On the command "**STICKS!**" the left arm is forced into the side, the leading leg of the stick is moved across the body, the left foot passing inside the stick. The left hand moves to

the top of the stick to take control, both hands are on the stick at this time. The leading ferrule hits the ground on the outside of the left leg.

d. As the right foot moves forward the left hand controls the stick and the right hand is forced away to the side. The rear leg follows across the body turning outwards and continues to turn on the left side of the instructor.

0825. **Changing Sticks - Left to Right** (see Fig 112). With the stick turning in the left hand, change back to the right using the reverse procedure.

0826. **Carrying Sticks**. When on the March in Slow and Quick Time and turning the stick, the Carry position can be adopted, as follows:

a. The word of command "**CARRY - STICKS!**" is given only when the stick is in the right hand and turning.

b. The cautionary "**CARRY**" is drawn out over three or four paces; the executive "**STICKS!**" is given on the left foot in Slow Time and on the right in Quick Time. Working on the next right foot bring the stick to the Carry position.

0827. **Pacing Sticks**. To return the stick to the ground the word of command "**PACING - STICKS!**" is given, with the cautionary "**PACING**" given over three or four paces. The executive "**STICKS!**" is as above. Working on the next left foot the stick is brought into action again.

0828. **Common Faults**. These are:

a. Not swinging the disengaged arm correctly.

b. Walking round the stick when changing sticks.

c. Not forcing the arm into the side when changing sticks.

FIG 108 - SALUTE TO THE FRONT



Stick Open



Stick Closed

FIG 109 - SALUTE TO THE RIGHT

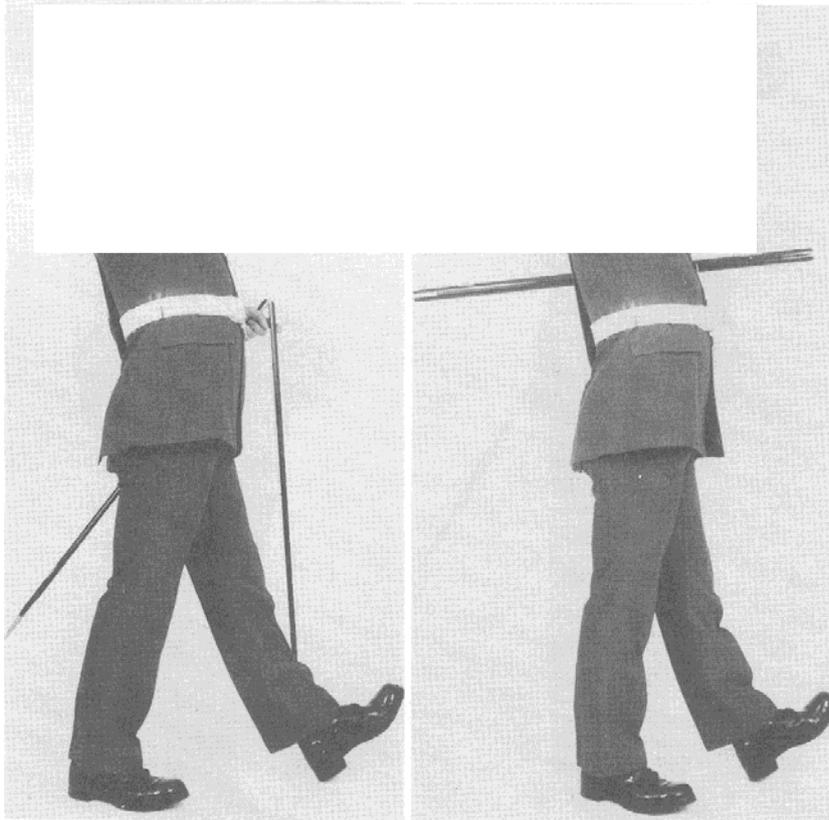
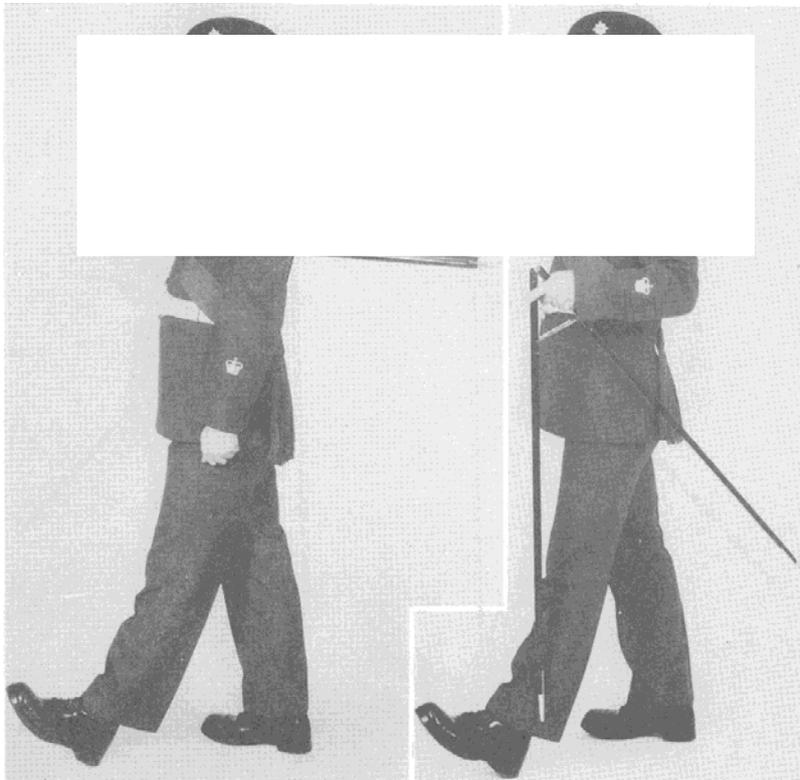


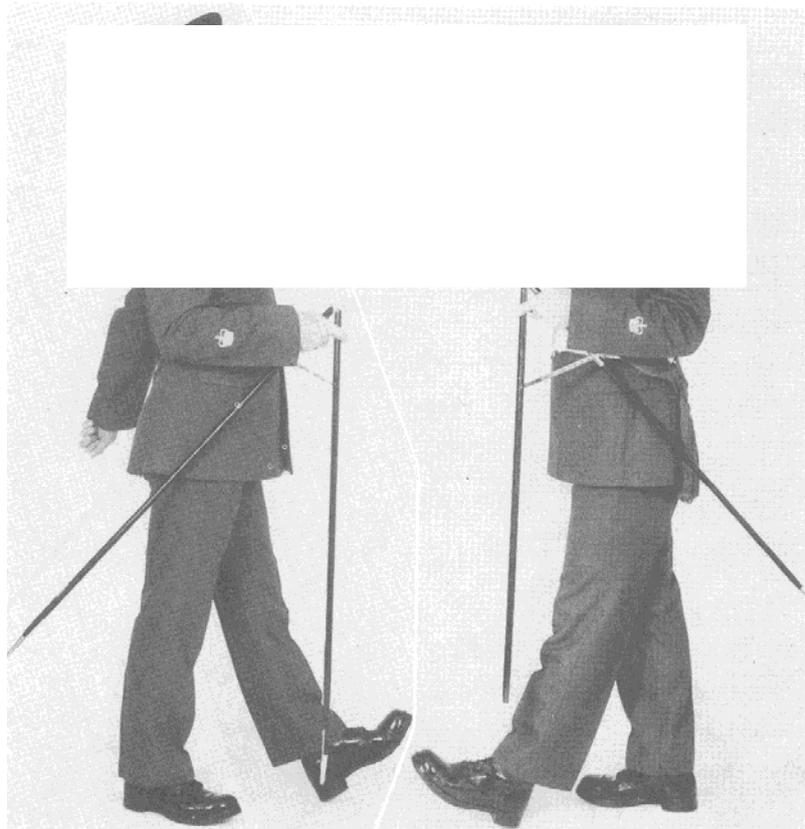
FIG 110 - SALUTE TO THE LEFT



Stick Closed

Stick Open

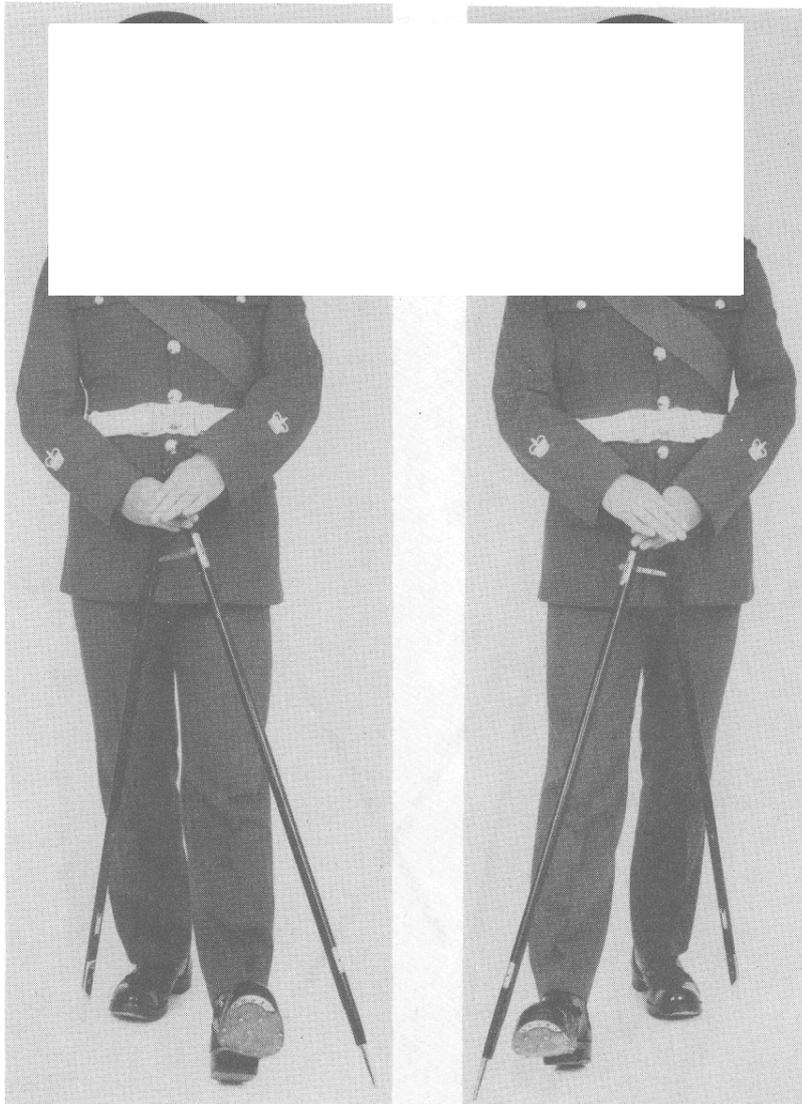
FIG 111 - STICK AT THE CARRY ON THE MARCH



Right Hand

Left Hand

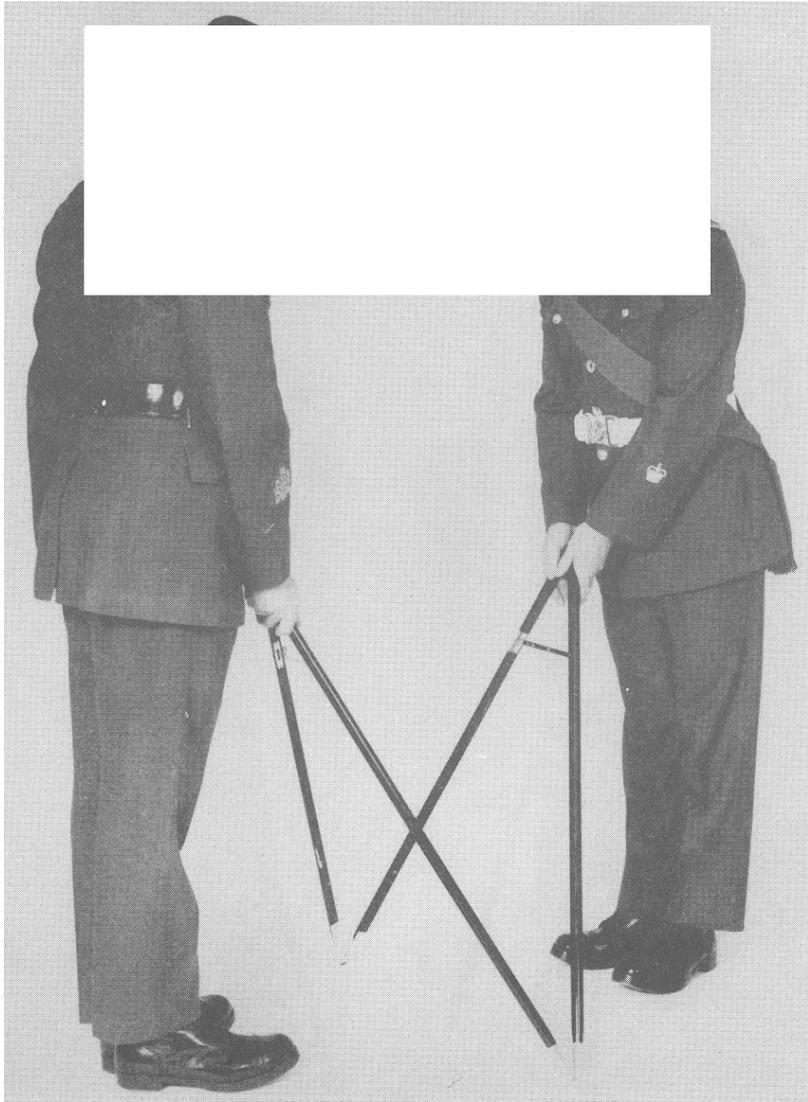
FIG 112 - CHANGE STICKS



Right Hand to Left Hand

Left Hand to Right Hand

FIG 113 - PROVING STICKS



FIGS 114 - 119 - RESERVED.

Chapter 9

FUNERAL PLANNING AND PROCEDURES, RIFLE EXERCISES, SWORD AND PISTOL DRILLS

PART 1 - PLANNING AND PROCEDURES

Introduction

0901. The Military Funeral is an integral part of service life, as it has always been, and today it can attract special media attention, especially if it is the result of a terrorist incident. Therefore, it is important, not only for the bereaved families, but also for the Regiment or Corps concerned, that it is carried out correctly and with the dignity that such a solemn occasion requires. The wishes of the family are to be sought as soon as circumstances allow. The aim of this Chapter is to lay down the procedures to be carried out and the drills to be taught and rehearsed, as required in the references below. Advice may be sought from The Army School of Ceremonial/MOD PS12 at any time.

0902. The following references should be studied in conjunction with this Chapter:

- a. Queen's Regulations 1975, Chapters 5, 7 and 8.
- b. Ceremonial for the Army 2016 (Army Code No. 64332), Chapter 14. - Funerals.
- c. Army Dress Regulations Part 2: All Ranks.
- d. JSP 751 Chapter 3 Part 2.

Planning and Liaison

0903. **General.** Usually the time between notification and interment is only a few days, so rapid and thorough planning is essential if the ceremony is to be performed with precision.

- a. **Timings.** The following timings must be confirmed:
 - (1) The time the remains are to leave the Chapel of Rest or residence of the deceased.
 - (2) The time of the church service.
 - (3) The time of interment or cremation.
- b. **Locations.** The following locations must be clearly known:
 - (1) The Chapel of Rest
 - (2) The home of the deceased.
 - (3) The church.
 - (4) The cemetery or crematorium.
 - (5) The route and approximate travel times between the locations.
- c. **Persons to Contact.** The following persons should be contacted:
 - (1) The funeral director.
 - (2) The padre.
 - (3) The head of family.
 - (4) The local regimental or Army Careers Information Office (ACIO) representative.
- d. **Detailed Points to Check.** It is essential to carry out a preliminary visit. In order to plan effectively, the following need to be seen in detail:
 - (1) **The Chapel of Rest.** Check for:
 - (a) The position of the coffin.

- (b) The space in which to turn.
 - (c) The route out, i.e., height and width of doors, corners and steps.
 - (d) The position for the hearse and Firing Party.
- (2) *Home.* In addition to the above (less the Firing Party) and because most house doors are very narrow, the Bearer Party may have to form up outside, close to the door and receive the coffin from a party within. After placing in the hearse the Bearer Party may travel either with, separately or in advance of the hearse, to the church.
- (3) *Church.* In addition to the above points, check the following:
- (a) The position of the Bearer Party when the hearse arrives.
 - (b) That the aisle is wide enough for the Bearer Party.
 - (c) That there is enough room to turn in front of the altar.
 - (d) The seating for the Bearer Party.
 - (e) The position of the hearse when departing.
 - (f) The arrangements for the Bearer Party to leave before the cortege.
- (4) *Crematorium.* At a crematorium, check for:
- (a) The position of the bearers when the hearse arrives.
 - (b) The widths and heights of the doors and aisles.
 - (c) The space for turning and placing of the coffin on the bier.
 - (d) The seating for the Bearer Party.
 - (e) The position of a Bugler or Piper.
 - (f) The position of the Firing Party outside and signals for them to react.
 - (g) The undressing of the coffin (see paragraph 0907.i. below.).
- (5) *Cemetery.* At the cemetery, check:
- (a) *For the Bearer Party.*
 - i. The position and size of the grave. The grave must be large enough to receive the coffin.
 - ii. Where to halt and position the hearse.
 - iii. The route to the grave.
 - iv. Whether the side of the grave is to be strengthened with boards and covered, i.e., with synthetic grass.
 - v. The position of a Bugler or Piper.
 - vi. Whether the coffin will have to be turned before being laid over the grave.
 - vii. The position of the Bearer Party after they have lowered the coffin.
 - (b) *For the Firing Party.*
 - i. Transport to take them to the cemetery or crematorium, so that they arrive before the cortege.
 - ii. Where the Firing Party is to line the route.
 - iii. Where the Firing Party is to move to and fire volleys with blank cartridges, after the coffin and mourners have passed through.

0904. **Contact with Leading Personalities.** The following persons must be visited by the officer in charge of the military group and detailed arrangements discussed:

a. *The Funeral Director.* The Funeral Director is the person who will be able to answer most of the questions, so it is important to establish a good relationship with him. He is an expert in his profession and the whole event will run smoothly with his cooperation. The points which have to be clarified are:

- (1) Who is going to dress the coffin and when. This will probably be the head of the military detachment.
- (2) Will trestles be provided at the chapel, home, church and crematorium.
- (3) Are support poles and straps available and can you use them for rehearsals.
- (4) Is the coffin to be undressed in the crematorium before the service or after and are these items to be collected from the crematorium authorities later.
- (5) Confirm the locations of the hearse stop and start points, including the opening and closing of hearse doors.
- (6) Suggest that the hat orderlies or other military personnel remove the trestles and support poles as and when required.

b. *Padre.* It may be necessary to explain the procedure to the padre in case he is unfamiliar with a military funeral. He in turn will have to explain the details of the service, so that when to remove the coffin to the hearse and the procedure at the graveside or in the crematorium is clear. He will make the decision when the coffin is lowered and should say where he would like the Bearer Party to sit during the service.

c. *The Head of Family.* It will be helpful to have the padre and Funeral Director if available present when the family is visited. It will be important to be aware of just what the family can expect by way of military support and to be clear what can be delivered. In all cases the wishes of the family, within their entitlement should be paramount. It will be important to explain the procedure that will take place throughout the funeral. Be sure to ask for their floral tribute with which to dress the coffin and confirm any official accoutrements that are to be added. Most families will deem it an honour if the Bearer Party attends a gathering afterwards, so remember that a refusal often offends.

d. *The Regimental or ACIO Representative.* If unable to carry out a preliminary visit these representatives may be used and should be fully aware of all these points. Other needs they can arrange are:

- (1) Transport, accommodation, feeding, security of arms and ammunition, including the supply, storage and disposal of empty and unfired cartridges.
- (2) Meetings with the padre, family, funeral director and others.
- (3) Permission for use of locations for rehearsal.
- (4) The supply of a practice coffin, trestles, poles and straps if needed.
- (5) Responsibility for supplying the Union Flag and the deceased's headdress, decorations, belt and side-arms.
- (6) Liaison with the local police over traffic control and security.

0905. **Reconnaissance and Rehearsal** The officer in charge of the military group must carry out a ground visit himself. Rehearsals should, where possible, be held at the exact location, at least the day before the funeral, or in the morning for an afternoon committal.

Detailed Procedures and Drills at a Funeral

0906. **Planning and Preparation.** The provisions of a Military Funeral with Military Honours is subject to the conditions laid down in Queen's Regulations 1975, Chapter 7, Part 6, which should be read in conjunction with any local Standing Orders. This Chapter deals mainly with funerals for all ranks below Major General and are able to be modified, perhaps extensively, depending on the wishes of the NOK and the availability of service personnel, to suit the circumstances at the time.

- a. *Troops Taking Part.*
- (1) *The Bearer Party.* This will normally consist of:
 - (a) An Officer, Warrant Officer or Senior Non Commissioned Officer in charge.
 - (b) Six to eight bearers, depending on the size of the coffin.
 - (c) Two reserve bearers.
 - (d) Two hat orderlies.
 - (2) *Ranks of the Bearers.* These will depend on the rank of the deceased as laid down in Queen's Regulations, Chapter 7, Part 6.
 - (3) *The Firing Party.* This will consist of:
 - (a) One Senior Non Commissioned Officer.
 - (b) One Corporal.
 - (c) Twelve Junior Ranks.
 - (d) One Bugler or Piper.
- b. *Detailed Preparation - The Bearer Party.*
- (1) *Sizing and Numbering.* Sizing is to be done, taking into account the height of the shoulder as well as the head. The Party is to be numbered so that the odd numbers are on the left when in the Carry position, the highest numbers at the head of the coffin.
 - (2) *Words of Command.* These will be given in a quiet tone, audible only to the Bearer Party. The movements cannot be controlled by signal and must always be ordered by word of command. The introductory word of command is always **"BEARER PARTY"**.
 - (3) *Dressing the Coffin (see Fig 120).* The coffin should be dressed by the Bearer Party commander as follows:
 - (a) The Union Flag placed over the coffin as though the pike were at the head end.
 - (b) The headdress in the centre, at the head end.
 - (c) The decorations in the centre, half way to the middle.
 - (d) The belt and sword or sidearms in the middle.
 - (e) The family wreath at the foot end.

Note. The commander must ensure that these items are properly secured. The coffin will be located in the Chapel of Rest or church with the foot end closest to the altar.

0907. ***The Detailed Drill for the Bearer Party from the Church or Chapel.*** When ordered the Bearer Party, without headdress, are to step off and halt, without ceremony, alongside the coffin and then turn inwards. The commander is to be two paces to the rear. Then:

- a. *Lifting and Moving the Coffin.*
- (1) On the command **"PREPARE TO LIFT"**. The bearers are to place both hands, fingers together, under the coffin, with the thumbs running vertically up the side, shoulder width apart, ensuring that the Union Flag is between the hands and the coffin (see Figs 121 and 122).
 - (2) On the command **"LIFT!"**. The Bearer Party are to take the weight by straightening the back, keeping their arms at their fullest extent and allowing the coffin to clear the trestles. The hat orderlies or others then remove the trestles.

(3) On the command "**PREPARE TO RAISE - RAISE!**". The bearers are to lift the coffin slowly, ensuring that it remains level, until the hands come into line with the shoulders.

(4) On the command "**OUTWARDS**" (see Fig 123). The hand nearest the foot end is to be rotated outwards, so that the thumb is underneath and the fingers together running vertically up the side.

(5) On the command "**TURN!**" (see Fig 124). The bearers are to turn and face the foot end, at the same time placing the coffin well onto the shoulders, the inside arm passing beneath the coffin so that the hand is able to rest firmly on the outside shoulder of the bearer's opposite number. The outside arm is to be bent at the elbow, the hand being positioned as close to the face as possible.

(6) On the command "**TURNING, SLOW - MARCH!**". The Bearer Party are to execute a turn of 180 degrees to the right or far enough to face the required exit. In order not to disturb the coffin whilst turning, the foot end bearers are to step a side pace to the right then bring their feet together. The head end bearers are to step a side pace to the left then bring their feet together. The centre bearers are to small side-step on the spot to the left. All bearers are to side-step simultaneously until facing the required exit and on the command "**STAND STILL!**" they are to halt with their feet together. This is a very difficult movement and must be carried out very slowly.

(7) On the command "**SLOW - MARCH!**". The Bearer Party step off with the inside foot leading. The commander may keep the step by saying very softly "**INSIDE**" "**OUTSIDE**". The coffin is always to be carried foot end foremost.

(8) *Position of Commander.* Where possible the commander should remain two paces from the head end and follow the coffin.

(9) *Obstacles.* Whilst on the march, the Bearer Party may have to negotiate obstacles such as tight corners or steps. If so, they are to be halted and with dignity negotiate the obstacle. If negotiating steps or stairs the bearers at the lower end are to change the position of the hands so as to support the weight of the coffin.

b. *Halting and Lowering the Coffin.* The next stage will commence with:

(1) The command "**HALT!**". This is given as the outside feet come to the ground. The bearers are to complete the pace with the next foot and then place the outside foot beside it.

(2) On the command "**INWARDS**". The bearers are to rotate the outside hand, so that the fingers are extended beneath the coffin with the thumb running up the side, forward of the face.

(3) On the command "**TURN!**". The bearers are to turn and face the coffin, the chest approximately 300 mm (12 inches) from it, taking the weight with the outside hand for a moment until they can withdraw the inside arm from beneath the coffin so as to be able to place the inside hand back underneath the coffin to adopt the Raise position.

(4) On the command "**PREPARE TO LOWER - LOWER!**". The bearers are to lower the coffin gently, ensuring that it remains level, to arms length or to the required height for the trestles or to allow it to be fed into the hearse.

(5) On the command "**BEARER PARTY, 6 PACES LEFT AND RIGHT INWARDS MARCH**", the Bearer Party will close onto the back of the hearse. They should end up with the foot end bearers with their legs flush to the bumper of the hearse. The Bearer Party IC may wish to take an extra pace if required, as indicated by a nod of the head from the inside left bearer.

c. *The Feed into the Hearse.* The next stage will commence with:

(1) The command "**PREPARE TO FEED - FEED!**". After the cautionary words of command the foot end bearers look inwards with the remainder facing to the front. The bearers, moving inside hand to outside hand, feed the coffin into the hearse. The

foot end bearers are to guide it into the correct position. As each pair 'lose' the coffin, on an "**UP!**" from one of them, they resume the position of Attention. The foot end bearers must ensure that the coffin is placed into the hearse and is secure before they act on the "**UP!**".

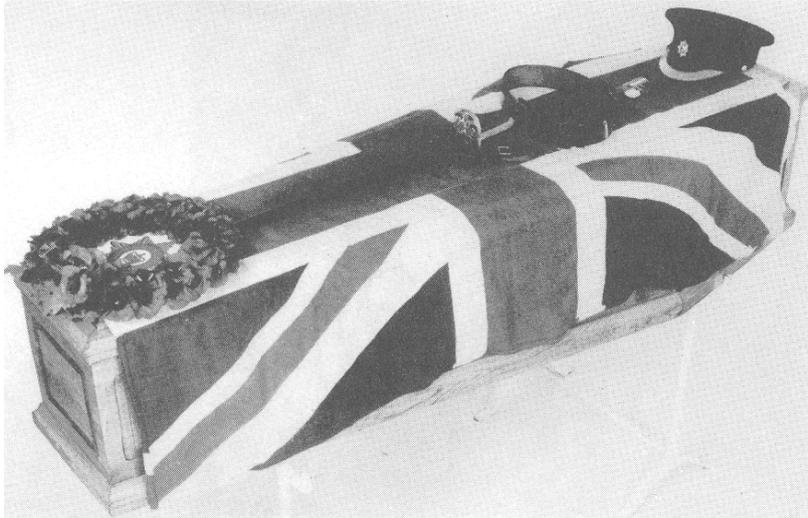
(2) On the command "**BEARER PARTY, 4 PACES LEFT AND RIGHT OUTWARDS MARCH**", the Bearer Party will close march outwards from the rear bumper of the hearse to ensure they are clear of the rear door of the hearse in order to allow the hearse driver sufficient room to carry out his duties.

(3) On the command "**OUTWARDS - TURN!**". The Bearer Party turn to face the hearse without bending the knee.

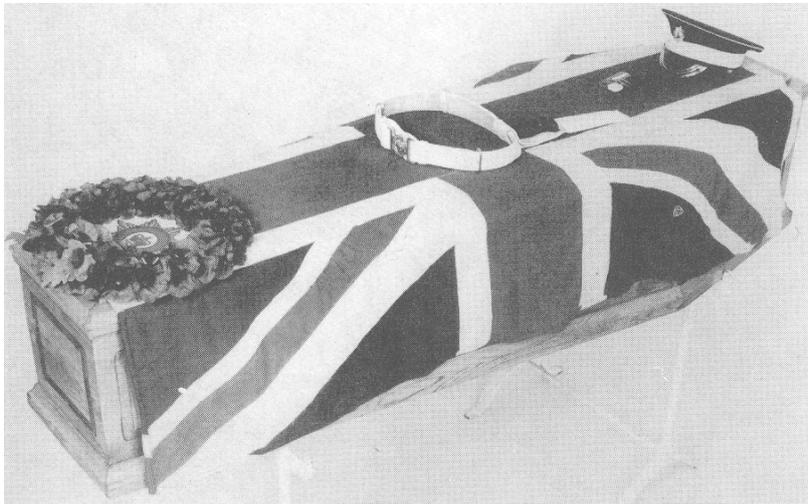
d. *Replacing Headdress.* This next stage will commence with:

(1) The command "**PREPARE TO RECEIVE HEADDRESS - RECEIVE!**". The Bearer Party will bend both elbows, at the same time extending the fingers vertically and together to a position, with the palms approximately 225 mm (9 inches) apart, in front and to the right or left of the outside shoulder. The two hat orderlies who are two paces in rear of the commander are to act together and move along their respective files distributing the hats to each man on the Bearer Party, ensuring each man receives his own hat which must be clearly marked. Having given them, the orderlies return to their previous positions in rear of the commander, ensuring they cover off their respective files.

FIG 120 - DRESSING THE COFFIN



Officer



Other Rank

FIG 121 - PREPARE TO LIFT



FIG 122 - RAISE - FINAL POSITION

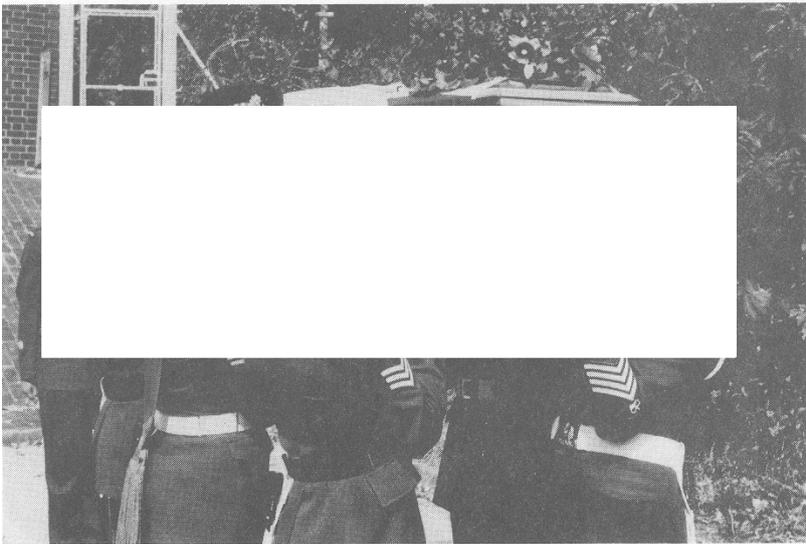
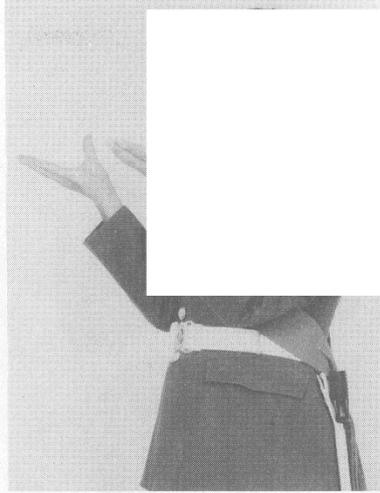


FIG 123 - OUTWARDS

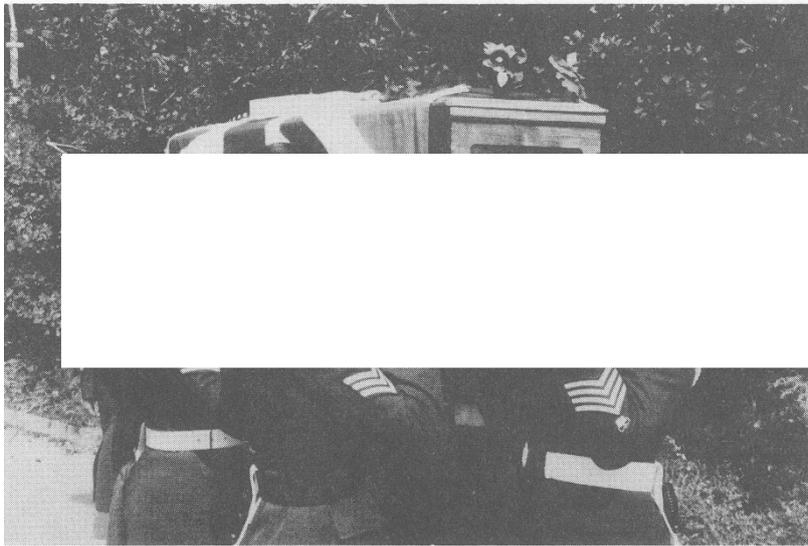
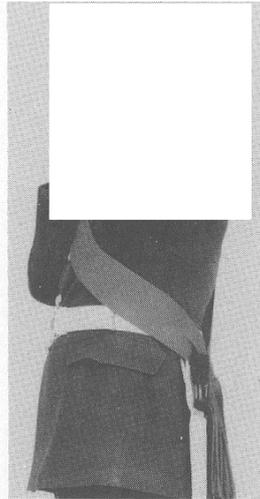


FIG 124 - TURN



(2) On the command "**HEADDRESS!**". The Bearer Party will replace headdress, using both hands to position the hat correctly and freeze in this position.

(3) On the command "**SHUN!**". The Bearer Party will return both hands by the shortest possible route to the position of Attention. If the Party are travelling to the place of interment separately, they will be stepped off in Quick Time and Fall Out to the transport out of sight of the mourners. If the cortege is to proceed by procession to the place of interment, the next word of command is given by the Firing Party commander.

(4) On the Firing Party commander's order "**SLOW - MARCH!**". The Bearer Party step off and take up a position to cover off the front, centre, rear and two paces to the outside of the hearse. The Bearer Party commander will move two paces centre rear of the hearse with the hat orderlies two paces to his rear and covering off their respective files.

e. *Procession Words of Command.* The Bearer Party will act on the words of command "**BREAK INTO QUICK OR SLOW TIME**" as given by the Firing Party commander.

f. *The Halt of the Hearse.* Before the hearse arrives at its halt point, the Bearer Party, on orders from the commander, will step short and regain its previous position in rear of the hearse. The next stage of the procedure then commences with:

(1) The command "**HALT!**". On this command, the bearers and hearse should halt together.

(2) On the command "**PREPARE TO REMOVE HEADDRESS, REMOVE - HEADDRESS!**", "**SHUN!**". The Bearer Party will carry out the actions as described above, but in the reverse order. The hat orderlies return to their correct position.

(3) On the command "**INWARDS - TURN!**". The Bearer Party will carry out the turn as described above. If necessary they can be given "**OUTWARDS - DRESS!**" ensuring the foot end bearers are as close to the hearse as is required. Note that before being ordered to "**INWARDS - TURN!**" the funeral director or one of his assistants should open the hearse door.

(4) On the command "**PREPARE TO FEED - FEED!**". The foot end bearers will grasp hold of the coffin handles with their outside hands and the base with their inside hands. On an "UP!" from one of them they will withdraw the coffin to a point where they can adopt the Feed position as described above. On a second "UP!" they will feed the coffin from the hearse right hand to left. In pairs, the remaining bearers will take the weight also working on an "UP!" until the commander is satisfied that the weight is evenly distributed and the Bearer Party is in the correct position of the Lift as already described.

(5) On the command "**RAISE, OUTWARDS - TURN!**", "**SLOW - MARCH!**". The Bearer Party will carry out the actions as already described. The hearse will move off when the coffin has cleared its rear. Then with the padre leading, the Bearer Party will make its way to the grave side, manoeuvring carefully as necessary and be ordered to "**HALT!**" when the foot end bearers are one pace from, and in line with, the end-edge of the grave. The commander will then order "**INWARDS - TURN!**" and "**PREPARE TO LOWER - LOWER!**" as already described.

g. *Placing the Coffin over the Grave.* When the commander is satisfied that the Bearer Party are covering off the sides of the grave he will give the command "**SLOW - MARCH!**". They will then step off, side pacing along the side of the grave, the foot end feet-moving first, ensuring that they step over the support poles and straps laid over the grave as shown in Fig 125, until the coffin is covered off over the grave. He will order "**STAND - STILL!**" and the Bearer Party will adopt the position of Attention.

h. *The Lower to the Supports.* As soon as possible after the "**STAND - STILL!**" the commander will give the command "**PREPARE TO LOWER - LOWER!**". The Bearer Party will then take a pace to the rear with the right foot and then bend both knees until the right knee touches the ground, at the same time gently and evenly lowering the coffin until it comes into contact with the supports as illustrated in Fig 126. Note the cap bearers may accompany the Bearer Party. The commander then gives the order "**SHUN!**" and the bearers will force both arms to the position of Attention. The commander should follow the coffin to the edge of the grave and kneel with the bearer party.

i. *Undressing the Coffin.*

(1) *The Accoutrements.* On the command "**WREATH!**", the right hand foot end bearer will lift up the wreath and place it to his left on the coffin. The bearer on his left will put the belt onto the wreath and place both items to his left. The bearer opposite will place the decorations on the wreath and place it to his right. The bearer to his right will put the cap on top and place all the accoutrements in front of the commander. He will remove them from the coffin and retain them in both hands. Bearers on completion of their task will resume the position of Attention. If the coffin has had to be turned for any reason the actions above are the same except starting with the headdress.

(2) *Folding the Flag.* To fold the flag the commander is to give the command "**PREPARE TO FOLD FLAG - FOLD!**". On this the bearers will grasp the edges of the flag with both hands. Then:

(a) On the command "**FLAG!**". The right side bearers will fold the flag so that the edge reaches the far side of the coffin. Then:

(b) On the command "**UP!**". They will resume the position of Attention. Then:

(c) On the command "**LEFT SIDE - FOLD!**". They will fold the flag until the edge is level with the far side. Then:

(d) On the command "**UP!**". They will resume the position of Attention. Finally:

(e) On the command "**PREPARE TO FOLD FLAG - FOLD!**". Starting with the right hand foot end bearer they will fold the flag into a triangle taking it in turns alternately right and left until the flag is neatly folded into a triangle in front of the commander. He will then place the accoutrements onto it and remove the flag from the coffin retaining all these items in both hands. Each bearer on completing their folds and having smoothed the flag flat will return their arms to the position of Attention.

j. *Feeding the Straps, Lifting, Lowering and Release Straps.*

(1) *Feeding the Straps.* The straps should be previously positioned so that at this time they are to the right of each bearer. On the command "**PREPARE TO FEED STRAPS - FEED!**" each bearer will grasp the end of his strap with the right hand. Then:

FIG 125 - SUPPORT POLES AND STRAPS OVER THE GRAVE

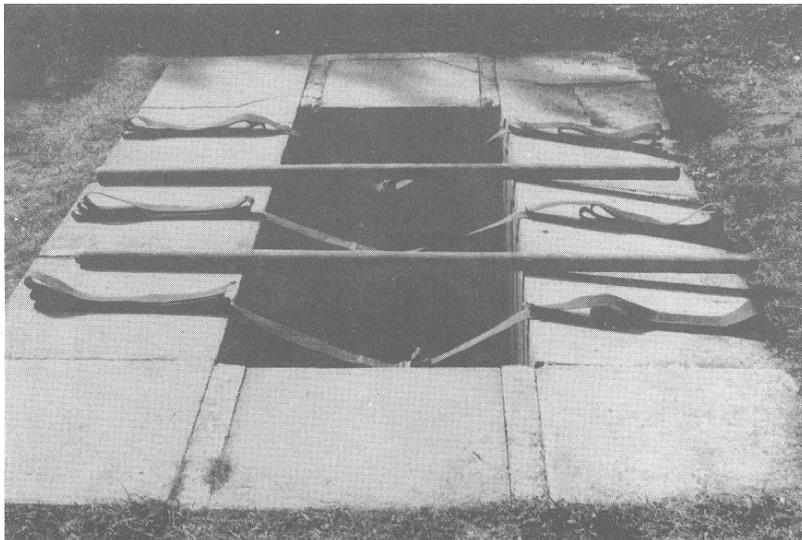
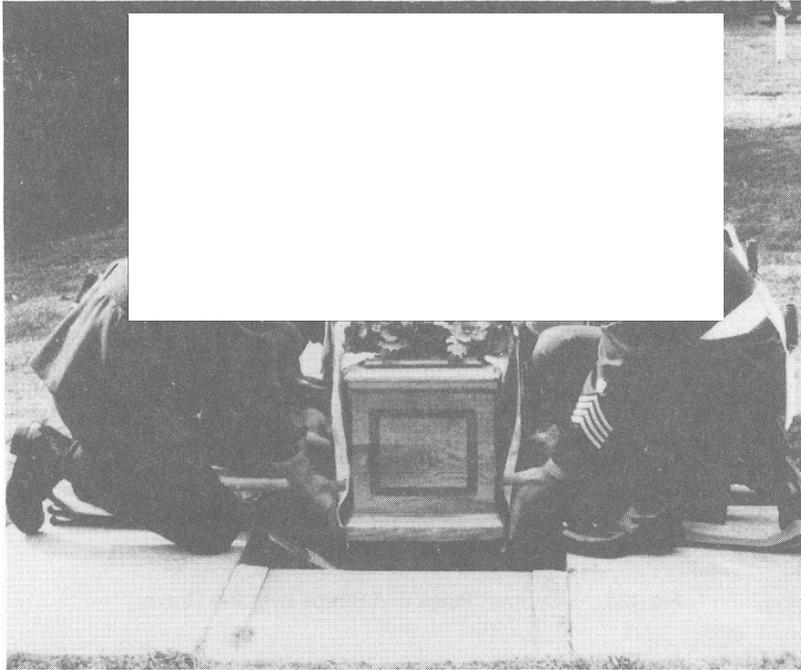


FIG 126 - LOWER TO THE SUPPORTS



Amdt No. 1/Nov/91

- (a) On the command "**STRAPS!**". Using both hands they will feed the straps from the bottom vertically up through the handles, ensuring that:
- i. The centre of each strap ends up under the centre of the coffin base.
 - ii. That the excess is fed to their right rear. Both hands should end up in a full grip on the strap with the right hand above and just touching the left, with the thumbs uppermost. Then:
- (b) On the command "**STAND - UP!**". The Bearer Party bends both knees and resumes the position of Attention, at the same time allowing the straps to run through both hands until the arms are at their fullest extent in the front centre of the body, with the straps taut.
- (2) *Lifting the Coffin.* On the command "**PREPARE TO LIFT - LIFT!**". The bearers will take the weight on the straps and lift the coffin evenly just clear of the supports. At this point two persons who have been previously detailed will remove the supports (see Fig 127).
- (3) *Lowering the Coffin.* On the command "**PREPARE TO LOWER - LOWER!**". The bearers will allow the straps to slide slowly through their hands, so that the coffin is lowered gently and evenly into the grave (see Fig 128). During this movement, if the coffin becomes uneven the commander may order "**STOP!**", "**LOWER ON THE LEFT/RIGHT/FEET/HEAD**", "**STOP!**", "**PREPARE TO LOWER - LOWER!**" as necessary until the coffin has returned level and has completed its journey.
- (4) *Release Straps.* On the command "**PREPARE TO RELEASE STRAPS - RELEASE!**". The bearers will let the straps fall to their right rear and return both hands to the position of Attention.
- k. *The March Off.* On the command "**OUTWARDS - TURN!**". The bearers will turn to face the commander. Then:
- (1) On the command "**QUICK - MARCH!**". They will step off and march to their previously chosen position, the commander bringing up the rear. On the arrival at their correct position he will then:
 - (2) Order the Bearer Party to "**HALT!**" and "**REPLACE - HEADDRESS!**". This time the commander will be the last to receive his headdress so that one of the hat

orderlies can take the flag and accoutrements from him before he receives his own hat. The commander will then order the Bearer Party to turn and face the grave.

(3) On the command "**PRESENT - ARMS!**" from the Firing Party commander, he will salute and complete the compliment when arms are sloped. If there is no Firing Party he will salute on the first note of Last Post and complete the compliment on the last note of Reveille.

(4) After the order "**DISMISS!**" he will retrieve the flag and accoutrements from the hat orderly and either himself or an officer hands them to the head of the family.

Amdt No. 1/Nov/91

0908. **Firing Party.** The procedures to Reveille and Dismiss are as follows:

a. *Forming Up and Movement.* In the event of a procession, the Firing Party will be formed up in two ranks, at the Slope, one pace interval between files in front of the hearse facing the building in which the coffin is resting. The corporal will be on the left of the front rank. The sergeant will give all the words of command and be positioned in centre rear. When the coffin emerges from the building the Firing Party will Present Arms. After the coffin has been placed into the hearse and when the Bearer Party are replacing headdress, the Firing Party will Slope then Reverse Arms and then be ordered to turn and face the direction of march. On completion of the turn the regulation pause is observed and the sergeant and corporal step off together and fall in, the sergeant two paces in rear and midway between the ranks, and the corporal two paces in front of and midway between the ranks. On the sergeant's word of command, the parade steps off in Slow Time. Depending on the distance from stepping off to graveside, the parade may break into Quick Time and Change Arms as necessary ensuring that they break into Slow Time on approaching the cemetery.

b. *Procedure on Arrival at Place of Interment.* The Firing Party will take up a position so as to line the final part of the route inside the gates and will be ordered to "**LOWER ON YOUR ARMS - REVERSED!**". Prior to the command "**HALT!**" the sergeant and corporal will regain the same positions they had before stepping off. After observing the regulation pause the Firing Party will turn inwards. Once the Bearer Party and mourners have passed through the Firing Party, the commander is to order them to "**PRESENT - ARMS!**", "**SLOPE - ARMS!**" and turn towards the direction of the grave. They are then to be stepped off and halted in the position where they are to fire the volleys, turn to face the grave and be ordered to "**LOWER ON YOUR ARMS - REVERSED!**".

c. *Procedure for Firing Volleys.* After the service and on a signal from the commander, the sergeant is to give the following orders to fire the volleys:

"**PARTY!**" (To raise the heads of the Firing Party)

"**PRESENT - ARMS!**"

"**SLOPE - ARMS!**"

"**VOLLEYS WITH BLANK CARTRIDGES - LOAD!**"

"**PRESENT!**" "FIRE!" "RELOAD!"

"**PRESENT!**" "FIRE!" "RELOAD!"

"**PRESENT!**" "FIRE!" "RELOAD!"

"**SHOULDER - ARMS!**"

"**FIX BAYONETS - FIX!**" "BAYONETS!" "SHUN!"

"**SLOPE - ARMS!**"

"**PRESENT - ARMS!**"

d. *Last Post or Lament and Reveille.* Last Post or the Lament will then be played by the Bugler or Piper followed by one minute's silence and then the Reveille. Only the commanders of the Bearer and Firing Parties will remain at the salute during the Reveille. On completion, the Firing Party sergeant will order his party to "**SLOPE - ARMS!**".

e. *The Dismiss.* The commanders will then at the appropriate moment turn their parties in the desired direction and march off to be dismissed.

Note. See Funeral Rifle Exercises, Lesson 6 of this Chapter, for Volleys with Blank Cartridges.

Foot Drill at a Funeral with the Rifle

0909. The procedure for the Firing Party for breaking into Quick Time from Slow Time, and Slow Time to Quick Time with the rifle at the Reverse Arms position is as follows:

a. *Quick Time from Slow Time.* The Firing Party commander gives the following words of command: "**PARADE, BREAK INTO QUICK TIME, QUICK - MARCH!**". Once the executive word of command "**MARCH!**" has been given on the right foot, on the next left foot the rifle is forced to the horizontal position under control of the right hand, keeping the rifle forced into the right side of the body under control of the right hand, wrist, forearm and elbow. At the same time, the left arm is forced to the rear as far as physically possible and the quick march time continues as normal.

b. *Slow Time from Quick Time.* The Firing Party commander gives the following words of command: "**PARADE, BREAK INTO SLOW TIME, SLOW - MARCH!**". Once the executive word of command "**MARCH!**" has been given, the correct movement of break into Slow Time is carried out. As the right foot strikes the ground the rifle, under control of the right hand, is forced back to resume the Reverse Arms position. At the same time, the left hand is forced behind the back of the body to grasp the barrel of the rifle in a full grip thus resuming the correct position of the Reverse Arms. The Slow March then continues as normal with the rifle in the Reverse Arms position.

0910. *Reserved.*

FIG 127 - PREPARE TO LIFT - LIFT

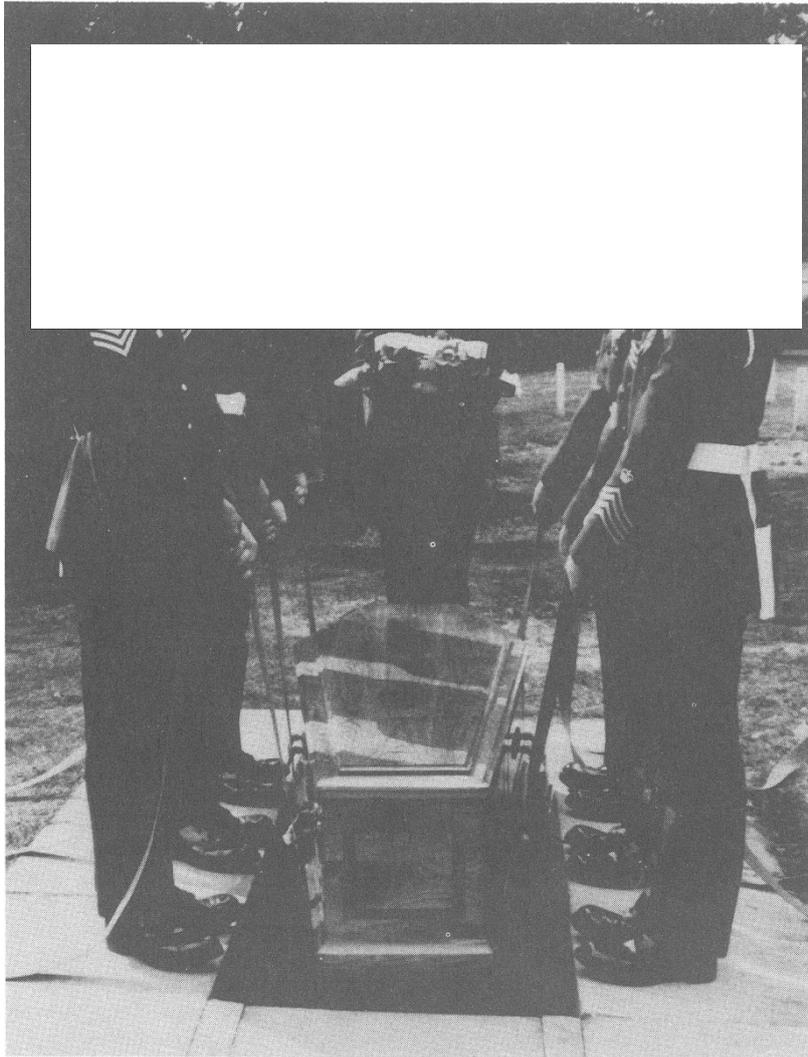
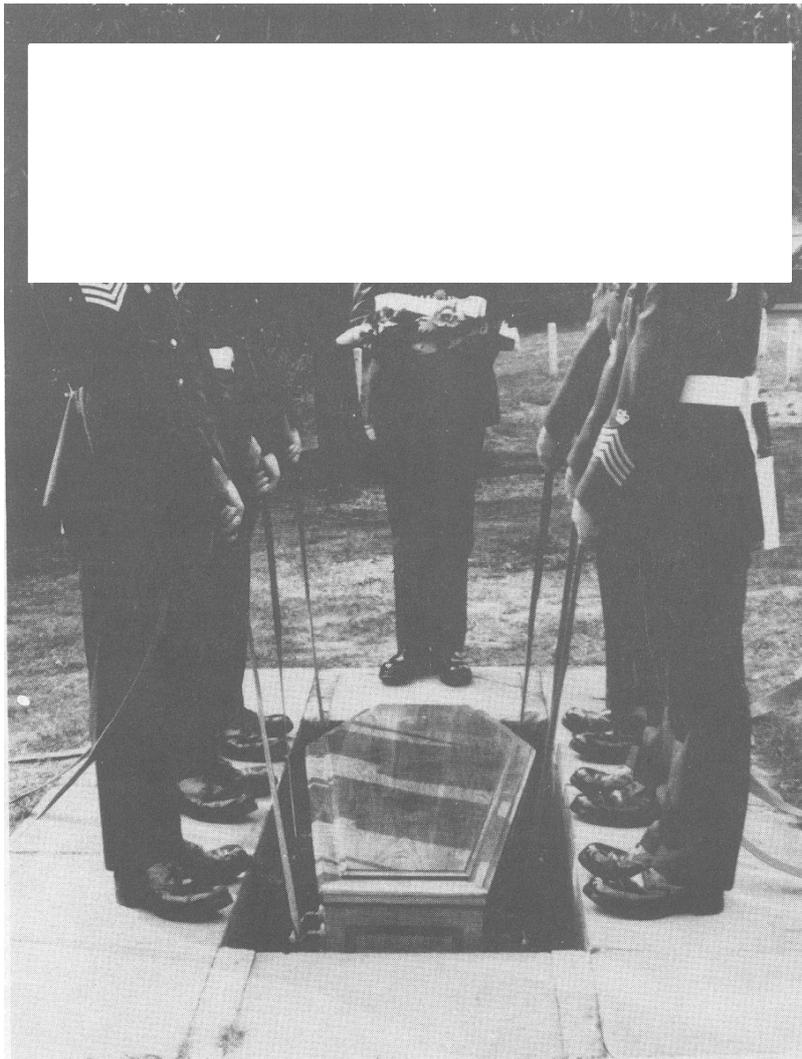


FIG 128 - LOWERING THE COFFIN



Amdt No. 1/Nov/91

PART 2 - FUNERAL RIFLE EXERCISES

LESSON 1 - THE REVERSE ARMS FROM THE SLOPE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0911. **Aim.** To teach the Reverse Arms from the Slope.

0912. **Timings.** One 30 minute period.

0913. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

0914. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).

0915. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0916. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.

0917. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

0918. **Revision.** Revise the Slope Arms from the High Port if appropriate.

Introduction

0919. *Explain:* The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Reverse Arms from the Slope Arms position. This movement is taught so that an individual or body of men can pay the correct compliment to a fallen comrade during a military funeral, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Amdt No. 1/Nov/91

Reverse Arms

0920. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, REVERSE - ARMS!", at the same time calling out the time.*

Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Reverse Arms - One

(see Fig 129)

0921. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, REVERSE ARMS - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE".*

Explain: On the command, force the right arm across the body to strike and grasp the rifle in the area of the small of the butt, then freeze in this position.

0922. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist and forearm do not move throughout the execution of the movement
- b. The right hand has a full grip in the area of the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front
- d. Call out "ONE".

0923. *Confirm by questions then adopt the position of the Slope and practise.*

Reverse Arms - Two

(see Fig 129)

0924. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle into the vertical position on the right side of the body, changing the grip of the right hand from a full grip to a 'Y' like grip. At the same time, release the grip on the butt plate and force the left hand across the body to grasp the stock, then freeze in this position.

0925. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical with the magazine square to the front, on the right side of the body.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' like grip in the area of the small of the butt, with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip of the stock just above the trigger guard with the back of the hand facing the chest and the left wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front
- e. Call out "TWO".

0926. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Reverse Arms - Three

(see Fig 129)

0927. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE”. Explain: On the command, rotate the rifle in front of the right shoulder, changing the grip of the right hand to a full grip. At the same time, change the grip of the left hand as the rifle rotates to a full grip on top of the stock, so that the back of the hand is facing forward, then freeze in this position.*

0928. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical on the right side of the body, the barrel is pointing downwards with the magazine to the rear and the butt plate in line with the right shoulder.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the stock with the back of the hand facing forward and the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front

0929. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise, calling out the time.*

Reverse Arms - Four

(see Fig 130)

0930. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - FOUR!”, at the same time calling out “FOUR”. Explain: On the command, force the rifle under the armpit under control of the right hand. At the same time, force the left arm behind the body to strike and grasp the barrel of the rifle in a full grip, then freeze in this position.*

0931. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is under the armpit at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the magazine in front of the shoulder and the toe of the butt in line with the right shoulder.
- b. The right hand retains its full grip on the small of the butt and the right wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the barrel, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front
- d. Call out “FOUR”.

0932. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise, calling out the time.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

0933. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement then practise the squad, ensuring they call out the regulation time, moving only on the “ONE’s”.*

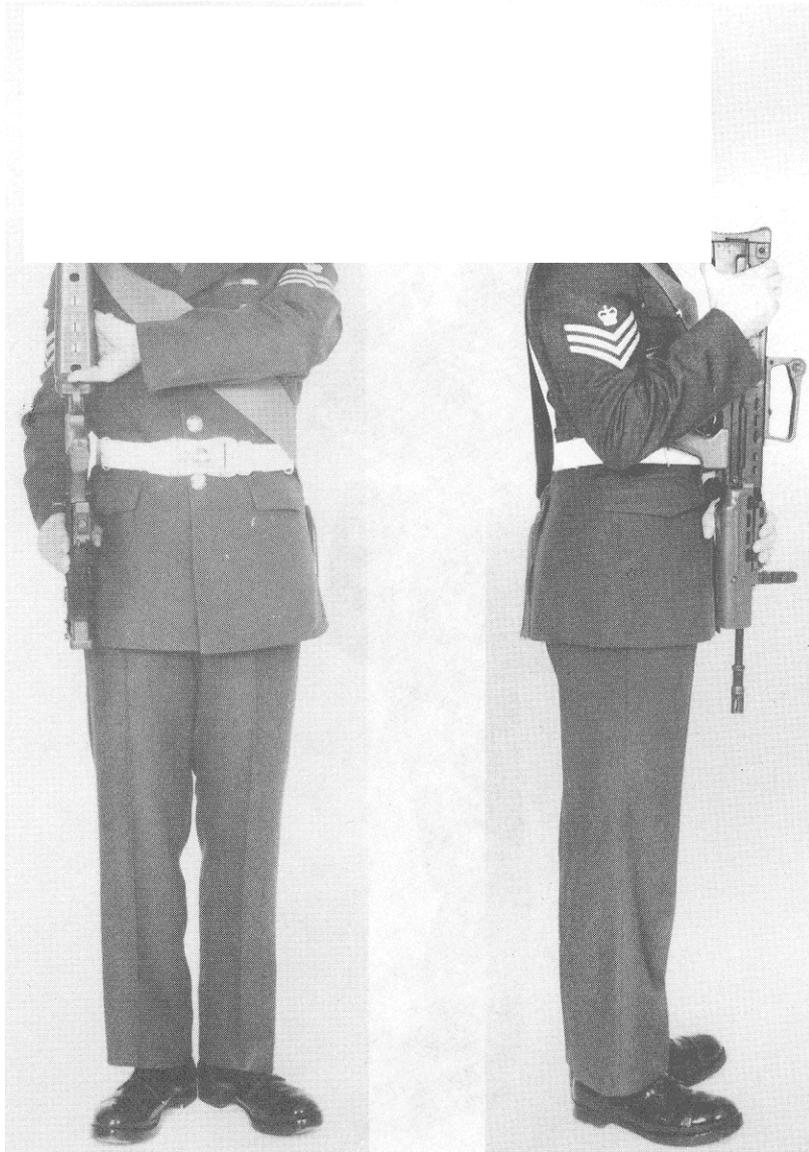
Conclusion

0934. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for measured, precise movements.
 - (2) A look forward to the Slope Arms from the Reverse to be taught in the next lesson.

0935-0936. *Reserved.*

FIG 129 - REVERSE ARMS



Squad Two

Squad Three

FIG 130 - REVERSE ARMS



Final Position

LESSON 2 - THE SLOPE ARMS FROM THE REVERSE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0937. **Aim.** To teach the Slope Arms from the Reverse.

0938. **Timings.** One 40 minute period.

0939. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

0940. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).

0941. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0942. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.

0943. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

0944. **Revision.** Revise the Reverse Arms from the Slope.

Introduction

0945. *Explain:* The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Slope Arms from the Reverse position on completion of a compliment in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Slope Arms

0946. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, SLOPE - ARMS!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Slope Arms - One

(see Fig 129)

0947. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, SLOPE ARMS - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle into the vertical position in the right side of the body under control of the right hand. At the same time, release the grip with the left hand and force it in front of the body to strike and grasp the stock, then freeze in this position.

0948. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical with the butt plate in line with the shoulder, the right hand retains the grip on the rifle with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- b. The left hand has a full grip on the stock with the back of the hand towards the body with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front
- d. Call out "ONE".

0949. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Slope, then Reverse Arms and practise.*

Slope Arms - Two

(see Fig 129)

0950. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain:* On the command, rotate the rifle so that the butt passes close to the body under control of the left hand. At the same time, change the grip with the right hand into a 'Y' like grip in the area of the small of the butt, then freeze in this position.

0951. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' like grip in the area of the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the stock just above the trigger guard with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "TWO".

0952. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Slope Arms - Three

0953. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle across the body on to the left shoulder under control of the right hand, changing the grip from a 'Y' like grip to a full grip. At the same time, release the grip on the stock with the left hand and force it across the body to strike the butt plate, then freeze in this position.

0954. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is on the left shoulder at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the magazine square to the left.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground. The left hand has a 'cup' like grip on the butt plate with the left elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "THREE".

0955. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Slope Arms - Four

0956. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - FOUR!", at the same time calling out "FOUR". Explain: On the command, force the right arm across the body by the shortest route and freeze in this position.*

0957. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The right arm is in the position of Attention whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "FOUR".

0958. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

0959. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement and then practise the squad, ensuring they call out the time "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE", etc, moving only on the "ONE's".*

Conclusion

0960. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need to strike, seize and grasp the rifle.
 - (2) A look forward to the Change Arms at the Reverse to be taught in the next lesson.

0961-0962. *Reserved.*

LESSON 3 - THE CHANGE ARMS AT THE REVERSE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0963. **Aim.** *To teach the Change Arms at the Reverse.*

0964. **Timings.** *One 40 minute period.*

0965. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

0966. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).*

0967. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0968. **Safety Precautions.** *Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.*

0969. **Squad Formation.** *Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.*

0970. **Revision.** *Revise the Slope Arms from the Reverse.*

Introduction

0971. *Explain:* The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to Change Arms when in the Reverse position, in order to rest a limb or provide a spectacle at a military display, in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.

Change Arms

0972. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, CHANGE - ARMS!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Change Arms - One

(see Fig 131)

0973. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, CHANGE ARMS - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle into the vertical position in front of the right shoulder under control of the right hand. At the same time, release the grip with the left hand and force the arm by the shortest route to the position of Attention at the left side, then freeze in this position.

0974. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical with the butt in line with the right shoulder.
- b. The right hand has a full grip in the area of the small of the butt, the right wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

0975. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Reverse Arms and practise.*

Change Arms - Two

(see Fig 131)

0976. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle across the body under control of the right hand. At the same time, force the left hand up to strike and grasp the small of the butt, then freeze in this position.

0977. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical with the butt plate in line with the left shoulder.
- b. The left hand has a full grip in the area of the small of the butt and the elbow is forced well in.
- c. The right hand has a full grip of the small of the butt just below the left hand with the wrist, the forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "TWO".

0978. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Change Arms - Three

(see Fig 132)

0979. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE". Explain: On the command, release the grip with the right hand to strike and grasp the barrel just above the stock in a full grip. At the same time, and under control of the left hand, force the rifle to the rear at an angle of 45 degrees.*

0980. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left hand has a full grip on the small of the butt and the left wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the barrel with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body remains erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "THREE".

0981. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

0982. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement then practise the squad, ensuring they call out the time, moving only on the "ONE's".*

Change Arms from the Left to Right Shoulder

0983. *The squad must now be taught how to Change Arms from the Left Shoulder to the Right. This is done by demonstration and explanation.*

Conclusion

0984. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for good timing to strike, seize and grasp the rifle.
 - (2) A look forward to the Lower on Your Arms Reversed, from the Present Arms position, to be taught in the next lesson.

0985-0986. *Reserved.*

Amdt No. 1/Nov/91

FIG 131 - CHANGE ARMS



One

Squad Two

Amdt No. 1/Nov/91

FIG 132 - CHANGE ARMS - FINAL POSITION



LESSON 4 - LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED FROM THE PRESENT ARMS

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

0987. **Aim.** To teach Lower on your Arms Reversed from the Present.
0988. **Timings.** One 40 minute period.
0989. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.
0990. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).
0991. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

0992. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.

0993. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

0994. **Revision.** Revise the Change Arms at the Reverse.

Introduction

0995. *Explain:* The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn the movement Lower on your Arms Reversed, carried out from the Present Arms position. This is taught to enable an individual or body of men to pay respects to a fallen comrade in a smart, uniform manner, at a military funeral. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Lower on your Arms Reversed

0996. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, LOWER ON YOUR ARMS - REVERSED!", at the same time calling out the time. Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Lower on your Arms - One

(see Fig 133)

0997. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, LOWER ON YOUR ARMS - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle upwards in front of the body under control of the left hand. At the same time, release the grip with the right hand and force it up to strike and grasp the pistol grip. At the same time, bend the right knee in front of the body until the thigh is parallel to the ground and the right foot is hanging naturally below the knee. Then force the foot down by the left and freeze in this position.

0998. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is in the front centre of the body with the magazine square to the front and the foresight in line with the eyes.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the pistol grip, the right wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip of the stock with the exception of the thumb, and the left wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- d. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees from a line, front centre of the body.
- e. Both knees are braced and the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- f. Call out "ONE".

0999. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Present Arms and practise.*

Lower on your Arms - Two

(see Fig 134)

09100. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out the time "ONE THOUSAND - TWO THOUSAND - THREE THOUSAND - FOUR THOUSAND - FIVE THOUSAND - SIX THOUSAND". Explain:* On the command, rotate the rifle in front of the body and out to the right hand side until it is level and in line with the right shoulder, under control of the right hand, extending the right arm to the fullest extent. At the same time, the left hand releases the grip on the stock, the fingers extend, and the hand travels down the left side of the rifle to the butt plate, judging the pause of 'One Thousand' to 'Six Thousand'. Then grasp the butt plate with the left hand and freeze in this position.

09101. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical in the right side of the body with the barrel pointing downwards and the magazine to the rear.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the right arm at its fullest extent, the right wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.

- c. The left hand has a 'cup' like grip on the butt plate with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out the time, "ONE THOUSAND - TWO THOUSAND - THREE THOUSAND - FOUR THOUSAND - FIVE THOUSAND - SIX THOUSAND".

09102. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Lower on your Arms - Three

(see Fig 135)

09103. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out the time "ONE THOUSAND - TWO THOUSAND - THREE THOUSAND - FOUR THOUSAND". Explain: On the command, lower the head within the timing and freeze in this position.*

09104. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, both hands, wrists, forearms and elbows do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The head is lowered so that the eyes are looking down onto the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front
- d. Call out the time, "ONE THOUSAND - TWO THOUSAND - THREE THOUSAND - FOUR THOUSAND".

09105. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

09106. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement and then practise the squad, ensuring they call out the time "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE THOUSAND - TWO THOUSAND - THREE THOUSAND - FOUR THOUSAND - FIVE THOUSAND - SIX THOUSAND - TWO THREE - ONE THOUSAND - TWO THOUSAND - THREE THOUSAND - FOUR THOUSAND".*

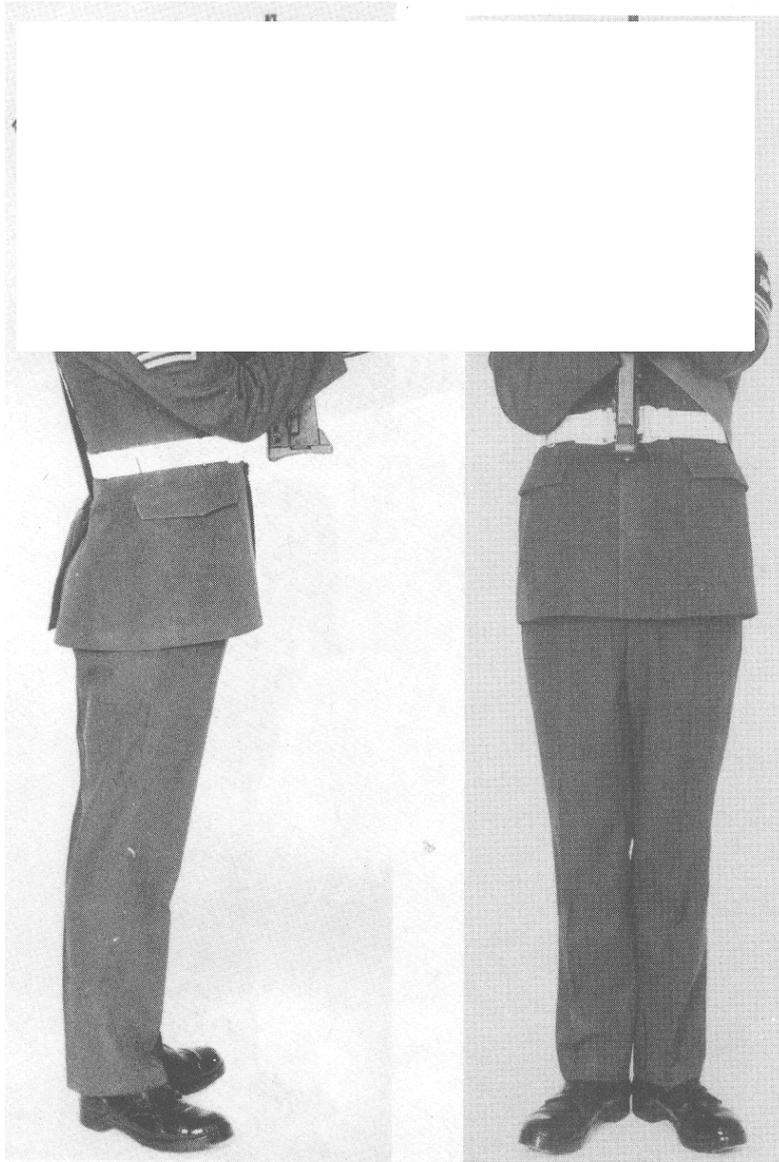
Conclusion

09107. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for slow, deliberate movement to show respect.
 - (2) A look forward to the Present Arms from the Lower on your Arms Reverse, to be taught in the next lesson.

09108-09109. *Reserved.*

FIG 133 - LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED - ONE



Side View

Front View

FIG 134 - LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED - SQUAD TWO - MID MOVEMENT

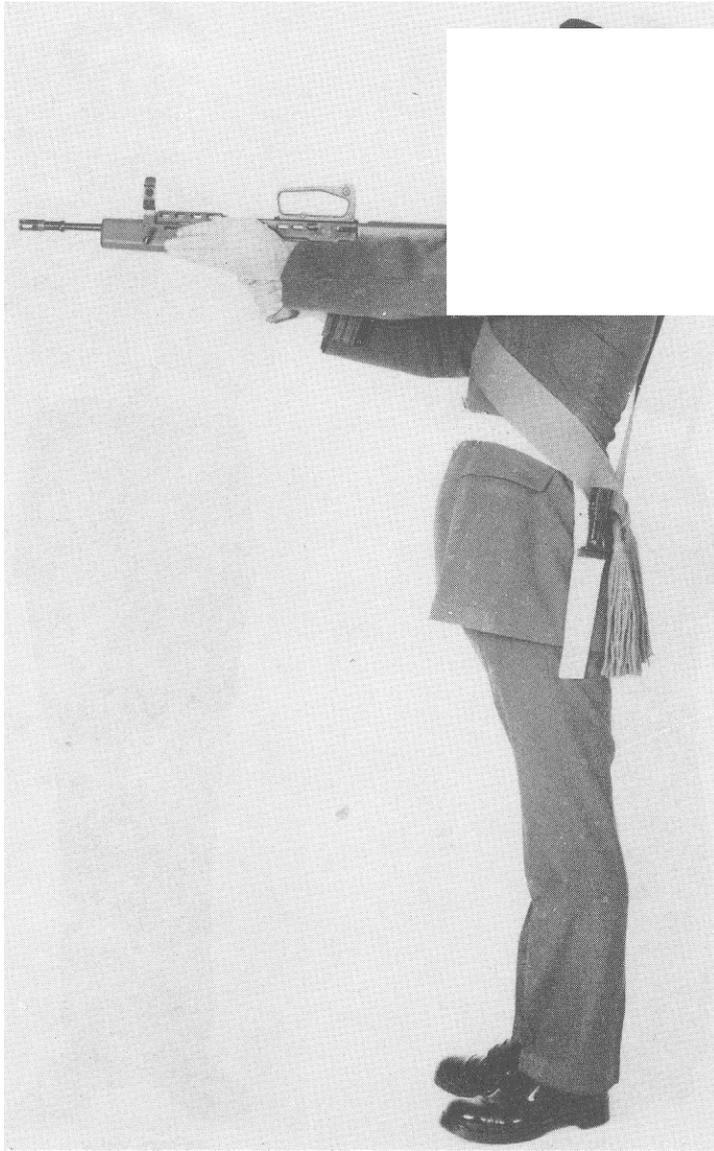
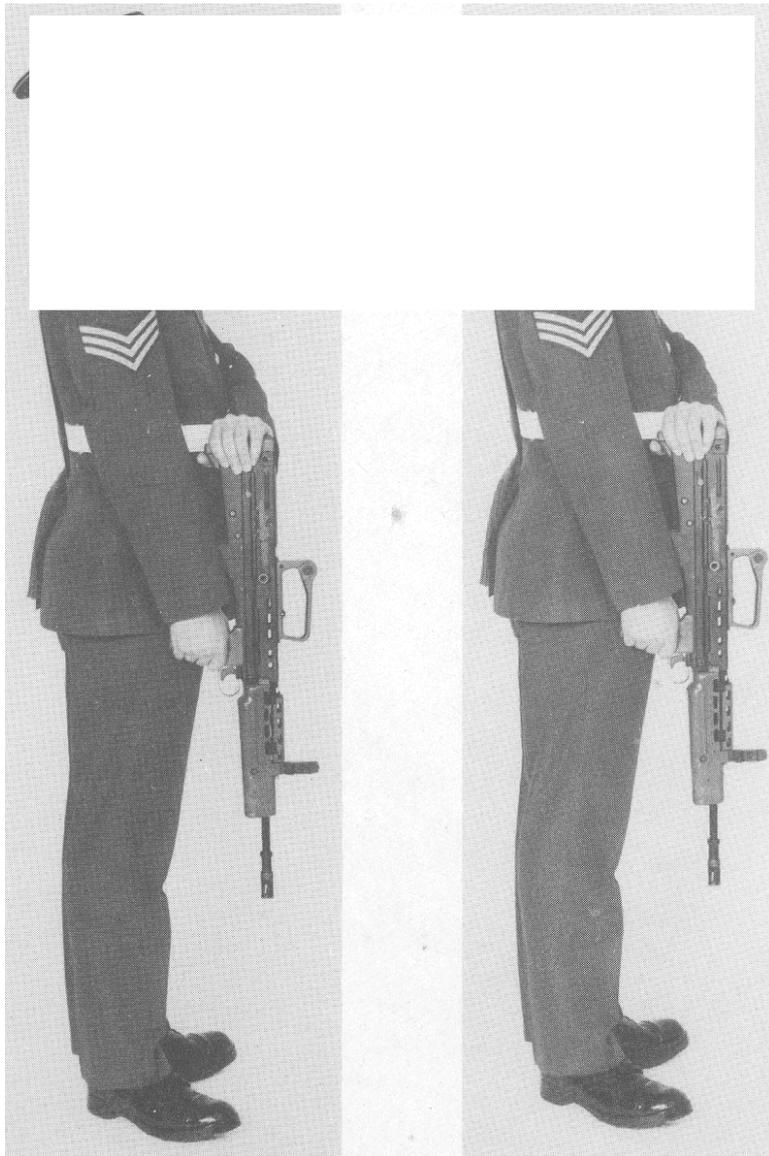


FIG 135 - LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED



Squad Three

Final Position

LESSON 5 - THE PRESENT ARMS FROM THE LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

09110. **Aim.** To teach the Present Arms from the Lower on your Arms Reversed.

09111. **Timings.** One 40 minute period.

09112. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

09113. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).

09114. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

09115. **Safety Precautions.** Normal safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.

09116. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

09117. **Revision.** Revise the Lower on your Arms Reversed movement.

Introduction

09118. *Explain:* The next stage in rifle exercises is to learn how to adopt the Present Arms position from the position of Lower on your Arms Reversed. This is taught to enable an individual or body of men to pay the full compliment at a military funeral. *Order the squad to adopt the Relax position and watch your demonstration.*

Present Arms

09119. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, PARTY, PRESENT - ARMS!". Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken into numbered parts.

Party

(see Fig 136)

09120. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS - PARTY!". Explain:* On the command, raise the head to the position of Attention and freeze in this position. Do not call out.

09121. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, right and left arm do not move throughout the movement and the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- b. Do not call out.

09122. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Lower on your Arms Reversed and practise.*

Present Arms - One

(see Fig 136)

09123. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, PRESENT ARMS - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, rotate the rifle to the front centre of the body under control of the right hand. At the same time, release the grip with the left hand and force it back across the body to strike and grasp the stock. Then freeze in this position.

09124. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is in the front centre of the body with the magazine square to the front, the right hand retains its full grip on the pistol grip with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- b. The left hand has a full grip on the stock, with the exception of the thumb, just above the trigger guard, with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

09125. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Present Arms - Two

(see Fig 42)

09126. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle down the front centre of the body under control of the left hand. At the same time, change the grip of the right hand to a 'Y' grip in the area of the small of the butt. At the same time, bend the right knee in front of the body until the thigh is parallel to the ground and the right foot hangs naturally below the knee. Then force the right foot down behind the left foot and freeze in this position.

09127. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is in the front centre of the body with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' grip in the area of the small of the butt, and the right arm is at its fullest extent with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the stock with the exception of the thumb, which is running up the left side of the stock just above the trigger guard, with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees from a line down the front centre of the body, with the right instep touching and against the left heel.
- e. Both knees are braced, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- f. Call out "TWO".

09128. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

09129. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement and then practise the squad, ensuring they call out the time "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE" for the second and third movements, moving only on the "ONE's".*

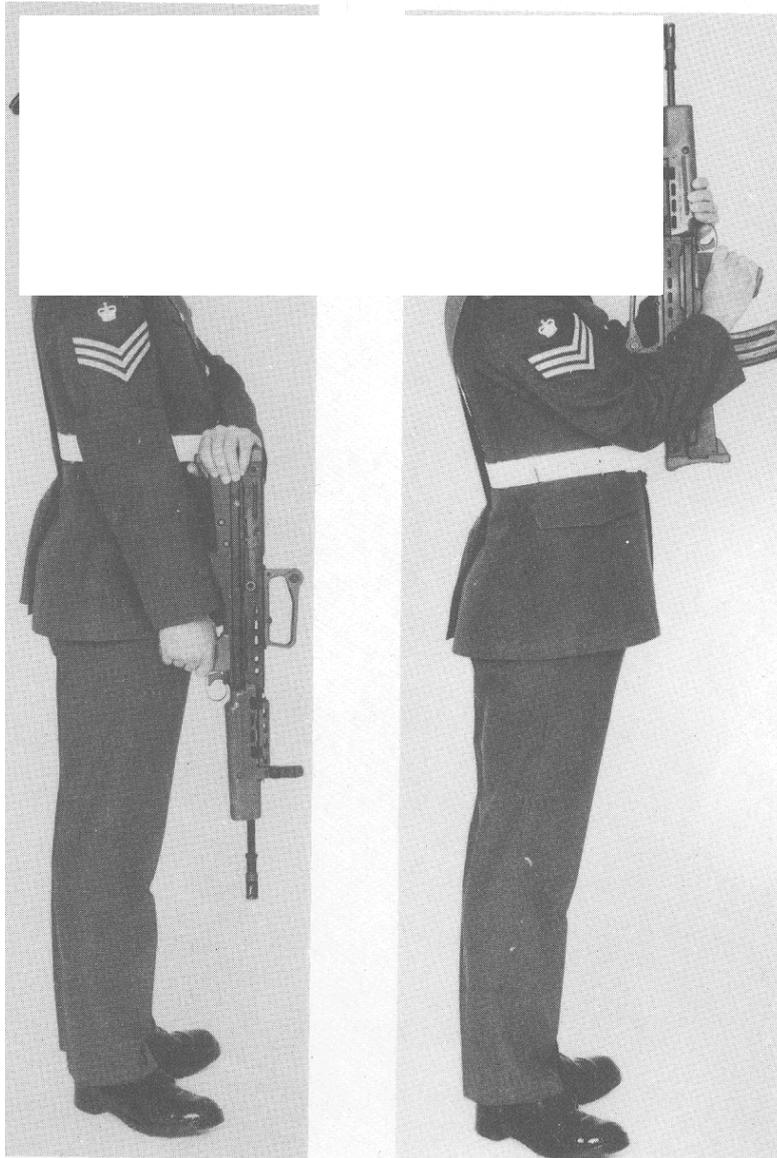
Conclusion

09130. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practise to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for good timing and bearing to imply respect.
 - (2) Include a look forward to the final lesson on Volleys with Blank Cartridges.

09131-09132. *Reserved.*

FIG 136 - PRESENT ARMS FROM LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED



Party

Present Arms - One

LESSON 6 - VOLLEYS WITH BLANK CARTRIDGES

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

09133. **Aim.** To teach how to fire a volley of blank cartridges from the position of the Slope and return to the Slope.

09134. **Timings.** One 40 minute period.

09135. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

09136. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).

09137. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

09138. **Safety Precautions.** Normal/ safety precautions should be carried out when the squad is formed up.

09139. **Squad Formation.** Squad stood properly At Ease, with their rifles, in a half circle.

09140. **Revision.** Revise the Present Arms from the Lower on Your Arms Reversed.

Introduction

09141. *Explain:* The final stage in Funeral Rifle Exercises is to learn how to fire a volley of blank cartridges and return to the Slope Arms position. This is taught to enable a Firing Party at a military funeral to pay this compliment to the deceased.

Volleys with Blank Cartridges - Load

09142. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, JUDGING THE TIME, VOLLEYS WITH BLANK CARTRIDGES - LOAD!". Explain:* For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Volleys with Blank Cartridges - Squad One

09143. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, VOLLEYS WITH BLANK CARTRIDGES, SQUAD - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, force the right arm across the body by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the area of the small of the butt, then freeze in this position.

09144. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left hand and the rifle do not move throughout this movement.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow straight and parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

09145. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Slope Arms and practise.*

Volleys with Blank Cartridges - Two

09146. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain:* On the command, force the rifle under control of the right hand across the body to the right shoulder. At the same time, the left hand releases its grip on the butt plate to strike, seize and grasp the stock in a full grip, whilst the right hand changes to a 'Y' like grip. Then freeze in this position.

09147. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical in the right shoulder with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' like grip on the small of the butt.
- c. The left hand has a full grip of the stock with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "TWO".

09148. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Volleys with Blank Cartridges - Three

09149. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE" (see Fig 137). Explain:* On the command, force the rifle forward in front of the right shoulder under control of the left hand. At the same time, release the grip with the right hand to strike, seize and grasp the pistol grip. Bend the left leg sufficiently to take a 750 mm (30 inches) pace to the front and freeze in this position.

09150. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground with both knees braced and the body weight forward over the left leg.
- b. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt placed on the right hip.
- c. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger, which is placed on the trigger guard.
- d. The left hand retains its full grip on the stock with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front
- e. Call out "THREE".

09151. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Volleys with Blank Cartridges - Four

09152. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - FOUR!", at the same time calling out "FOUR". Explain: On the command, the right hand is forced by the shortest route to strike the area of the cocking handle with the palm of the hand. Freeze in this position.*

09153. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The fingers of the right hand are extended along the rifle with the thumb curled around the cocking lever. The wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "FOUR".

09154. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Volleys with Blank Cartridges - Five

09155. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - FIVE!", at the same time calling out "FIVE". Explain: On the command, the right hand cocks the rifle, ensuring that the working parts are forced fully to the rear, and allowed to come forward. The right hand resumes its position after tapping the cocking handle forward. Freeze in this position.*

09156. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The fingers of the right hand are extended along the rifle, the wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "FIVE".

09157. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Volleys with Blank Cartridges - Six

09158. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - SIX!", at the same time calling out "SIX". Explain: On the command, the right hand is forced by the shortest possible route to strike, seize and grasp the pistol grip in a full grip, then freeze in this position.*

09159. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger, which is placed on the trigger guard.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "SIX".

09160. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Present

09161. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command “PRESENT!”.*

Explain: On the command, the rifle is forced up until the butt plate is on the right shoulder (see Fig 138). At the same time, the index finger moves the safety catch into the ‘Fire’ position and is then placed inside the trigger guard ready to squeeze the trigger. Freeze in this position.

09162. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt plate resting on top of the right shoulder.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger which is curled around the trigger. The wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- c. The left hand, where physically possible, maintains its full grip of the stock.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. The squad will not call out.

09163. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Fire

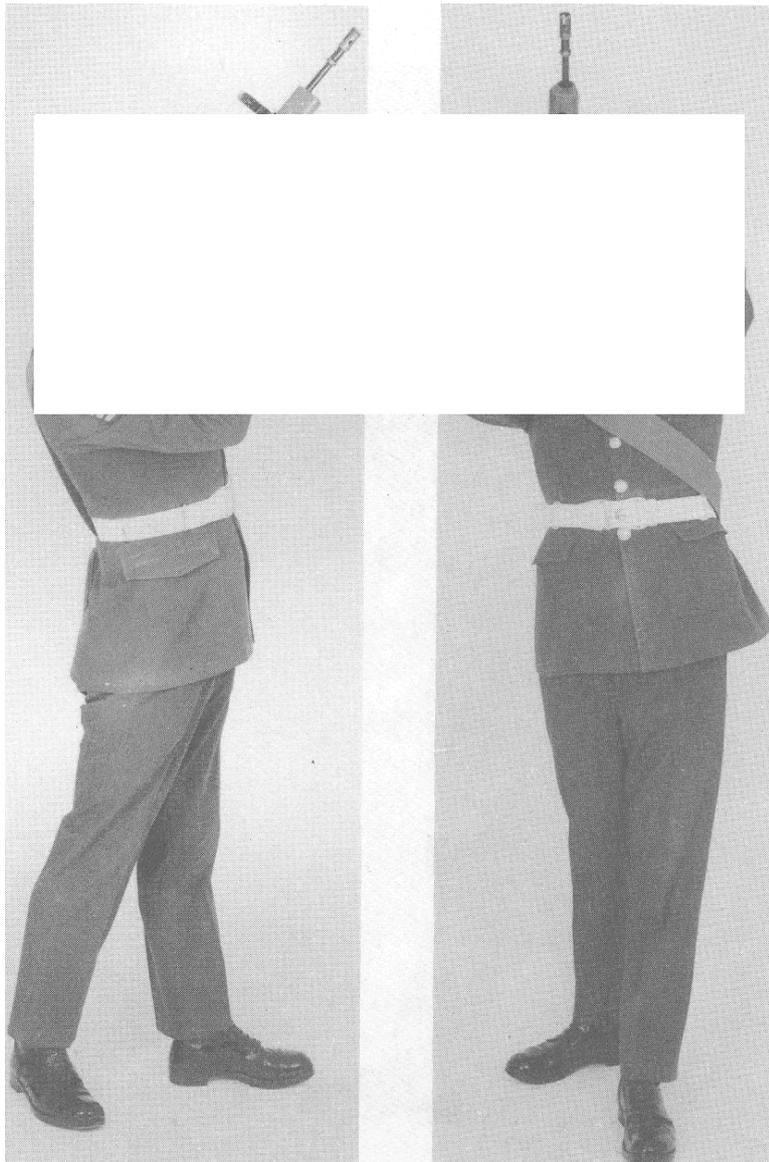
09164. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command “FIRE!”.* *Explain:*

On the command, squeeze the trigger then place the index finger along the trigger guard.

FIG 137 - VOLLEYS WITH BLANK CARTRIDGES - SQUAD THREE



FIG 138 - VOLLEYS WITH BLANK CARTRIDGES - PRESENT



Side View

Front View

09165. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, right hand, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow maintain their position throughout the movement.
- b. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. The squad will not call out.

Reload

09166. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command "RELOAD!". Explain: For instructional purposes the movement is broken down into numbered parts.*

Reload - One

09167. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain: On the command, force the rifle down the right side of the body to adopt the On Guard position on the right hip. Freeze in this position.*

09168. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt placed on the right hip.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger which is placed on the trigger guard.
- c. The left hand retains its full grip on the stock with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

09169. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Reload - Two

09170. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, the right hand is forced by the shortest route to strike the area of the cocking handle with the palm of the hand. Freeze in this position.*

09171. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The fingers of the right hand are extended along the rifle with the thumb curled around the cocking lever. The wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "TWO".

09172. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Reload - Three

09173. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE". Explain: On the command, the right hand cocks the rifle ensuring the working parts are forced fully to the rear and allowed to come forward. The hand then resumes its position. Freeze in this position.*

09174. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The fingers of the right hand are extended along the rifle with the thumb curled around the lever. The wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "THREE".

09175. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Reload - Four

09176. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - FOUR!", at the same time calling out "FOUR". Explain: On the command, the right hand is forced by the shortest possible route to strike, seize and grasp the pistol grip in a full grip. Freeze in this position.*

09177. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger which is placed on the trigger guard.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "FOUR".

09178. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Present - Fire - Reload - Present - Fire

09179. This movement is revised as laid down in paragraphs above.

Unload

09180. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command "UNLOAD!".*

Explain: For instructional purposes this movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Unload - One

09181. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, the rifle is forced down to the right hip. Freeze in this position.

09182. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt placed on the right hip.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger which is placed on the trigger guard.
- c. The left hand has a full grip of the stock with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

09183. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Unload - Two

09184. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain:* On the command, the head and eyes are lowered sufficiently to look at the rifle. At the same time, the left hand is forced by the shortest route to the safety catch and with the thumb, force the safety catch to the 'Safe' position. At the same time, with the right hand, rotate the rifle sufficiently so the safety catch is visible. Freeze in this position.

09185. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt in the right hip.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger which is placed on the trigger guard.
- c. The left hand is in the area of the safety catch with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- d. With the exception of the head and eyes the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "TWO".

09186. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Unload - Three

09187. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!", at the same time calling out "THREE". Explain:* On the command, the left hand is forced by the shortest possible route to strike, seize and grasp the stock in a full grip. At the same time, the head and eyes resume the position of Attention.

09188. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt placed on the right hip.
- b. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger which is placed on the trigger guard.
- c. The left hand has a full grip of the stock with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in, whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "THREE".

09189. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Unload - Four

09190. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - FOUR!", at the same time calling out "FOUR". Explain: On the command, under the control of the left hand, the rifle is forced to a vertical position on the right side of the body. At the same time, the right hand releases its grip of the pistol grip and is forced by the shortest possible route to strike, seize and grasp the small of the butt in a 'Y' like grip. At the same time, the left knee is bent sufficiently to allow the left foot to resume the position of Attention. Freeze in this position.*

09191. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle is vertical in front of the right shoulder with the magazine square to the front.
- b. The right hand has a 'Y' like grip on the small of the butt with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
- c. The left hand has a full grip on the stock of the rifle just above the trigger guard, the wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in.
- d. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 30 degrees from the front centre of the body. Both knees are braced whilst the remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "FOUR".

09192. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Unload - Five

09193. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - FIVE!", at the same time calling out "FIVE". Explain: On the command, force the rifle up and across the body by the shortest route and place it on the left shoulder under control of the right hand. At the same time, change the grip of the right hand to a full grip, whilst the left hand releases its full grip and is forced down on the rifle by the shortest possible route to strike, seize and grasp the butt plate with a 'cup' like grip. Freeze in this position.*

09194. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The stock of the rifle is in the left shoulder with the magazine to the left. The left hand has a 'cup' like grip on the butt plate with the left wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground, the left elbow forced well in to the body.
- b. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt, with the wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "FIVE".

09195. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Unload - Six

09196. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - SIX!", at the same time calling out "SIX". Explain: On the command, force the right arm down by the shortest possible route to resume the correct position of Attention. Freeze in this position.*

09197. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The rifle, left wrist, forearm and elbow do not move during the movement.
- b. Call out "SIX".

09198. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration and Practice

09199. *The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement and then practise the squad, ensuring that they call out the time "ONE - TWO THREE - ONE", etc, at the regulation rate of 40 drill movements to the minute.*

Instructor's Notes

09200. *A total of three rounds is always fired.*

09201. *Emphasize that should the rifle malfunction for any reason the soldier should continue to carry out the drill movements.*

09202. *Blank rounds should be issued for at least one rehearsal.*

Conclusion

09203. ***End of Lesson Drill.***

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and practice to confirm as time permits.*
- b. *Safety precautions.*
- c. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) *The need for good timing and bearing to imply respect.*
 - (2) *State that this lesson completes the series of rifle exercises.*

09204-09205. *Reserved.*

PART 3 - FUNERAL SWORD DRILL

LESSON 1 - THE REVERSE SWORDS FROM THE CARRY

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

09206. ***Aim.*** *To teach the Reverse Swords from the Carry.*

09207. ***Timings.*** *One 20 minute period.*

09208. ***Method.*** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

09209. ***Dress and Stores.*** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.*

09210. ***Preparation.*** *Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

09211. ***Squad Formation.*** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.*

09212. ***Revision.*** *Revise Saluting at the Halt then return swords to their scabbards.*

Introduction

09213. ***Explain:*** *The next stage in sword exercises is to learn the Reverse Swords from the Carry. The movement is taught to enable an individual to Reverse Swords when in attendance at a military funeral, when paying respects to a fallen comrade, in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Reverse Swords from the Carry

09214. ***The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "REVERSE - ARMS!". Explain:*** *For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts. Emphasize that the movements are carried out working on the third and fourth movements of the rifle drill.*

Reverse Arms - One

09215. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “**SWORD EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, REVERSE ARMS - ONE!**”, at the same time calling out “ONE”.*

Explain: On the command, twist the right wrist and dropping the point of the sword to the left front then freeze in this position.

09216. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The edge of the sword is uppermost, the hilt on top and in front of the right shoulder.
- b. The fingers of the right hand are together and straight and to the right of the handle, thumb to the left.
- c. The back of the hand to the right and the right elbow against the side, with the sword at an angle of 45 degrees.
- d. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out “ONE”.

09217. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Draw Swords and from the Carry position practise.*

Reverse Arms - Two

(see Fig 139)

09218. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “**SQUAD - TWO!**”, at the same time calling out “TWO”. *Explain:* On the command, force the sword under the right armpit, ensuring the right elbow is forced to the side. Seize the blade with the left hand then freeze in this position. Call out the time.*

09219. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left hand comes from behind the back, in line with the waist belt, the back of the hand underneath.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out “TWO”.

09220. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise, calling out the time.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

09221. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement then practise the squad, who should not now call out. Remind the squad that the sword exercise must be accurate and graceful and is carried out on the third and fourth movements of the Reverse Arms with the rifle.*

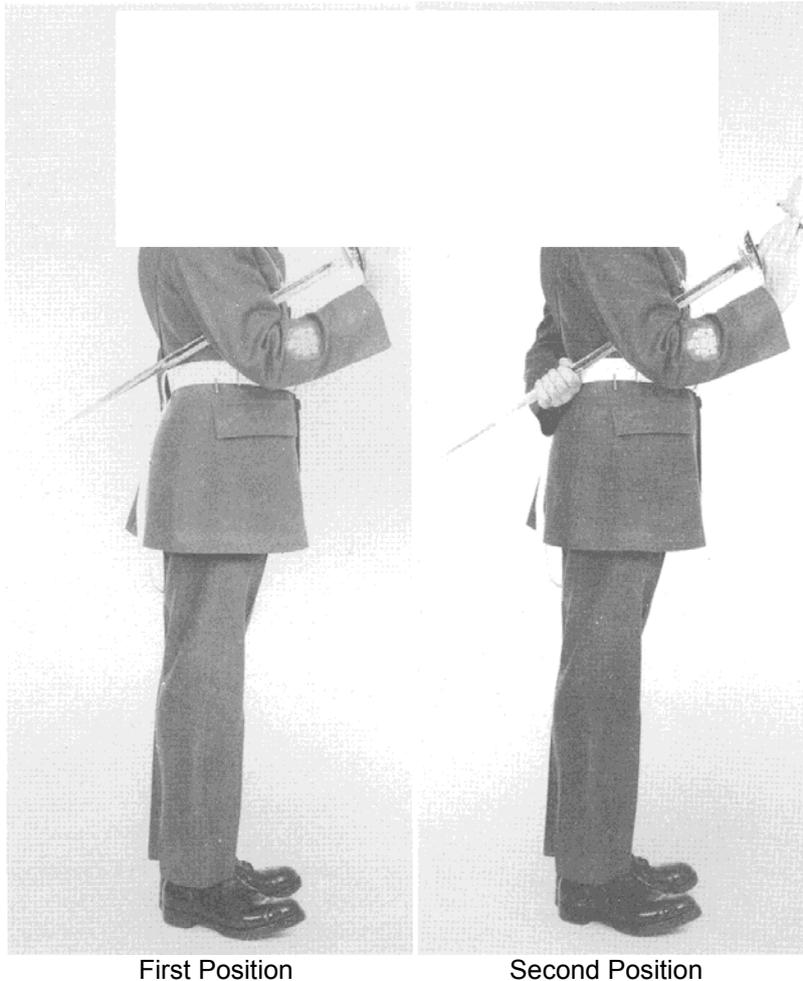
Conclusion

09222. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for good timing.
 - (2) A look forward to the Carry Swords from the Reverse, to be taught in the next lesson.

09223-09224. *Reserved.*

FIG 139 - REVERSE SWORDS FROM THE CARRY



First Position

Second Position

LESSON 2 - THE CARRY SWORDS FROM THE REVERSE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

09225. **Aim.** To teach the Carry Swords from the Reverse.

09226. **Timings.** One 20 minute period.

09227. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

09228. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.

09229. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

09230. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.

09231. **Revision.** Revise the Reverse Swords then return swords to their scabbards.

Introduction

09232. **Explain:** The next stage in sword exercises is to learn how to Carry Swords from the Reverse. The movement is taught to enable an individual to return to the Carry having paid his respects to a

fallen comrade at a military funeral in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Carry Swords

09233. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "CARRY - SWORDS!". Explain: For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.*

Carry Swords - One

09234. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SWORD EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, CARRY SWORDS - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain: On the command, release the grip with the left hand and return it to the left side of the body, then freeze in this position.*

09235. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left hand returns to the left side and resumes the correct position of Attention.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "ONE".

09236. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Attention, Draw Swords and from the Reverse position practise, calling out the time.*

Carry Swords - Two

09237. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, the sword is swung forward and to the left, to resume the correct position of the Carry, then freeze in this position.*

09238. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The sword is swung forward with a circular movement and kept close to the body.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out "TWO".

09239. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise, calling out the time.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

09240. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement then practise the squad, who do not call out the time.*

Conclusion

09241. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The importance of timing if done in conjunction with rifle drill.
 - (2) A look forward to the Change Swords at the Reverse, to be taught in the next lesson.

09242-09243. *Reserved.*

LESSON 3 - THE CHANGE SWORDS AT THE REVERSE

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

09244. **Aim.** *To teach the Change Swords at the Reverse.*

09245. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

09246. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

09247. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.

09248. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

09249. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.

09250. **Revision.** Revise the Reverse and Carry Swords then return swords to their scabbards.

Introduction

09251. **Explain:** The next stage in sword exercises is to learn the Change Swords at the Reverse. The movement is taught to enable an individual to change swords, to rest a limb, in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.

Change Swords

09252. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**CHANGE - ARMS!**", as for rifle drill. **Explain:** For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.

Change Arms - One

(see Fig 140)

09253. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**SWORD EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, CHANGE ARMS - ONE!**", at the same time calling out "ONE". **Explain:** On the cautionary command "**CHANGE**", change the grip of the right hand by placing it underneath the sword handle. Then on the executive command "**ARMS!**", the sword is brought to the vertical position and the left hand is forced to the left side of the body, then freeze in this position.

09254. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The left hand is now in the correct position of Attention on the left side of the body.
- b. The thumb of the right hand is to the left and the basket of the sword is to the front.
- c. The pommel of the handle is in line with the shoulder.
- d. Call out "ONE".

09255. Confirm by questions then order the squad to Attention, Draw Swords and Reverse Swords, then practise.

Change Arms - Two

(see Fig 140)

09256. The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "**SQUAD - TWO!**", at the same time calling out "TWO". **Explain:** On the command, the sword is passed across the body into the left hand, then freeze in this position.

09257. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The right hand relaxes its position on the handle of the sword.
- b. The thumb of the left hand is to the left, the fingers are curled around the handle, and the basket of the sword is facing the front.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "TWO".

09258. Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.

Change Arms - Three

(see Fig 141)

09259. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command “SQUAD - THREE!”, at the same time calling out “THREE”. Explain:* On the command, the sword is rotated inwards and forced under the left armpit. The right hand is forced to the rear to grasp the blade and after a pause, the grip of the left hand is changed by placing it on top of the sword handle.

09260. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The back of the right hand is underneath and the sword is at an angle of 45 degrees.
- b. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- c. Call out “THREE”.

09261. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

09262. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement then practise the squad, who do not now call out the timing. Explain:* The Change Arms with the sword should be carried out during the same movement with the rifle.

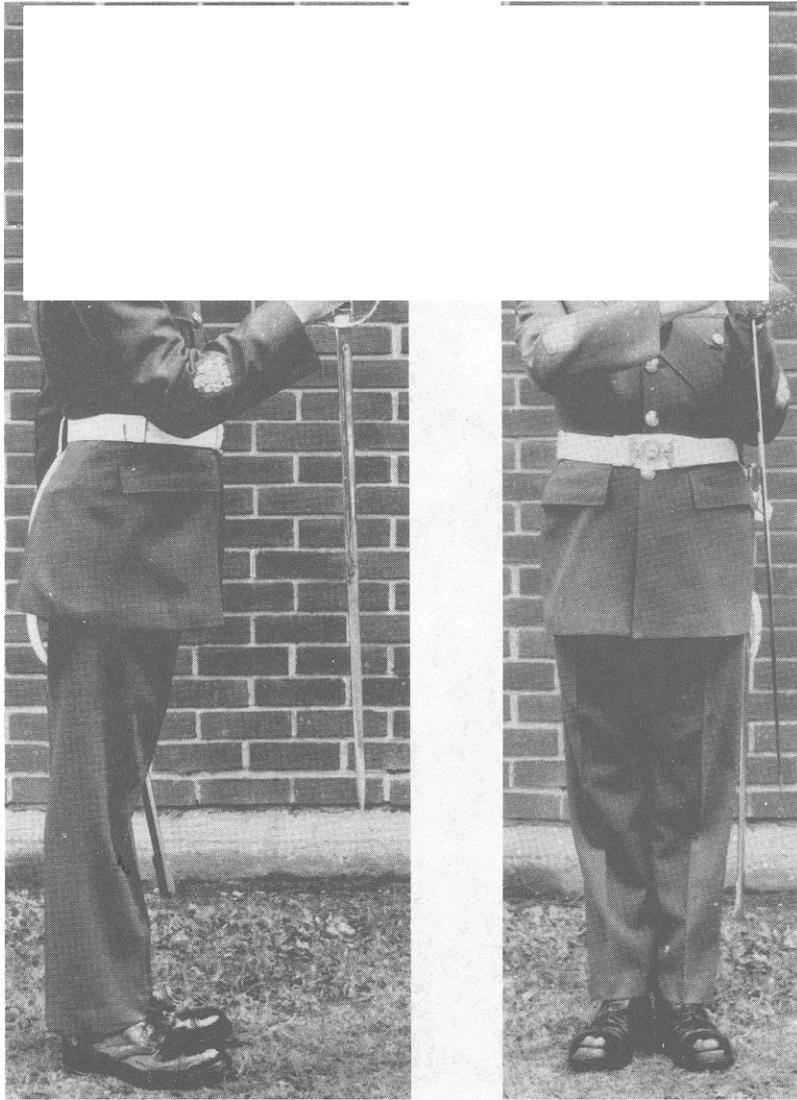
Conclusion

09263. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for coordination and graceful movement with the rifle movements.
 - (2) A look forward to the Lower on Your Swords Reversed from the Present, to be taught in the next lesson.

09264-09265. *Reserved.*

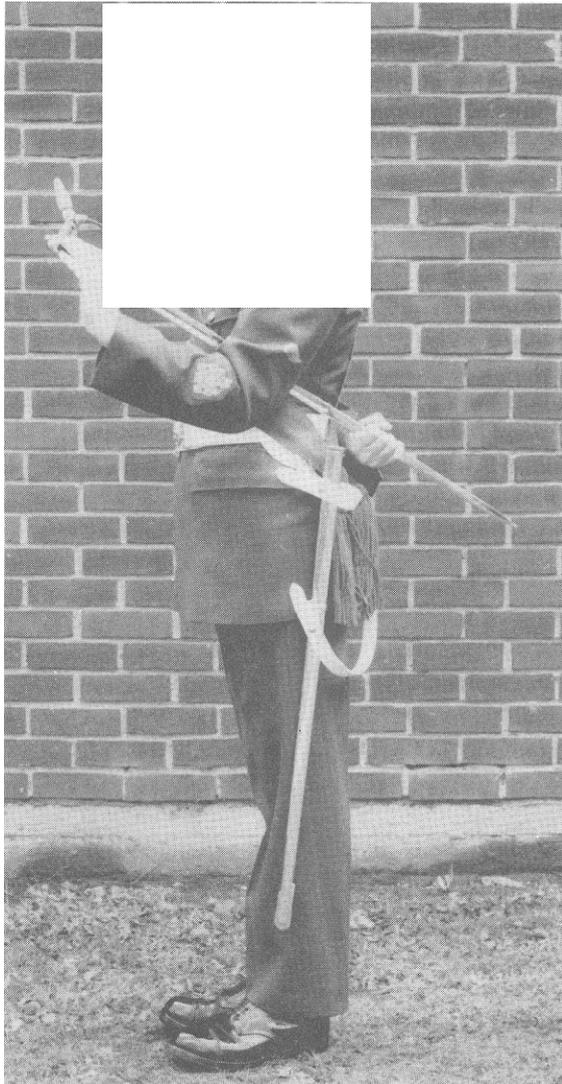
FIG 140 - CHANGE SWORDS AT THE REVERSE



One

Squad Two

FIG 141 - CHANGE SWORDS AT THE REVERSE - FINAL POSITION



LESSON 4 - THE LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS REVERSED FROM THE PRESENT

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

09266. **Aim.** To teach the Lower on Your Swords Reversed from the Present.

09267. **Timings.** One 20 minute period.

09268. **Method.** A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.

09269. **Dress and Stores.** No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.

09270. **Preparation.** Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

09271. **Squad Formation.** The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.

09272. **Revision.** Revise the Reverse and Change Swords then return swords to their scabbards.

Introduction

09273. *Explain:* The next stage in sword exercises is to learn the Lower on Your Swords Reversed from the Present. The movement is taught to enable an individual to pay a compliment to a fallen comrade, at a military funeral, in a smart, uniform manner. *Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Rest on Swords Reversed from the Present

09274. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS - REVERSED!". Explain:* The movement is carried out from the Present in time with the rifle movement. For instructional purposes, it is broken down into numbered parts.

Lower on Your Swords Reversed - One

09275. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SWORD EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS REVERSED - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain:* On the command, the sword is brought to the position of the Recover, then freeze in this position.

09276. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The tip of the sword is uppermost, edge to the left, the hilt is in line with the mouth, fingers round the handle.
- b. The thumb is pointing upwards and the back of the hand to the front.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

09277. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Draw Swords, then Present Arms and practise.*

Lower on Your Swords Reversed - Two

09278. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out the timing "ONE THOUSAND - TWO THOUSAND - THREE THOUSAND - FOUR THOUSAND - FIVE THOUSAND - SIX THOUSAND". Explain:* On the command, the point of the sword is allowed to fall forward, and placed in between the feet and in line with the tip of the toes. The grip of the right hand is changed so that it rests on theommel. The left hand is placed on top of the right on the count of "SIX THOUSAND". Both elbows are kept down.

09279. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. As the point of the sword is falling forward, the hilt is rotated to the right so that the edge of the sword is to the right.
- b. The movement is carried out over six seconds.
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out the time.

09280. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Lower on Your Swords Reversed - Three

09281. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - THREE!". Explain:* On the command, the chin is lowered on to the breast, then freeze in this position.

09282. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The sword and elbows do not move.
- b. The chin is lowered on the count of "FOUR THOUSAND".
- c. The remainder of the body is held erect and square to the front.

09283. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

09284. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement then practise the squad, who do not now call out the timing. Emphasize: All the movements are carried out with dignity, and the second and third movements must not be hurried.*

Conclusion

09285. End of Lesson Drill

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) *The need for graceful movement in time with the rifle drill.*
 - (2) *A look forward to the Present from the Lower on Your Swords Reversed, to be taught in the next lesson.*

09286-09287. *Reserved.*

LESSON 5 - THE PRESENT FROM THE LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS REVERSED

A. INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

09288. **Aim.** *To teach the Present from the Lower on Your Swords Reversed.*

09289. **Timings.** *One 20 minute period.*

09290. **Method.** *A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson.*

09291. **Dress and Stores.** *No. 2 Dress Drill Order or Working Dress, swords and sword belts.*

09292. **Preparation.** *Select an area on the barrack square or on firm, level ground. If indoors there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.*

B. CONDUCT OF THE LESSON

Preliminaries

09293. **Squad Formation.** *The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line, or half circle, swords in their scabbards.*

09294. **Revision.** *Revise the Lower on Your Swords Reversed then return swords to their scabbards.*

Introduction

09295. **Explain:** *The next stage in sword exercises is to learn the Present from Lower on Your Swords Reversed. The movement is taught to enable an individual to return to the Present having paid a compliment to a fallen comrade, at a military funeral, in a smart, uniform manner. Order the squad to "Stand Easy" and watch your demonstration.*

Present from Lower on Your Swords Reversed

09296. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "PARTY, PRESENT - ARMS!" as for the rifle movement, with which this sword movement is carried out. Explain: For instructional purposes, the movement is broken down into numbered parts.*

Party - Present Arms - One

09297. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "PARTY, PRESENT ARMS - ONE!", at the same time calling out "ONE". Explain: On the command "PARTY!", the chin is raised from the chest. On the command "PRESENT ARMS - ONE!", the sword is raised to the position of the Recover. At the same time, the left arm resumes its correct position of Attention at the left side of the body, then freeze in this position.*

09298. **Points to Note.** *These are:*

- a. *The tip of the sword is uppermost, the edge to the left and the hilt in line with the mouth.*

- b. The fingers are curled around the handle, the thumb pointing upwards.
- c. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- d. Call out "ONE".

09299. *Confirm by questions then order the squad to Draw Swords, Present Arms and Lower on Your Swords Reversed then practise.*

Present Arms - Two

09300. *The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the words of command "SQUAD - TWO!", at the same time calling out "TWO". Explain: On the command, the sword is brought from the position of the Recover to the correct position of the Salute, then freeze in this position.*

09301. **Points to Note.** These are:

- a. The sword is now in the correct position of the Salute.
- b. The edge of the sword is to the left, the point 300 mm (12 inches) from the ground, and in front of the right shoulder.
- c. The thumb is flat on the side of the handle. The hilt is behind and touching the right thigh.
- d. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
- e. Call out "TWO".

09302. *Confirm by questions then adopt the last position and practise.*

Final Demonstration of the Complete Movement

09303. *The instructor is to give a final demonstration of the movement then practise the squad, who do not now call out the timing. Emphasize: The vital need for accuracy and grace with this movement and that if at a funeral, the word of command "ARMS" may be used instead of "SWORDS".*

Conclusion

09304. **End of Lesson Drill.**

- a. *Questions from the squad on the lesson, and further practice to confirm.*
- b. *Summary. To include the following:*
 - (1) The need for coordination with the rifle movements.
 - (2) This lesson concludes the Sword Drill exercises.

09305. *Reserved.*

FIGS 142 - 145 - RESERVED.

Chapter 10

RIFLES DRILL

INTRODUCTION

1001. As stated in the Foreword this pamphlet does not provide the text of drill for Rifle Regiments. However, all officers, warrant and non commissioned officers of other Regiments should be aware of the customs and variations carried out by Rifles Regiments and should at all times endeavour to see that in their dealings with the RIFLES and RGR battalions, they do not attempt to interfere with these traditions. The Rifles has its own manual and any queries relating to their drill should be addressed to Regimental Headquarters The RIFLES, Peninsula Barracks, Winchester Hampshire SO23 8TS (london@the-rifles.co.uk). Questions relating to RGR Drill should be addressed to OC Gurkha Coy, 2 Bn ITC, Catterick, N. Yorks (ITC-2ITB-GURKHA-OC)

HISTORY

1002. Rifles Drill is a distillation of the traditions of the Light Companies and Regiments of the British Army. It was taught in its original format to their forbearers, the skirmishers and sharpshooters of the eighteenth century. These men were taught to act independently, skirmishing or scouting and undertaking any other enterprise, which called for speed, skill, daring and valour. They were trained not only to act as individual soldiers but also to march faster and further than could be expected of other infantry. While other units carried their weapons at the shoulder, Riflemen carried their weapons in the hand at 'The Trail' ready for immediate use. Rifle drill movements are carried out from and to the position of 'At Ease' signifying that they are constantly alert and ready for action.

BASIC PRINCIPLES - THE RIFLES

1003. **Movement.** Drill movements in which "Heavy Drill" start from or end from the position of 'Attention' are in the RIFLES to start and finish from the position of 'At Ease' without further order. Movements are to be carried out smartly but care is to be taken to ensure that the feet are raised 6 - 8 inches only but still moved sharply into the position of 'Attention'.

1004. **Swords.** The RIFLES refer to the bayonet as the sword. Swords are not fixed except when required to do so on operations.

1005. **Slow Marching.** The slow march is not to be taught at the training establishments but is to continue to be practised by The Band and Bugles of The Rifles.

1006. **Words of Command.**

a. The words of command to get to the position of 'At Ease' from the 'Stand Easy' are: **"STAND - READY!"**

b. The words of command to get to the position of 'Attention' from the 'At Ease' vary according to the formation you are addressing, some examples are:

"RIFLES - FIRST - BATTALION!"

"RIFLES - A - COMPANY!"

"RIFLES - PARADE!"

"DUTIES - PARADE!"

c. A collection of men, waiting outside the cookhouse for example, will have to be called to 'Attention' when an officer passes, they are to be given the order, **"STAND UP!"**

d. The use of such words of command as **"COMPANY!", "PLATOON!", "SECTION!"** are to be used as executive words of command only, requiring the parade to come to the position of 'Attention', and are never to be used as cautionary words of command.

e. On a formal parade it will always be possible to identify and command the unit/subunit required to come to the position of 'Attention' by the use of its title, therefore the word of command "ATTENTION!" is **NEVER** to be used.

1007. **Directional Flanks and Cautionary Words of Command.**

- a. The word of command "**MOVE!**" as opposed to "**TURN!**" is used if the formation is about to step off, for example: "**MOVE TO YOUR RIGHT - QUICK MARCH!**"
- b. The word of command "**TURN!**" is to be used for all turnings at the halt, for example: "**SQUAD WILL TURN ABOUT - ABOUT - TURN!**"

1008. **Falling out.** The following words of command are to be used when 'Falling Out' a parade, "**TO YOUR RIGHT - FALL - OUT!**"

1009. **Arms Drill at the Halt.** All arms drill is to start from the 'At Ease' position with the rifle in the shoulder, unless the rifle has been placed into the 'Trail' where you are to remain at 'Attention' until you are ordered to 'Shoulder Arms'.

1010. **Arms drill on the march.** When marching or at the double the rifle is to be carried at the 'Trail'.

BASIC PRINCIPLES - THE ROYAL GURKHA RIFLES

1011. RGR Regiments mainly follow the principles of The RIFLES with the some exceptions. Organisers of parades involving RGR Regiments should discuss arrangements with the Officer Commanding the RGR contingent.

ON PARADE WITH NON RIFLES UNITS

1012. When Rifle Regiments are on parade with non-Rifle units, complications may arise because of the variations in their drill movements and timing when marching. These may be overcome in the following ways.

1013. **Foot and Arms Drill.** Whilst the execution of foot and arms drill may differ from other arms, the finished movement is almost always similar. The following should be considered:

- a. Rifles units should execute their own drill movements working on the Parade Commander's orders to the parade from the At Ease. If this is impracticable the senior Rifles Officer may give orders to their own troops.
- b. Rifles units may conform to the rest of the parade by adopting the position of Attention. This solution should be avoided wherever possible.

1014. **The March Past.** As far as possible Rifle Regiments should be placed in the march past in their normal order of seniority. A gap should be left after the unit in front to allow them to march past in their own time. Alternatively;

- a. If this is not possible, they must either move at the head of the troops or follow up to the rear, a gap having been left.
- b. The length of the gap will depend on the distance of the saluting base from the forming up point, but the march should be timed to leave the smallest possible gap at the saluting base.
- c. Having passed the saluting base they should, where possible, proceed by a separate route.
- d. However, in a long procession; e.g. State Ceremonial Procession, they must conform to the timing of the rest of the parade.

TIMINGS

1015. Timings for the RIFLES are:

- a. *Double Time:* 180 paces to the minute.
- b. *Quick Time:* 140 paces to the minute.
- c. *Slow Time:* 70 paces to the minute.
- d. *Arms Drill:* 70 movements a minute.

1016. Keeping the time. The method used for calling out the time is the same as for keeping step when quick marching, carrying out a movement on the "**LEFT**" and pausing on the "**RIGHT**", i.e., "**LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT**"...etc.

BANDS

1017. Rifle Bands when massed with Bands of other units, will conform to the timing and drill of these units.

Chapter 11

GUARDS AND SENTRIES

INTRODUCTION

1101. This chapter gives a suggested system for the mounting and dismounting, and the relieving of sentries.

Ceremonial Guard

1102. For a Ceremonial Guard the following drills apply:

- a. Officers with swords, will be at the carry throughout the ceremony.
- b. In the Royal Armoured Corps, guards and sentries will have either the rifle or the pistol as their weapon.
- c. Mounted troops, when dismounted and on guard with swords, will adjust these instructions to sword drill.
- d. Those on guard will march at the slope and have bayonets fixed throughout their tour of duty. The only exception is the senior warrant or non commissioned officer on guard and the junior non commissioned officer when conducting reliefs.
- e. Compliments to be paid by guards, rounds, sentries and reliefs, are laid down in Queen's Regulations from paragraph J8.047.

The Barrack Guard

1103. The formation of a barrack guard varies with its size. It is normally either:

- a. *Two NCOs and Three* - in a single rank, with the senior NCO in the centre rear, and the junior NCO on the right of the guard.
- b. *Two NCOs and Six* - two ranks with the NCOs as above.
- c. *Two NCOs and Nine* - three ranks with the NCOs as above.

Note: If there are three NCOs in a guard the junior NCO is on the left of the guard.

Guard Mounting

1104. Guard or picquet duties will be paraded and inspected on the parade ground. They will form up in line with the guards on the right and picquets on the left. They will normally be inspected by the Adjutant or Orderly Officer who will, after his inspection, order any officers in command of guards to fall in.

1105. If there are any officers commanding guards, they will take post three paces in front of the centre of their guard and the senior NCO will be on the right of the guard. If a drummer or trumpeter is mounting with the guard he will be at an arm's interval on the right of the right hand NCO.

1106. The inspecting officer will order the duties to march off. Guards and picquets will give 'Eyes Right' or 'Left' to the inspecting officer as they march off.

Relieving, Posting and Dismissing a Guard

1107. Where the guard mounting area allows sufficient space, the new guard will advance in line towards the old guard and will halt from five to fifteen paces in front and facing it. When space does not allow this, the guard will halt six paces from the left of the old guard, facing in the same direction.

1108. When the new guard is halted opposite the old guard they will be dressed by the officer or NCO in charge of the guard. The officer will remain in front of his guard and the NCO will place himself on the right of the guard before further words of command are given. Actions and words of command are then as follows:

Serial	Commands by the Commander of the Old Guard	Commands by the Commander of the New Guard	Remarks
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
1.	“OLD GUARD, PRESENT - ARMS!”	-	Old Guard ‘Present’ Officers ‘Salute’ NCOs ‘Present’
2.	-	“NEW GUARD, PRESENT - ARMS!”	New Guard ‘Present’ Officers ‘Salute’ NCOs ‘Present’
3.	“OLD GUARD, SLOPE - ARMS!”		
4.		“NEW GUARD, SLOPE - ARMS!”	
5.	“OLD GUARD, SHOULDER - ARMS!”		
6.		“NEW GUARD, SHOULDER - ARMS!”	
7.	“OLD GUARD, STAND AT - EASE!”		
8.		“NEW GUARD, STAND AT - EASE!”	

1109. The first relief from the new guard will then be detailed and sent out. It is to be accompanied by a NCO (normally a corporal) of the old guard to guide them round and bring back the relieved sentries. The relief will march in either file or single file with the old guard NCO at their head and the new guard NCO to the right of the rear sentry. While this is happening the new guard commander will take over the guardroom property and books.

Changing Arms During Guard Mounting

1110. About five minutes after the new guard has reformed, following the departure of the reliefs, and time permitting, the senior sergeant of the old guard will start the change arms sequences as follows:

Old Guard

“GUARD!”
“OLD GUARD - SHUN!”
“OLD GUARD, CHANGE - ARMS!”
“OLD GUARD, STAND AT - EASE!”
“OLD GUARD, STAND - EASY!”

New Guard

“GUARD!”
“NEW GUARD - SHUN!”
“NEW GUARD, CHANGE - ARMS!”
“NEW GUARD, STAND AT - EASE!”
“NEW GUARD, STAND - EASY!”

The same procedure will happen prior to the old relief rejoining the old guard to return the rifle to the right shoulder.

1111. When the reliefs have returned and the old guard is ready to march off, the following will happen:

Serial	Commands by the Commander of the Old Guard	Commands by the Commander of the New Guard	Remarks
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
1.	“OLD GUARD - SHUN!”		

2.		"NEW GUARD - SHUN!"	
3.	"OLD GUARD, SLOPE - ARMS!"		
4.		"NEW GUARD, SLOPE - ARMS!"	
5.	"OLD GUARD, BY THE RIGHT, QUICK - MARCH!"		The old guard should be ordered to change direction as soon as they step off
6.		"NEW GUARD, PRESENT - ARMS!"	This salute should be given as soon as possible after the old guard have stepped off
7.	"OLD GUARD, EYES - RIGHT!"		
8.	"OLD GUARD, EYES - FRONT!"		
9.		"BARRACK GUARD, SLOPE - ARMS!"	The new guard are now on Barrack Guard

Note: Any compliments that have to be paid in the course of the ceremony will be on the word of command of the senior officer, or NCQ, present

1112. The guard should now be marched to the position where they would turn out - this may be the position occupied by the old guard. The procedure for turning out will be explained to them by the guard commander and they will then be dismissed to the guard room with their bayonets still fixed at the High Port.

1113. The guard orders will then be read to the guard when they get to the guard room, and to the first relief when they come off sentry.

1114. The old guard march to the parade ground, bayonets are unfixed, arms inspected and they are then dismissed by their commander.

Guards Turning Out

1115. Queen's Regulations (paragraph J8.047 onward) lay down the time at which guards and picquets will turn out under peacetime conditions, and the compliments that they will pay.

a. "GUARD - TURN OUT!". This order is given by the sentry posted at the guard room. The guard will turn out in quick time, with their rifles at the High Port. They will halt in their position in open order, slope arms, take up their dressing and stand still. The trumpeter, bugler or drummer, if any, will be two paces to the right of the senior NCO. The officer, if any, will be three paces in front of the centre of the guard.

b. "TO THE GUARDROOM - DISMISS!". This order is given by the guard commander or the senior NCO. The guard will dismiss and file to the guard room at the High Port. The sentry on the guard room will salute in time with the guard and will state his post **"No. 1 POST AND ALLS WELL, SIR"** if visited by the officer. The guard commander will accompany the inspecting officer around the guard room.

Posting Sentries

1116. Where there is to be a sentry on an unoccupied post, he will be halted just short of it. He will then step off without further orders and halt on his post and face in the required direction. The NCO will read his orders to him and explain his duties and the extent of his beat.

Relieving Sentries

1117. The sentry, on seeing the relief approaching, will place himself on his post, with his rifle at the slope. The following orders will be used:

- a. **“RELIEF HALT!”**. The NCO will halt the relief two paces from the sentry. The new sentry will step off without further orders and halt on the left of the old sentry and face in the same direction as him. The NCO will read his orders to him and explain his duties and the extent of his beat.
- b. **“SENTRIES - PASS!”**. The old sentry will march to the rear of the relief and the new sentry will close two paces to his right.
- c. **“RELIEF, QUICK - MARCH! EYES - RIGHT!”**. This is given to the new sentry who will salute on the word **“RIGHT”**. He will come down from the salute on the word of command. **“EYES - FRONT!”** as the relief marches off.

Dismissing a Relief

1118. The NCO conducting reliefs may dismiss a sentry or relief to the guard room, without seeking permission to do so. The sentry or relief will salute if an officer is in sight

Challenging

1119. A sentry will challenge a person or party approaching his post if he is in doubt about the identity or motive of that person or party. He may also be ordered to challenge all corners in special cases. He will assume the On Guard position.

Serial (a)	Action by Sentry (b)	Action by Person or Party Challenged (c)
1.	“HALT, WHO IS (OR GOES) THERE!”	Halts and identifies himself or the party.
2.	“ADVANCE (ONE) TO BE RECOGNIZED!”	Person or one member of party advances.
3.	“HALT!”	Halts, to be recognized by the sentry.
4.	Gives the secret challenge, if any, in a low voice.	Gives the answer.
5.	Orders person or group to advance and pass through.	Leader of party should remain with the sentry to assist identification of party.

Note. If a formed body of men approaches a sentry on a ceremonial post and is challenged, the sentry will order the party to pass and the senior officer or NCO will order **“EYES - RIGHT!”** or **“EYES - LEFT!”** to the sentry who will pay the appropriate compliment.

Sentry Drill

1120. **Teaching Method.** Soldiers will first be taught the duties of a sentry as a squad. The most effective method of teaching is to start by teaching single sentry drill and finally double sentry drill. Every soldier must know the following duties of a sentry:

- a. Paying compliments, patrolling and halting at his post.
- b. Challenging.
- c. Turning out the guard and the occasions on which this should happen.
- d. Action on being posted and relieved.
- e. Compliments due to officers and other groups.

1121. **General Instructions.** Before sentry drill is taught or practised, the instructor must start the lesson with the words **“YOU ARE NOW ON SENTRY, AND THIS IS YOUR FRONT”**.

1122. The introductory word of command "**AS ON SENTRY**", will be used before every word of command. All sentry drill will start and end at the at ease position and will have the regulation pause between each movement.

1123. The sentry on his post will:

- a. Stand at ease facing his front in the centre of, and one pace forward from, his sentry box, if he has one.
- b. Stand in his box only in bad weather.
- c. Not leave his post or converse with anyone except in execution of his duty.

1124. The sentry on the beat will:

- a. March at the slope in quick time.
- b. When at the end of his beat turn left or right about, so that his back is never turned on the front of his post
- c. Not halt on his beat except when paying compliments and challenging.

1125. **Compliments.** A sentry on his post will attempt to be either at the salute or the present if the recipient of his salute is within three paces of him. He will return to the slope when the recipient is three paces past him. If he is in a box he will stand to attention.

1126. A tactical sentry with arms slung will halt, turn to his front and remain at attention until the officer or party has passed.

1127. A sentry with a pickhelve or pistol will salute with the hand.

Single Sentry Drill

1128. The compliments of a single sentry at his post can be practised as a squad using the following words of command and actions:

- a. "**AS ON SENTRY, TO THE FRONT - SALUTE!**". The squad, standing at ease as would an individual sentry at his post, come to attention, slope arms and salute with the regulation pause between each movement.
- b. "**AS ON SENTRY, PRESENT - ARMS!**". Come to attention, slope arms then present.
- c. "**AS ON SENTRY, STAND AT - EASE!**". If at the salute, the squad will return the right hand to their side, then shoulder arms and stand at ease. If they are at the present, the squad will slope then shoulder arms and stand at ease.

Note: When at his post a sentry will present from the slope, and return to the slope, prior to shouldering arms.

Patrolling

1129. The squad can practise patrolling using the following words of command and actions:

- a. "**AS ON SENTRY, TO THE RIGHT - MARCH!**". The squad will come to attention, slope arms, turn to their right and step off in quick time.
- b. "**AS ON SENTRY, ABOUT - TURN!**". This order is always given as the right heel strikes the ground. The squad in this case must left about turn. The movement is as for the right about turn taking a 150 mm (six inches) pace with the right foot, bending the left knee and turning the head, shoulders, body and the right foot through 90 degrees to the left.
- c. "**AS ON SENTRY, STAND AT - EASE!**". This is given as for the halt. The squad halt, turn to their front, shoulder arms and stand at ease.

1130. **Compliments on the Sentry Beat.** Whenever possible, a sentry will return to his post to pay compliments. The only difference between compliments paid from the At Ease position and from the march is that the present is from the slope and must return to the slope in the latter case. The squad must be practised in this.

1131. **Patrolling a Given Number of Paces.** To practise patrolling a given number of paces, the instructor must give his orders before the squad start to patrol, by telling them to patrol out a set number of paces then on return if required to pay a compliment or stand at ease. His word of command would be, for example, **“YOU ARE NOW ON SENTRY, YOUR BEAT IS FIFTEEN PACES TO THE RIGHT. AS ON SENTRY, TO THE RIGHT - MARCH!”**.

Note: The given number of paces is always an odd number, so that the end of the beat comes on a left foot. The count starts again when the left foot first strikes the ground after the about turn is completed. When the sentry is going to halt he counts the full number of paces and bends the right knee after the last pace of his count. If a sentry cannot return to his post to pay a compliment he will halt, face his front, salute or present, and then continue his patrol.

Double Sentry Drill

1132. **Definition.** A double sentry is composed of two sentries who act together from a series of words of command and/or hand signals.

1133. **Instructions.** The coordination of the movements of double sentries is achieved by a series of words of command and/or hand signals. These commands and signals are normally given by the right hand sentry, who should be the senior soldier in command of the post. The only exception to this rule is when the left hand sentry or junior soldier, sees an approaching officer or party, in which case he will give the command or signal.

1134. **Commands When at The Halt.** The right hand senior sentry will look towards the left hand sentry then give the appropriate word of command, for example, **“PATROL”, “SALUTE”, “PRESENT”**. The left hand sentry will acknowledge the order with a look. They then both look to their front, observe the pause, then carry out the movements in unison.

1135. **Commands on the March.** These orders are given by the right hand senior sentry by straightening the fingers of the right hand on the inward beat with the back of the hand to the front indicating as follows:

- a. *One Finger.* Stand at Ease.
- b. *Two Fingers.* Salute.
- c. *Whole Hand.* Present.

1136. In order to practise the movements the instructor must number and prove the squad, then divide them by making the left half move **“FOUR PACES, LEFT CLOSE - MARCH!”**. Stationing himself behind the squad in the centre with it at ease, knowing the number of paces that they are to patrol outwards, he then gives the necessary orders.

1137. **Patrolling.** The executive word of command is **“PATROL!”**. The squad pause, come to attention, slope arms, turn outwards and patrol in quick time over their given beat. They should be allowed to continue until the two halves are together and ready to progress further.

1138. **Stand at Ease - One Finger.** On the instructor raising one finger the squad must straighten the forefinger of their right hand as they come forward for the last three beats of the right foot, before they halt at the end of their inward beat. They then turn to their front, shoulder arms and stand at ease.

1139. **Compliments from the Halt.** These can be the salute or the present:

- a. The instructor will give the word of command **“SALUTE!”**. The squad pause, come to attention, slope arms and salute. They remain at the salute for five seconds, then look inwards, pause, look to their front, shoulder arms and stand at ease.
- b. The instructor will give the word of command **“PRESENT!”**. The squad pause, come to attention, slope arms and present. They remain at the present for five seconds then look inwards, pause, look to their front, slope arms, shoulder arms and stand at ease.

Compliments on the Beat

1140. When an instructor raises two fingers the squad will straighten the first two fingers of their right hand:

a. *Two Fingers - Salute.* The squad halt at the end of their inward beat, turn to their front, salute for five seconds, look inwards, then to their front, return their right arm to the side, turn outwards and continue to patrol.

b. *Whole Hand - Present.* When the instructor opens the whole hand, the squad straighten all the fingers of their right hand and carry out the same procedures as for the salute.

Note: The present is always carried out from the slope, and the squad will always return to the slope after presenting arms.

1141. When a squad have practised all the movements of double sentry, they should be split into pairs, the right hand man designated as senior soldier, but ensuring that both are practised as the senior. The junior soldier must always take his timings from that of the senior soldier. Whenever possible, double sentries will return to their posts to pay compliments. If this is not possible, the sentry first sighting an officer must give the appropriate signal on three successive beats of the right foot. Both sentries will then halt, turn to their front, pay the appropriate compliments, turn inward and continue to patrol.

Chapter 12

COMPANY DRILL

INTRODUCTION

1201. Company drill is a stimulating and challenging method of practising drill; it provides the logical framework for forming up large numbers of troops for inspections and ceremonial parades. It can be modified to suit all arms by the alteration of the titles of sub units, e.g., squadrons, troops, etc. A knowledge of basic drill is assumed. The key used in the illustrations is at Fig 146.

FORMATIONS

1202. There are five formations used in company drill:

- a. A company in Line (see Fig 147).
- b. A company in Column of Threes (see Fig 148).
- c. A company in Column of Route (see Fig 149).
- d. A company in Column of Platoons (see Fig 150).
- e. A company in Close Column of Platoons (see Fig 151).

DRESSING A COMPANY IN LINE

1203. The orders to dress a company in line are:

- a. **“RIGHT - DRESS!”** which is given by the company commander. On this command:
 - (1) The officers, except the second in command, turn about and take up their own dressing.
 - (2) The second in command turns to his left, dresses the officers and then turns to his front.
 - (3) The CSM turns to his right, marches out by the shortest route to a position in line with, and five paces from, the front rank of the company. He then turns and dresses them.
- b. **“EYES - FRONT!”** which is given by the CSM. On this command:
 - (1) The officers turn about.
 - (2) The CSM turns and marches to his place.

DRESSING A COMPANY IN COLUMN OR CLOSE COLUMN

1204. The orders to dress a company in column or close column are:

- a. **“RIGHT - DRESS!”** which is given by the company commander. On this order:
 - (1) The officers, except the second in command, turn about.
 - (2) Platoon sergeants turn right, march out by the shortest route to a position in line with, and five paces from, their front rank. They halt together and check their dressing by the platoon sergeant of the leading platoon. They then dress their platoons.
 - (3) The CSM steps off and halts six paces in front of and facing the right hand man of the company. He checks the covering off of the right hand man of each platoon. He then supervises the covering off of the company.
- b. **“NUMBER ... PLATOON, EYES - FRONT!”** which is given in succession by the platoon sergeants. When the rear platoon sergeant has given his command the officers turn about and the CSM and platoon sergeants resume their original positions.

FORMING UP IN CLOSE COLUMN OF PLATOONS WITH THE DRUM

1205. Before markers are called for, the men stand on the edge of the parade ground on the outer flank, opposite the positions that they are to occupy when formed up. Then:

- a. On the order "**RIGHT - MARKERS!**" given by the CSM, markers come to Attention, slope arms, march out and halt three paces from the CSM with the centre marker opposite him.
- b. On the order "**OUTWARDS - TURN!**" given by the CSM, numbers one and two platoon markers turn right and number three platoon marker turns left.
- c. On the order "**QUICK - MARCH!**" given by the CSM, numbers one and three platoon markers march 15 paces and halt. Number two platoon marker stands still. Number three platoon marker turns about. They cover off and then stand at ease.
- d. On the order "**GET ON - PARADE!**" given by the CSM, the men march to their positions and halt individually.
- e. On the order "**COMPANY!**" given by the CSM, the company stand at ease.
- f. On the order "**FALL IN!**" given by the CSM, the drummer, standing three paces behind the CSM and facing the parade, beats a flam, upon which markers come to attention and cover off.
- g. On the order "**STEADY!**" given by the CSM, the drummer beats a flam upon which the company comes to Attention. After the regulation pause he beats a roll upon which the company look to their left and dress. When the drummer sees the dressing completed he ceases to roll and after the regulation pause, beats a flam, upon which the company look to their front
- h. "**COMPANY, STAND AT - EASE!**" is given by the company commander standing five paces to the right rear of the CSM.
- i. On the order "**CALL THE - ROLL!**" given by the company commander:
 - (1) Platoon sergeants, who have formed up in front of their platoons, come to attention, slope arms, turn about, call the roll and prepare their platoons for inspection.
 - (2) Officers, who have been standing at ease seven paces behind the company commander, come to Attention and march forward to inspect their platoons.
 - (3) When officers have inspected their platoons they report to the company commander, then march in pairs or threes on the front of the parade.

TELLING OFF BY PLATOONS AFTER INSPECTION

1206. The order to tell off is given by the CSM "**COMPANY, TELL. OFF, BY - PLATOONS!**". The response "**NUMBER PLATOON**" is given by each platoon sergeant. However, the centre platoon sergeant omits the word 'Platoon'.

FORMING UP IN CLOSE COLUMN OF PLATOONS WITHOUT A DRUM

1207. Only the words of command differ from the procedure with a drum. They are:

- a. "**FALL IN!**".
- b. "**RIGHT - DRESS!**".
- c. "**EYES - FRONT!**".

From this point on the words of command are the same as with a drum.

FALLING IN AND FALLING OUT THE OFFICERS

1208. Whenever there is more than one officer on parade, officers will be fallen in. Whilst waiting to do so they will march up and down the flank or the front of the parade. When the company is called

properly at ease after it has been told off for drill, they will halt opposite their platoons, face them and stand at ease.

- a. The order **"FALL IN - THE OFFICERS!"** is given by the company commander when:
 - (1) Officers will come to Attention, draw swords and march to their places in quick time, halt, turn to face their front and stand at ease.
 - (2) The platoon sergeants come to Attention, slope arms, turn to face the officers approaching them and report their platoons. They then turn about and move by the outer flank to their place behind their platoons.
- b. The order **"TELL OFF, BY - PLATOONS!"** is given by the company commander when the officers state their platoons.
- c. The order to **"FALL OUT - THE OFFICERS!"** is given by the company commander when the officers come to Attention and march up to the company commander whom they salute. When they have done this, they step off, halt in line seven paces behind him, turn about, return sword and stand at ease.

AT THE HALT IN CLOSE COLUMN OF PLATOONS REQUIRED TO MOVE TO THE RIGHT IN COLUMN OF THREES

1209. To carry out this movement the order **"COMPANY WILL MOVE TO THE RIGHT IN COLUMN OF THREES, RIGHT - TURN!"** is given by the company commander, at which the company turn right. After the regulation pause the CSM will move clockwise round the company to his position one pace in front of the right guide of the leading platoon. The following sequence of orders should then follow:

- a. **"NUMBER ONE PLATOON, BY THE LEFT, QUICK - MARCH!"** given by the leading platoon commander.
- b. **"NUMBER TWO PLATOON, LEFT WHEEL, BY THE LEFT QUICK - MARCH!"** given by the second platoon commander. This platoon must step off so that they are in step with, and at the correct distance from, the platoon in front.
- c. **"NUMBER TWO PLATOON, BY THE RIGHT, RIGHT - WHEEL!"** given by the second platoon commander.
 - (1) This word of command is given so that number two platoon go over the ground from which number one platoon stepped off.
 - (2) Number three platoon commander then follows number two platoon commander.
- d. **"NUMBER ... PLATOON, BY THE LEFT"** given by numbers two and three platoon commanders after the right wheel.

AT THE HALT IN COLUMN OF PLATOONS REQUIRED TO FORM LINE FACING A FLANK AND HALTED

1210. To carry out this movement the orders **"PLATOONS, CHANGE DIRECTION LEFT, AT THE HALT, INTO LINE, LEFT - FORM!"** followed by **"QUICK - MARCH!"** are both given by the company commander when:

- a. The CSM marches to his left and positions himself one pace to the right of the centre platoon sergeant.
- b. The company are normally dressed by the company commander after this manoeuvre.

ON THE MARCH IN COLUMN OF THREES REQUIRED TO FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF PLATOONS FACING A FLANK AND HALTED

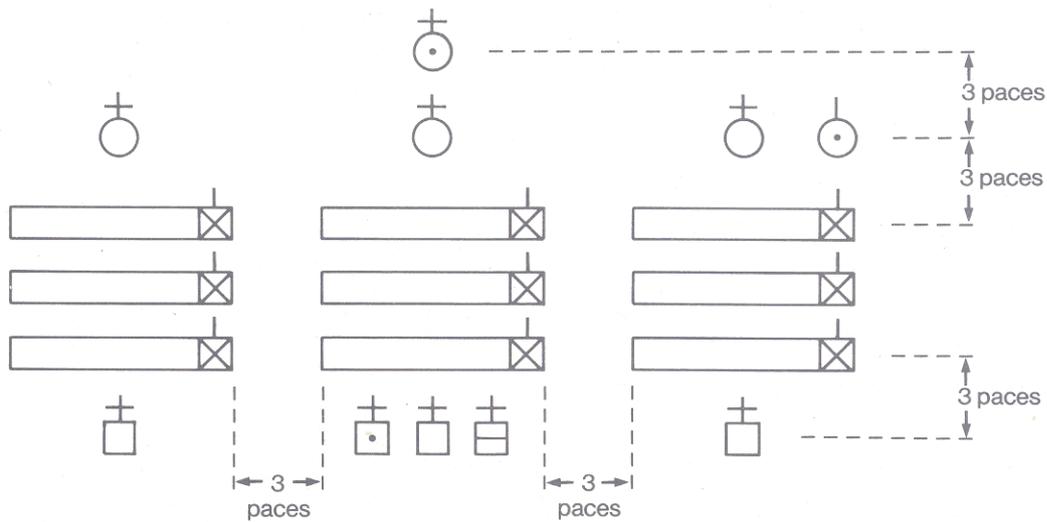
1211. To carry out this movement the following sequence of orders is necessary:

- a. **“COMPANY, AT THE HALT, FACING LEFT, FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF - PLATOONS!”** given by the company commander.
- b. **“NUMBER ONE PLATOON - HALT!”** given by the platoon commander when:
 - (1) The right guide will turn to his left.
 - (2) The platoon commander will turn to his right to face his platoon.
 - (3) The CSM will turn to his right, march nine paces, halt and turn right.
- c. **“NUMBER ONE PLATOON WILL ADVANCE, LEFT - TURN!”** given by the platoon commander who will check that he is three paces from the centre of his platoon and turn about.
- d. **“NUMBER TWO PLATOON, BY THE RIGHT, RIGHT - WHEEL!”** given by number two platoon commander when number one platoon halts.
- e. **“BY THE LEFT, LEFT - WHEEL!”** given by number two platoon commander. Note that:

FIG 146 - KEY TO DIAGRAMS

Commanding officer	
Unit second in command	
Adjutant	
RSM	
Drill sergeant	
Company commander	
Company second in command	
CSM	
CQMS	
Platoon commander (or equivalent)	
Other officers	
Platoon sergeant or other sergeant	
Section commander	
Rank and File	
Front centre and rear ranks	

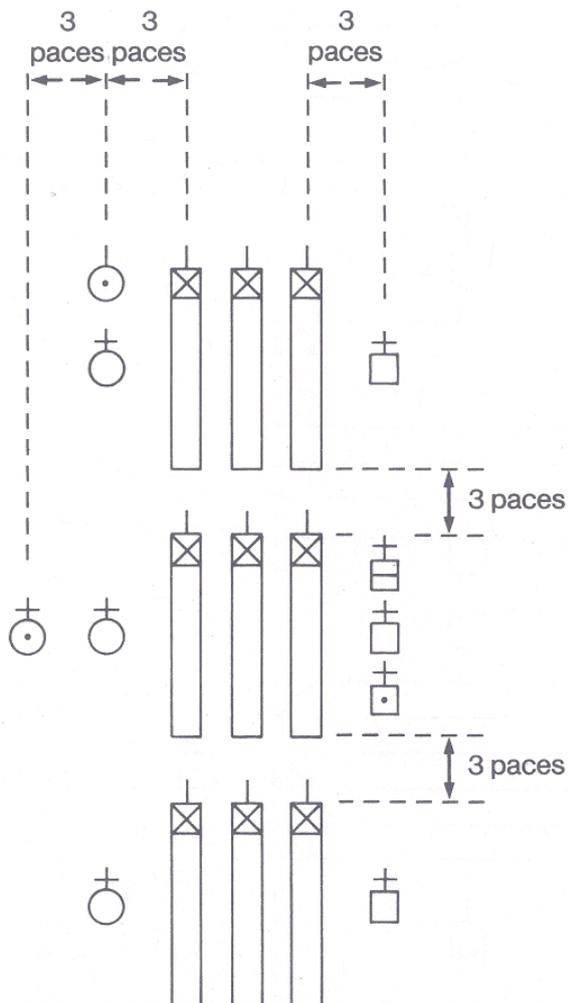
FIG 147 - A COMPANY IN LINE



Notes:

1. The second in command of the company will be three paces in front of the right hand man of the company.
2. The CSM will be level and one file to the right of the centre platoon sergeant and the CQMS will be level with and one file to the left of the centre platoon sergeant

FIG 148 - A COMPANY IN COLUMN OF THREES



Notes:

1. Officers will be on the directing flank and, if this flank is changed will move clockwise round the platoon in quick time to take up their positions.
2. Company and platoon commanders may break ranks.

FIG 149 - A COMPANY IN COLUMN OF ROUTE



Note:

The CSM will be one pace in front of the right guide of the leading platoon and the company commander six paces in front of the centre man of the leading section of threes.

FIG 150 - A COMPANY IN COLUMN OF PLATOONS

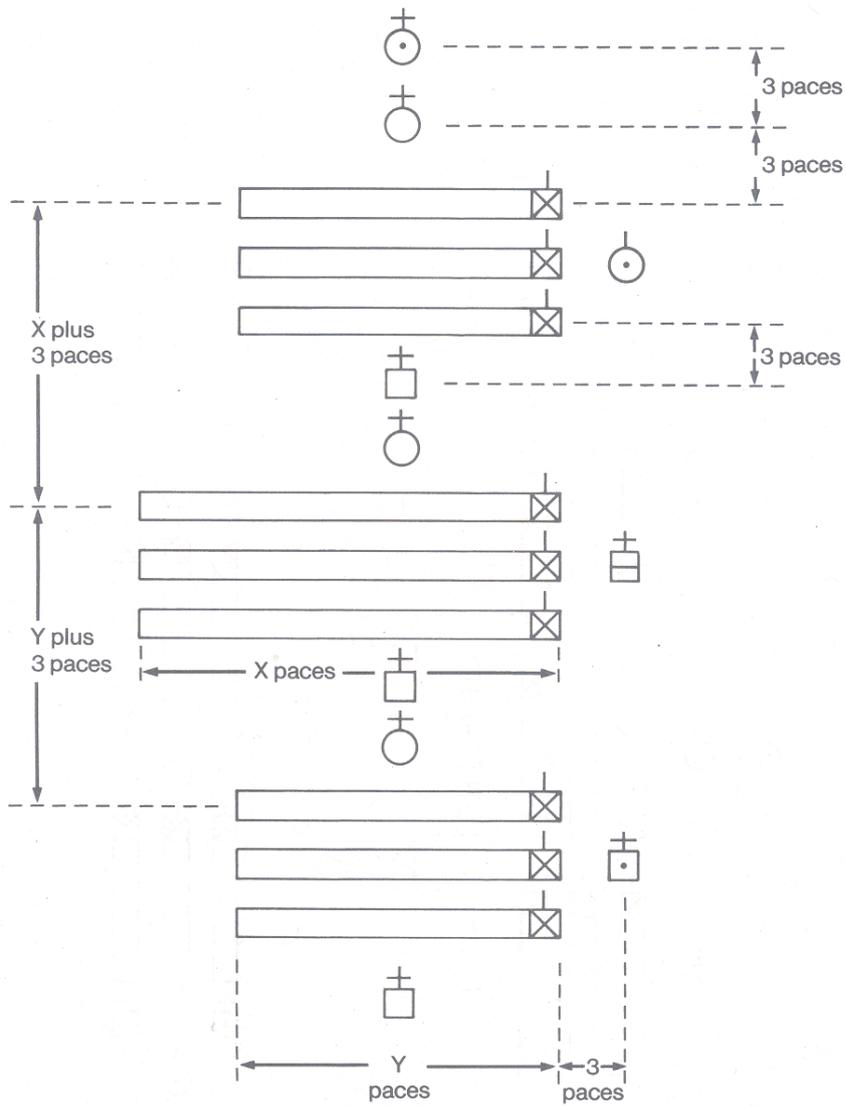
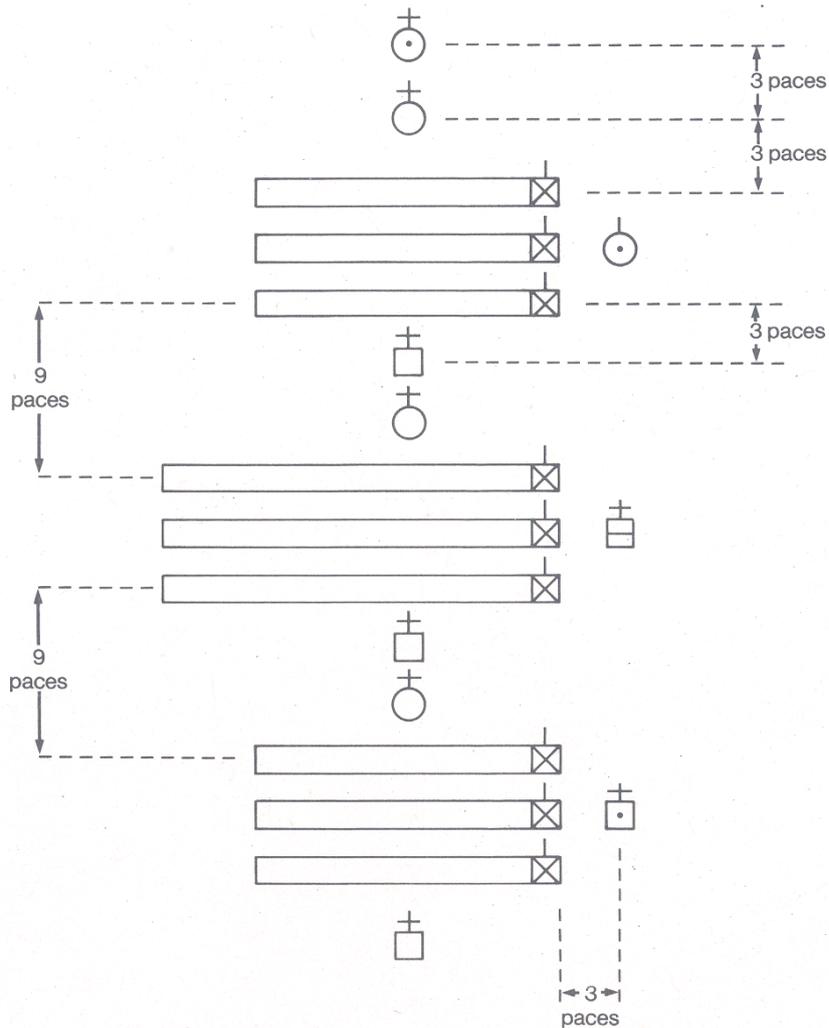


FIG 151 - A COMPANY IN CLOSE COLUMN OF PLATOONS



- (1) This word of command is given when the leading section of threes are level with the CSM, who turns to his left, marches nine paces, halts and turns right.
- (2) Number two platoon will carry out the same movements as number one platoon.
- (3) Number three platoon will cover the ground that number two platoon have covered but will continue, when number two platoon left wheel, until their leading section of threes is level with the CSM.
- (4) The CSM will see that number three platoon are marching on to him and then step off, wheeling to his right and station himself three paces to the right of the right hand man of the centre rank of number two platoon, halting, facing the same direction as the company.

f. **"COMPANY, RIGHT - DRESS!"** given by the company commander.

ON THE MARCH IN COLUMN OF PLATOONS REQUIRED TO FORM COLUMN OF THREES

1212. To carry out this movement the following orders are given:

- a. **"IN SUCCESSION, MOVE TO THE RIGHT IN COLUMN OF THREES"** given by the company commander.
- b. **"NUMBER ONE PLATOON, RIGHT - TURN!", "BY THE LEFT!"** given by number one platoon commander. Note that:

- (1) Numbers two and three platoons will be turned right when they reach the ground on which number one platoon turned.
- (2) The CSM will act on number two platoon commander's word of command and then double to his position in column of threes.

ON THE MARCH IN COLUMN OF PLATOONS REQUIRED TO CHANGE DIRECTION BY FORMING

1213. To carry out this movement the following orders are given:

- a. **"CHANGE DIRECTION RIGHT"** given by the company commander.
- b. **"NUMBER ONE PLATOON, RIGHT - FORM!"** given by number one platoon commander.
- c. **"FORWARD!"** given by number one platoon commander.
- d. It should be noted that:
 - (1) Numbers two and three platoons will be right formed when they reach the ground on which number one platoon formed.
 - (2) The CSM will act on number two platoon commander's word of command.
 - (3) If the company is to be left formed the company commander must prefix his order with **"BY THE LEFT!"** and give **"BY THE RIGHT!"** when the movement is completed.

ON THE MARCH IN COLUMN OF THREES REQUIRED TO ADVANCE IN COLUMN OF PLATOONS FACING LEFT

1214. To carry out this movement the following orders are given:

- a. **"FACING LEFT, ADVANCE IN COLUMN"** given by the company commander.
- b. **"NUMBER ONE PLATOON WILL ADVANCE, LEFT - TURN!", "BY THE RIGHT!"** given by number one platoon commander.
- c. It should be noted that:
 - (1) Numbers two and three platoons will be turned left when they reach the ground on which number one platoon turned.
 - (2) The CSM will, on hearing **"LEFT - TURN!"** from number one platoon commander, continue marching for two paces and then mark time facing the new direction. He will step off in his correct position in column of platoons.

AT THE HALT IN LINE REQUIRED TO FORM COLUMN OF PLATOONS FACING THE SAME DIRECTION

1215. To carry out this movement the following sequence of orders is required:

- a. **"AT THE HALT, ON NUMBER ONE PLATOON, FORM COLUMN, REMAINDER RIGHT - TURN!"** given by the company commander when:
 - (1) Number one platoon stand fast.
 - (2) Numbers two and three platoons turn right.
- b. **"REMAINDER, QUICK - MARCH!"** given by the company commander.
- c. **"NUMBER TWO PLATOON, BY THE RIGHT, RIGHT - WHEEL!"** given by number two platoon commander.
- d. **"NUMBER TWO PLATOON, BY THE LEFT, LEFT - WHEEL!"** given by number two platoon commander when it should be noted that:

(1) Number two platoon commander then halts and advances his platoon, checks the position in front of them and turns about.

(2) The CSM steps off on the word of command "**REMAINDER, QUICK - MARCH!**" and thenceforward works to the word of command of number two platoon commander, halting in his position in column of platoons.

(3) Number three platoon right and left wheel respectively into their position behind number two platoon.

e. "**COMPANY, RIGHT - DRESS!**" given by the company commander.

FIG 152 - RESERVED.

Chapter 13 BATTALION DRILL

INTRODUCTION

1301. Battalion drill is used as a basis for parades and is a natural extension of company drill. The movements shown in succeeding paragraphs are those that a battalion should use to parade, move and reform. They are based on a battalion of four equal companies.

FORMATIONS

1302. There are six formations used in battalion drill:

- a. A battalion in Line (see Fig 153).
- b. A battalion in Column of Threes (see Fig 154).
- c. A battalion in Column of Route (see Fig 155).
- d. A battalion in Column of Companies (see Fig 156).
- e. A battalion in Close Column of Companies (see Fig 157).
- f. A battalion in Mass (see Fig 158).

DRESSING

1303. The following changes from company drill should be noted:

- a. *Line.* The RSM performs the CSM duties and the officers are dressed by the second in command of the battalion.
- b. *In Column and Close Column.* The CSM performs the platoon sergeant's duties. The RSM performs the CSM duties and paces out the distances between companies.
- c. *Mass.* This corresponds with column and close column in company drill. Only the platoon sergeants of the leading platoon of the right hand company and the rear platoon of the left hand company will use the introductory word "**PLATOON**" before the word of command "**EYES - FRONT!**".

AT EASE IN MASS REQUIRED TO MOVE OFF IN COLUMN OF THREES

1304. To initiate the movement the order "**ADVANCE IN COLUMN OF THREES FROM THE RIGHT COMPANY LEADING!**" is given by the battalion commander, when:

- a. The battalion second in command, the company commanders and adjutant stand to attention and turn about.
- b. The company commander named by the battalion commander then brings his company to attention, orders them to slope arms and carries out the appropriate company drill.
- c. The succeeding company commanders follow suit taking care not to give their word of command until the leading platoon of the preceding company has stepped off.

1305. The battalion commander may order the companies to move off in a special order thus:

"ADVANCE IN COLUMN OF THREES FROM THE RIGHT, IN THE FOLLOWING ORDER, C, A, D AND B COMPANIES!".

ON THE MARCH IN COLUMN OF THREES REQUIRED TO FORM MASS

1306. To initiate this movement the order "**AT THE HALT, FACING LEFT, (ON THE LEFT), FORM - MASS!**" is given by the battalion commander followed by "**..... COMPANY, AT THE HALT,**

FACING LEFT (ON THE LEFT), FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF - PLATOONS!” by the leading company commander. Note that:

- a. The platoons act as in company drill (Chapter 12, paragraph 1211).
- b. The other companies conform, to reach their positions in mass, irrespective of the order of march.

AT EASE IN CLOSE COLUMN OF COMPANIES REQUIRED TO MOVE OFF IN COLUMN OF ROUTE

1307. To initiate this movement the order “**ADVANCE IN COLUMN OF ROUTE FROM THE LEFT COMPANY LEADING!**” is given by the battalion commander when:

- a. The battalion second in command, company commander and adjutant stand to attention and turn about.
- b. The company commander named by the battalion commander then brings his company to attention, orders them to slope arms, and then wheeling them to the left or right, steps them off.
- c. The succeeding company commanders follow suit.

1308. It should be noted that:

- a. Similar movements may be done without advancing or retiring.
- b. The battalion commander may order the companies to move off in a special order as in paragraph 1305 above.
- c. If the battalion is in column of companies the battalion commander would simply call the battalion to attention, order them to slope arms, right or left turn and step them off wheeling them to the right or left if necessary.

ON THE MARCH IN COLUMN OF THREES REQUIRED TO FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF COMPANIES

1309. To initiate this movement the order “**AT THE HALT, ON THE LEFT, FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF - COMPANIES!**” is given by the battalion commander, when the companies act as a platoon as described in paragraph 1211.

FIG 153 - A BATTALION IN LINE

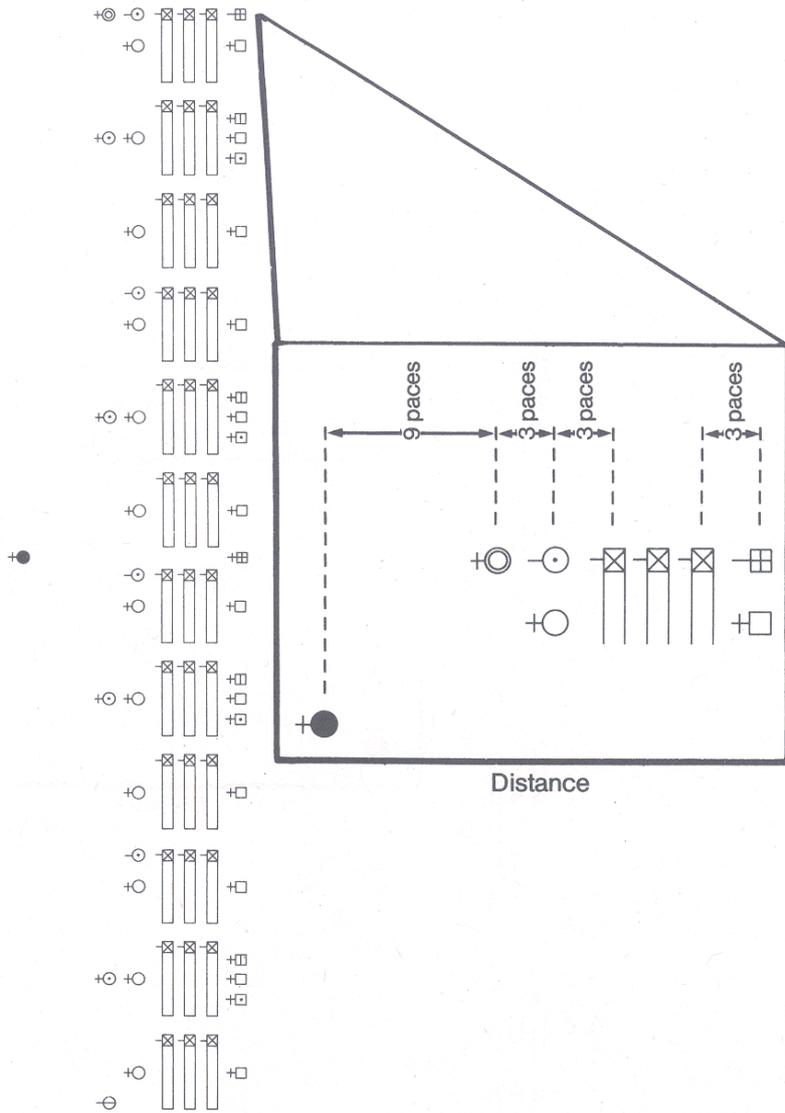


FIG 154 - A BATTALION IN COLUMN OF THREES

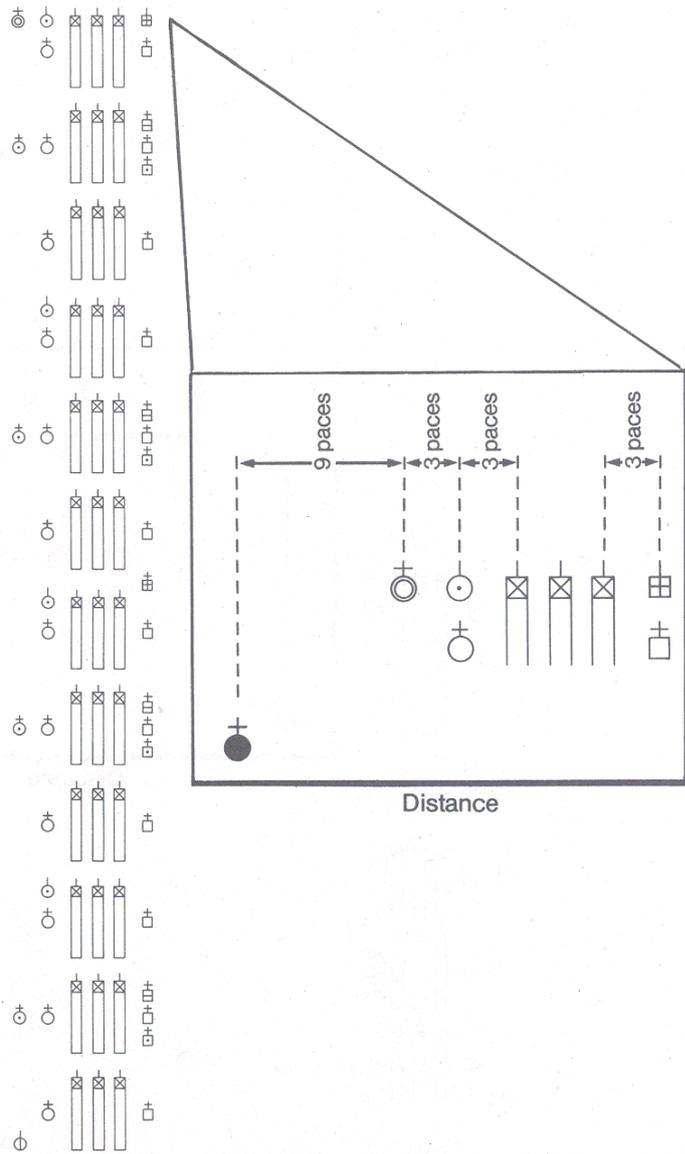


FIG 155 - A BATTALION IN COLUMN OF ROUTE

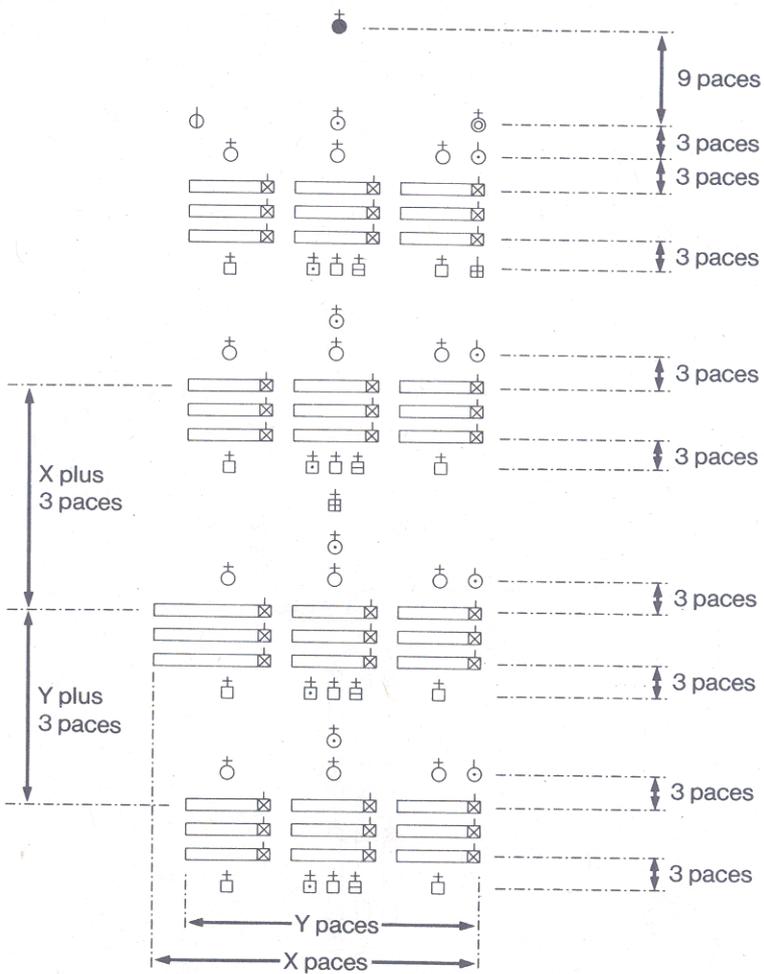


FIG 157 - A BATTALION IN CLOSE COLUMN OF COMPANIES

ANNEX A - TABLE FOR TIMING WORDS OF COMMAND

Word of Command	Quick Time (when given)	Slow Time (when given)	What the Squad Call out	Remarks
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
“ HALT! ” (Marching).	Left heel strikes the ground.	Left foot passes the right.	“ONE TWO”.	
“ QUICK (or SLOW) - MARCH! ”.	“ QUICK ” on the left foot “ MARCH! ” on the right foot (On successive feet)	“ SLOW ” on the left foot “ MARCH! ” on the right foot.		
“ RIGHT - TURN! ” (incline)	Left heel strikes the ground.	Left foot passes the right.		“ LEFT - TURN! ” vice versa.
“ ABOUT - TURN! ”.	Left foot passes the right.	Just before the right foot reaches the ground.	(Quick Time) “ IN - LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT - FORWARD ” (Slow Time) “ ONE STOP - TWO STOP - THREE STOP - FORWARD ”.	
“ MARK - TIME! ”.	Right heel strikes the ground.	Over complete right pace.	(Quick Time) “ IN ”.	
“ HALT! ” “ FORWARD! ”. (Marking Time)	Left knee fully raised.	Right knee fully raised.		
“ CHANGE - STEP! ” (Marching and Marking Time)	“ CHANGE ” on the left foot, “ STEP! ” on the right foot. (On successive feet)		(Marching) “ LEFT - RIGHT - LEFT ” (Marking Time) “ LEFT - LEFT - RIGHT ”.	
“ BREAK INTO QUICK TIME, QUICK - MARCH! ”		“ QUICK ” on the left foot. “ MARCH! ” on the right foot. (On successive feet)		
“ BREAK INTO SLOW TIME, SLOW - MARCH! ”.	On the right heel.			
“ OPEN (CLOSE) - ORDER! ”.		Over complete right place.		
“ RIGHT - FORM! ”.	Left heel strikes the ground.	Left foot about to reach the ground.		“ LEFT - FORM! ” vice versa.
“ ON THE				

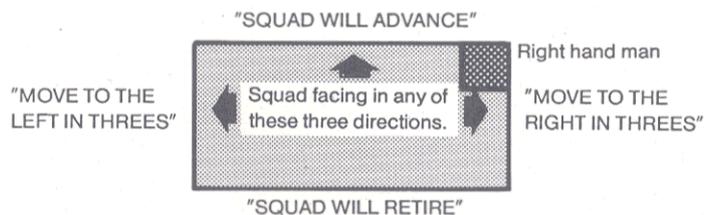
Word of Command	Quick Time (when given)	Slow Time (when given)	What the Squad Call out	Remarks
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
RIGHT (LEFT) FORM - SQUAD!	As for right (or left) turn.			
“SALUTING, EYES - RIGHT!” (Marching)	On the left foot.	On the right foot.	(Quick Time) “ONE - TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE - DOWN - SWING”.	
“SALUTING!” a. To the front from marching. b. As on sentry.	Left heel strikes the ground.			

Note. For all movements of foot and arms drill at the halt in which there is more than one part the squad will call out “ONE - TWO THREE - ONE”. Moving only as they call out “ONE”.

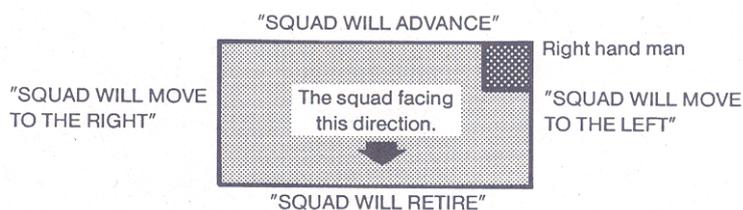
ANNEX B - THE INTRODUCTORY WORD OF COMMAND

1. Before a squad is turned in any direction the instructor indicates that direction by a word of command. The two diagrams below show how this is done:

FIG 159 - THE INTRODUCTORY WORD OF COMMAND



Since it would be impractical to give the word of command "**MOVE TO THE RIGHT IN THREES, LEFT - TURN!**" the following introductory words of command are used when the squad is retiring:



ANNEX C - TIME AND PACE

1. Every instructor should know the rates of marching, lengths of pace and timings of foot and arms drill that are laid out below:

a. *Rates of Marching.*

(1)	Quick Time (normal)	116 paces to the minute.
(2)	Quick Time (Recruits)	up to 140 paces to the minute.
(3)	Quick Time (Light Infantry and Green Jackets Regiments)	140 paces to the minute.
(4)	Slow Time (normal)	65 paces to the minute.
(5)	Slow Time (Light Infantry and Green Jackets Regiments)	70 paces to the minute.
(6)	Double Time	180 paces to the minute.

b. *Lengths of Pace.*

(1)	Quick and Slow Time	750 mm (30 inches).
(2)	Stepping Out	830 mm (33 inches).
(3)	Stepping Short	530 mm (21 inches).
(4)	Double Time	1000 mm (40 inches).
(5)	Side Pace	300 mm (12 inches).

c. *Timing of Foot and Arms Drill.* A pause is judged between movements of foot and arms drill which would allow 40 movements to be completed in a minute; this is called the regulation pause.

ANNEX D - THE PROCEDURES FOR A PACE STICKING COMPETITION

Conditions

1. **Rates for Marching.** Teams will be judged on the following rates of time and pace:
 - a. Slow Time - 65 paces per minute.
 - b. QuickTime - 116 - 120 paces per minute.
 - c. Movement at the Halt - 40 movements per minute.
2. **Competition.** The following table lists the sequence and drill movements for a pace sticking competition.

Serial (a)	Team Actions (b)	Captain's Action and Words of Command (c)
1	The March On	
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Teams will be formed up in file in the 'March On' box facing left at two paces interval. b. Pace sticks will be at the Carry. c. Teams will be marked as they leave the 'March On' Box. d. Teams will march on to Form Up in Line. e. The right marker to give "UP!" from the rear. The team halts, advances right turn and Stands at Ease then Easy. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Team Captain will be approx 30 paces right of his team facing left. b. Team Captain steps off his team. "NUMBER COMPANY, BY THE RIGHT, QUICK - MARCH!". c. Team Captain marches forward with his team, halts on the right marker's "UP!", turns left and remains still, Stick at the Carry.
2	Getting on Parade	

Serial

Team Actions

Captain's Action and Words of Command

(a)

(b)

(c)

- a. On the word of command, the right marker stands to Attention and marches forward 15 paces, halts on the Inspection Line and Stands at Ease.
- b. The team (including the right marker) stands to Attention, steps off, marches forward 15 paces, halts and dresses by the right.
- c. Once the team is settled, they will look to the front and Stand at Ease in succession from the right.
- d. Team stands to Attention to be inspected.
- e. The Inspection takes place.
- f. The Sticks are proved.
- g. The WO1 of the Board moves forward. As he comes to the right marker he will stand to Attention and prepare his Stick for proving. Each member will carry out the same action returning to the Stand at Ease position on completion (see Fig 113. - Proving Sticks).

- a. The Team Captain with his Stick at the Carry calls forward the right marker - "**RIGHT - MARKER!**".
- b. The Team Captain orders the team forward - "**GET ON - PARADE!**".
- c. The Team Captain prepares his team for inspection - "**TEAM - SHOW!**".
- d. He now turns to his right and steps off changing his Stick to his left hand still in the Carry on consecutive left feet. He moves to a point two paces to the right of his right marker and waits for the President of the Board.
- e. The Team Captain reports his team to the President of the Board and accompanies him on his inspection, keeping his Stick in the left hand throughout.
- f. On completion of the Inspection he will carry out his Regimental Custom, march to the point in rear covering off the centre man, change his Stick to the right hand, then stand the team At Ease, carrying out the same actions - "**TEAM, STAND AT-EASE!**".
- g. The Team Captain stands the team to Attention.

3 Drill in Slow Time

- a. The team will advance, pace-stick in the right hand for 20 paces until Box 1 is reached - then in sequence:
- b. Change of Sticks. **BOX 1**
- c. Pace-Stick with the left hand 20 paces.
- d. Change and Carry Sticks. **BOX 2**
- e. Carry Sticks for 20 paces.
- f. Pace-Sticks for 20 paces in the right hand. **BOX 3**
- g. Change Sticks. **BOX 4**

- a. The team to advance "**BY THE RIGHT, SLOW - MARCH!**".
- b. Changing Sticks - "**CHANGE - STICKS!**" to be given in the box over seven paces.
- c. -
- d. Changing Sticks - "**CHANGE - STICKS!**", "**CARRY - STICKS!**" given in the box over seven paces.
- e. -
- f. Pacing Sticks - "**PACING - STICKS!**" given in the box over seven paces.
- g. Changing Sticks - "**CHANGE - STICKS!**" in the box over seven paces.

Serial
(a)

Team Actions

(b)

- h. Pace-Stick with left hand for 20 paces.
- i. Change Sticks. **BOX 5**

- j. Pace-Sticks with the right hand for 20 paces.
- k. Carry Sticks for 20 paces. **BOX 6**

4 **Halting**

- a. The team will be halted. They will About Turn, on the word of command "**ABOUT - TURN!**".
- b. The team now takes its dressing up by the left.
- c. Stand at Ease and Easy.

5 **Drill in Quick Time**

- a. The team assumes the correct Stand Easy position and is then stood to Attention and retires in Quick Time.
- b. The pace-stick actions are the same as for **Drill in Slow Time**.

6 **Halting**

- a. The team halts and turns about.
- b. The team Stands at Ease.

Captain's Action and Words of Command

(c)

- h. -
- i. Changing Sticks - "**CHANGE - STICKS!**" in the box over seven paces.
- j. -
- k. Carry Sticks - "**CARRY - STICKS!**" in the box over seven paces.

- a. Team Halt. The Team Captain lowers his Stick with the team. After the regulation pause he brings his Stick to the Carry - "**TEAM WILL RETIRE, ABOUT - TURN!**".
- b. Stand at Ease and Stand Easy. On the word of command "**STAND - EASY!**", he turns to his right, marches to the rear of his team, halts and then Stands at Ease and Easy.

- a. On instructions from the Board President the team is made ready for Quick Time. The Team Captain stands to Attention and brings his Stick to the Carry - "**TEAM, TEAM - SHUN!**".
- b. On "**SHUN!**" he lowers his Stick. The team will retire "**BY THE LEFT, QUICK - MARCH!**".
- c. The words of command are as **Drill in Slow Time** (as in paragraph 3 above).

- a. Team Halt The Team Captain brings his Stick to the Carry - "**TEAM WILL ADVANCE, ABOUT TURN!**" "**RIGHT - DRESS!**" "**EYES - FRONT!**". "**STAND AT - EASE!**".
- b. He changes his Stick to his left hand whilst at the

Serial
(a)

Team Actions
(b)

Captain's Action and Words of Command
(c)

halt, then marches forward to the President, salutes and obtains permission to march off.

c. Keeping his Stick in the left hand he marches to the front of his team.

d. **"TEAM - SHUN!"**. **"MOVE TO THE RIGHT IN FILE, RIGHT - TURN!"**. He moves to a position right rear.

e. **"TEAM BY THE LEFT (OR RIGHT)** (depending on the position of the President of the Board) **EYES - LEFT/RIGHT!"**. **"EYES - FRONT!"**.

ANNEX E - NOTES FOR INSPECTING OFFICERS

INTRODUCTION

1. Before drill soldiers should be inspected to ensure that:
 - a. They are dressed correctly.
 - b. Their clothing and equipment is serviceable and clean.
 - c. Their weapons are clean (and cared for).
 - d. They are alert and healthy.
2. Soldiers should be at Attention when inspected, though whether they slope their rifles and fix their bayonets depends on regimental custom.
3. The inspecting officer, warrant or non commissioned officer should be accompanied by the next senior warrant or non commissioned officer who should note down anything that he is told. The next senior warrant or non commissioned officer should be posted in front of the squad to see that the squad stand still and look to their front.

GENERAL IMPRESSION

4. Look at the squad first:
 - a. Are they standing correctly to Attention?
 - b. Is their dressing and covering off good?
5. Take a quick look at each soldier when you come to him:
 - a. Is he clean and shaved?
 - b. Is he standing well?
 - c. Is his uniform clean and pressed? Does it fit him?

DETAIL

6. **Head.**
 - a. Cap - clean and brushed.
 - b. Badge - clean and in correct place.
 - c. No. 1 Dress Cap - Set up correctly.
 - d. Beret - bow sewn down neatly.
 - e. Hair - tidy and of a reasonable length.
7. **Body.**
 - a. Collar - clean.
 - b. Tie - correctly tied, central and not tucked into shirt.
 - c. Uniform - well fitted, clean and pressed.
 - d. Pockets - emptied of bulky objects.
 - e. Medals - clean and sewn on correctly.
 - f. Buttons - sewn on and fastened, with no stray ends of cotton.
8. **Waistbelt.**
 - a. Fitted so that it will not be pulled down by the bayonet or allow the jacket to ride up underneath it during a parade.

- b. Fitted so that the buckle is in the centre of the body and the belt.
 - c. Correctly fastened and polished where brass.
 - d. Bayonet frog hanging from the waistbelt over the left buttock.
- 9. **Trousers.**
 - a. Braced up so that they break on the instep in front.
 - b. Pressed correctly and not excessively worn on the inside.
- 10. **Boots.**
 - a. Serviceable and polished.
 - b. Tightly laced with the laces so tied that they cannot come undone during a parade.
- 11. **Weapons** (including bayonets). Clean and dry.

Some Don'ts

- 12. **Don't:**
 - a. Make it a battle between you and them.
 - b. Touch them.
 - c. Ridicule or humiliate individual members of the squad.
 - d. Spend a long time in front of each man.
 - e. Allow those accompanying you to inspect for you.
 - f. Point vaguely at things and expect them to vanish or change colour.

Some Do's

- 13. **Do:**
 - a. Be consistent and impersonal.
 - b. Be decisive and tell the warrant or non commissioned officer who is accompanying you the action that you require.
 - c. Give praise readily.